Galaxy S23

User Guide

S23, S23+, S23 Ultra

Contents

Start using your phone 1

Charge the battery 22
Turn on your phone 25
Transfer data from an old phone 26
Lock or unlock your phone 30
Set up voicemail 31
Navigate your phone with Gestures 32
Use the on-screen keyboard 33
Use the Phone app for calls 36
Use Multi window 41
Add or remove Edge panels 42
Use Wireless power sharing 43
Change language and input settings 44
Use Emergency mode 45

Start using your phone 47

Maintaining water and dust resistance 47

Personalize your phone 49

Customize the Side key 63
Customize the Navigation bar 64
Manage your Digital Wellbeing 65
Parental controls 68
Always On Display 70
Manage Home screens 72
Adjust your Display settings 75
Dark Mode 77

Notifications 78

Sounds and vibration 85
Control notifications 88
Control app notifications 90

Camera 92

Configure shooting modes 96
Camera settings 98

Camera 100

Use Single Take 100
Zoom in mic 102
Record, edit and share videos 103
Use Director's view 105

Gallery 107

View and edit pictures and videos 114
Video brightness 116
Delete pictures and videos 117
Take a screenshot 118
Screen recorder 121

Gallery 123

Screen recorder > new article 123
Share pictures and videos 126
Group similar images 127

Essential Apps 128

Calculator 143
Calendar 144
Clock 146
Contacts 150
Messages 153
My Files 156
Internet 158

Samsung apps 161

Galaxy Store 179
Samsung AR Zone 181
Bixby 182
Set up and use Bixby Routines 183
Galaxy Wearable 185
Customize Galaxy Themes 186
Use Bixby Vision 189
Get started with PENUP 191
Samsung Members 192
Secure Folder 193
Samsung Health 194
Use Samsung Notes features and settings 195
Samsung Pass 199
Samsung Pay 200
Set up the SmartThings app 201

Samsung apps 203

Samsung Global Goals 203
Samsung TV Plus 206
Smart Switch 210

Google apps 214

Use Google apps 217
PlayStore 218

Microsoft apps 220

Use Microsoft apps 221

Connections 222

Wi-Fi 232
Bluetooth 234
NFC and payment 236
Mobile networks 237
Data usage 238

Connections 240

SIM card manager 240

Other connections 245
Connected devices 247

Security 251

Change the security features 264
Set up a Lock screen and security 266
Samsung privacy settings 269
Use Facial recognition security 271
Set up and use the fingerprint sensor 273
Set up and use Samsung Pass 276
Find My Mobile 278

Accounts & Backup 280

Add an account 296
Account settings 298
Remove an account 299
Backup and restore 300
Manage Google settings 304
Set up and manage your Samsung Account 305
External storage transfer 312

Device Maintenance 315

Accounts & Backup 315

Check for System updates 331
Quick optimization 332
Battery 333
Clean Storage 334
Clean Memory 335
Power saving mode 336
Set the date and time 337
Use About phone to find the IMEI, model number, or serial number 339
Advanced device care options 340

Accessibility 343

Interaction and dexterity 351
About Accessibility 352
Talkback 353
Visibility enhancements 355
Hearing enhancements 356
Advanced settings 358
Installed apps 359

Advanced Features 360

Connect Android Auto 369
Dual Messenger 371

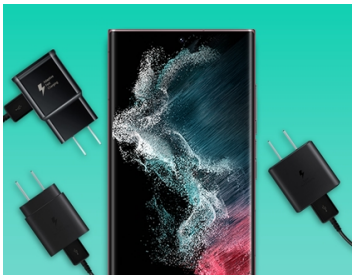
Start using your device

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091422



Charge the battery

We discovered that more and more Galaxy users are reusing accessories they already have. Therefore, we are transitioning to the removal of the wall charger and earphones in our latest line of Galaxy devices. If you get a new phone or tablet, you will need to buy the wall charger separately. However, the inbox items will still include a USB-C cable that can be used for transferring data or for connecting an existing charger.



The Galaxy Z Fold4 and the Galaxy Z Flip4 are compatible with USB-C chargers that support USB Power delivery 3.0 or Quick Charge 2.0. They can be charged using a standard 15W charger or a Superfast 25W charger for fast charging ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062589/") . Samsung has used USB-C chargers on devices since 2017 – or since the Galaxy S8 and Note8. If you've had a Galaxy device since then, you'll be able to use its charger.

Here are past devices with compatible chargers:

Chargers with Superfast charging

- S22 and S21 series phones
- Note20 series phones
- S20 series phones
- Note10 series phones
- Z Fold 2 and Z Fold3
- Galaxy A71 and A53

  Note: These models can also be used with a standard 15W charger if needed.

Chargers with Adaptive fast charging

- Z Fold and Z Flip series phones
- S10 series phones
- Note9 and Note8 series phones
- S9 and S8 series phones
- A70, A50, A51, A52 5G, A42 5G, A32 5G, A13, A12, and A02s

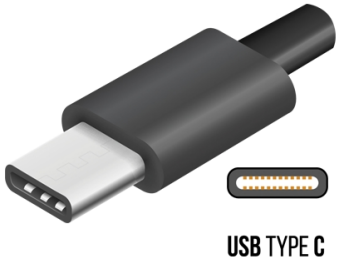
If you are a first-time Galaxy customer or do not have the charger for past devices, you can purchase ("https://www.samsung.com/us/search/searchMain/?listType=g&searchTerm=chargers& ;sort=relevance&size=30&category=Accessories&accessories_type=Chargers+%26+Batteries") a new wall charger or wireless charger from the Samsung website. Please see the third section in this article for more information on different chargers.

Charging cables and USB connection types

If you don't have a compatible charger from a previous Samsung phone or tablet, you need a replacement, or just want to have a spare, you can purchase a charger ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/all-mobile-accessories/?accesso ries_type=Chargers+%26+Batteries") directly from Samsung. Just find your model in the following list to make sure you get the right one!

Most phones and tablets use either a USB Type C or Micro USB charger. USB Type C ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/tablets/micro-usb---usb-c-combo -cable-ep-dg930dweguj/") is the newest type of USB charger. The design helps prevent damage occurring inside the USB port because it doesn't matter which way you insert it into a phone or tablet.

If you aren't sure what model phone or tablet you have, you can check in the device's settings. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap About phone or About tablet. Your device's name and model number will appear on this page.

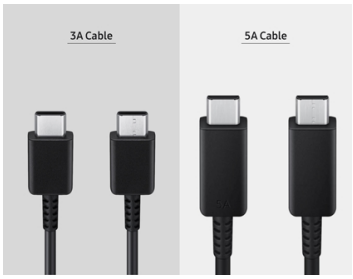


Devices that use USB Type C

- The latest models: Galaxy Z Flip4 and Galaxy Z Fold4
- Galaxy Fold phones: Z Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3, Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, and Z Flip3 5G
- Galaxy S phones: S8, S8+, S9, S9+, S10e, S10, S10+, S10 5G, S20 5G, S20+ 5G, S20 Ultra 5G, S21 5G, S21+ 5G, S21 Ultra 5G, S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra
- Galaxy Note phones: Note8, Note9, Note10, Note10+, Note10+ 5G, Note 20 5G, and Note20 Ultra 5G
- Galaxy A phones: A03s, A10e, A20, A50, A02, A12, A13, A23 5G, A32 5G, A42 5G, A71, A51, A21, A11, A01, A13 5G, A52 5G, and A53 5G
- Galaxy S tablets: Tab S3, Tab S4, Tab S5e, Tab S6, Tab S7, and TabS7+
- Galaxy A tablets: Tab A 10.1 (2019-2020), Tab A 10.5 (2019), Tab A 8.0 (2016-2019), Tab A 8.4 (2020), Tab A7 (2020), Tab A7 Lite (2021), and Tab A 8 (2022)

To make things a little trickier, there are different kinds of USB-C cables. If you’re unsure which USB Type C cable

you have, it’s most likely a 3A or 5A cable. Both types are capable of charging your devices as well as transferring data. However, 5A cables are thicker and able to carry more power.



Devices that use Micro USB Type B

You're probably already familiar with Micro USB Type B cables. They've been used for a long time with multiple devices. The cable's head is not symmetrical. One side has ridges while the other is flat. Make sure to insert it into your phone's or tablet's USB port the correct way or it could damage the inside of your device.



- Galaxy S phones: S5, S6, S6 edge, S7, and S7 edge
- Galaxy Note phones: Note5
- Galaxy A phones: A6
- Galaxy J phones: J3 and J7 (all models)
- Galaxy S and E tablets: Tab S, Tab S2, and Tab E
- Galaxy A tablets: Tab A 10.1 (2016), Tab A 8.0 (2015), Tab A 7.0, and Tab A 9.7

If you've lost your Micro USB Type B charger, you can purchase a new one ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/tablets/micro-usb---usb-c-combo -cable-ep-dg930dweguj/") on Samsung.com. You can also use adapters with these cables to charge USB Type C devices.

Best practices for charging

The following tips and instructions will help you get the most out of your device's battery.

- When using wireless charging accessories, please be aware that any metal or magnetic materials (e.g., coins, magnetic cards) placed between the device and the wireless charger may decrease charging efficiency or cause damage to the phone or tablet and charger.
- Charging may take longer when using adapters, charging wirelessly, or charging the phone or tablet through another device like a PC.
- When using wired charging accessories, always check whether any foreign objects are in the connector or plug, as they may prevent charging or cause the charging accessories to overheat.
- Make sure your phone or tablet doesn't overheat. Keep it in a cool location, especially while charging.
- Don't let your battery completely drain. With new lithium-ion batteries being used, it is better to keep the battery partially charged, instead of letting it die. When possible, charge your device in small amounts to

keep the battery from depleting.
Note: If the power has been depleted, the battery charging indicator may take up to 10 minutes to appear on the device's screen while charging.

- Use a genuine Samsung fast charger for the quickest charge. You can't use the fast charging feature if you're using a standard charger.
- If your phone or tablet is not charging ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001573/") , there are a couple of things that could be causing the problem. However, if your charger doesn't work at all, it should be replaced. If it's under warranty you can request service ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/service/") . If not, you will need to purchase a new one ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/adaptive-fast-charging-w all-charger-detachable-microusb-usb-cable-white-ep-ta20jweusta/") .

Turn on your device

Important: Do not use the device if the body is cracked or broken. Use the device only after it has been repaired.

You can use the Side key (which also acts as the Power key) to turn your device on and off, as well as restart it. Please see below for directions.

- To power on: Press and hold the Side key to turn the device on.
- To power off: Press and hold the Side and Volume down keys at the same time, and tap Power off. Tap Power off again to confirm.
- To restart: Press and hold the Side and Volume down keys at the same time, and tap Restart. Tap Restart again to confirm.



To learn more about powering off your device, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Advanced features, then tap Side key, and then tap How to power off your phone.

Transfer data from an old device

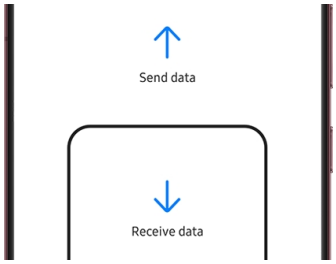
Wireless transfer from an Android phone

A wireless transfer is the preferred way to copy your data to a new phone. It's fast and lets you keep the phones plugged into their chargers during the transfer.

1. First, make sure the Smart Switch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") app is installed on both phones, and plug them into their chargers.
2. When you're ready, place the phones within 4 inches of each other.

3. Launch Smart Switch on both phones. Open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

4. On the old phone, tap Send data, and then tap Wireless.



5. On your new phone, tap Receive data, tap Galaxy/Android, and then tap Wireless.

6. Next, complete the connection by tapping Allow on the old phone. On your new phone, choose the content you want to move, and then tap Transfer. Once the transfer is complete, tap Close on the new phone and you're good to go.

Import content from iCloud

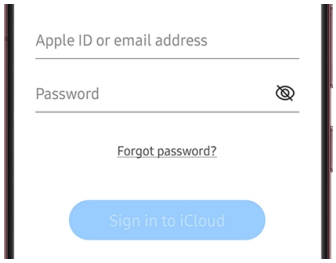
You have lots of valuable data saved on your old iOS phone but transferring it seems like a logistical nightmare. No worries, Smart Switch makes transferring through iCloud ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00061001/") a breeze.

1. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

2. Tap Receive data on the new phone, and then tap iPhone/iPad.

3. Tap Get data from iCloud instead at the bottom of the screen.

4. Enter your Apple ID and password, and then tap Sign in to iCloud.



5. Enter the verification code, and then tap OK.

6. Select the data you want to transfer, and then tap Transfer. When the transfer is finished, tap Next, tap Next again, and then tap Done.

   Note: iTunes music and videos cannot be transferred from iCloud. Unencrypted iTunes music can be transferred to your phone by simply copying the M4A files from a PC with your iTunes library. You can also transfer your music files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086603/") directly from a PC.

Connect devices with a USB cable

Note: If you use Smart Switch via a USB OTG connection, make sure your devices are at least 20% charged to ensure a safe data transfer. The transfer may take a while, depending on the volume of multimedia data. It is

recommended to fully charge your devices before beginning the transfer.

Wired transfer is best for people who don't have a lot of data on their old phone. This is because wired transfer doesn't allow you to keep your phones connected to a charger during the transfer. If you have a lot of data or years' worth of text messages to transfer, we recommend performing a wireless transfer instead.

1. Connect the phones with the old phone's USB cable. Most cables will require you to use a USB-OTG adapter. If you have an iPhone ("https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=blW1lsN-VjA") with a Lightning to USB-C ("https://www.apple.com/shop/product/MX0K2AM/A/usb-c-to-lightning-cable-1-m?afid=p238%7Cs7WSElGpz-dc_mtid_1870765e38482_pcrid_500452390707_pgrid_70784887576_&cid=aos-us-kwgo-pla-btb--slid---product-MX0K2AM/A") or an Android with a USB-C to USB-C ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/usb-c-to-usb-c-cable-bla ck-ep-da705bbegus/#benefits-") cable you won't need an adapter; it will plug right into your new Galaxy.

2. Launch Smart Switch on both phones. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

3. On the old phone, tap Send data, and then tap Cable.

4. On the new phone, tap Receive data, select the type of device you're transferring from (i.e. Galaxy/Android), and then tap Cable. Smart Switch will begin scanning the old phone for transferrable content.

5. After the scan, select the data you want transferred to the new phone. An estimate of the transfer time will be displayed. If the transfer will take more than an hour, you may want to use a wireless transfer so both phones can be charged during the transfer.

   Note: You can view the other sections in this article to learn about wireless transfers.

6. When you are ready to start, tap Transfer.

7. When finished, tap Done on the new phone, and tap Close on the old phone.

   Note: A USB-OTG adapter is provided in-box with the Galaxy S10+, S10, S10e, Note10+, Note10+ 5G, and Z Flip. Newer phone models do not come with this adapter.

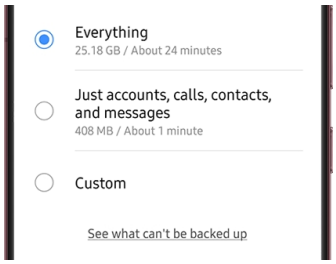
Use a microSD card or USB flash drive

If you have a large enough capacity microSD card or USB OTG flash drive, you can use Smart Switch to transfer your data and back up your old device to the external storage. Before you begin, insert the microSD card ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") or USB OTG storage device into the old phone.

1. Launch Smart Switch on the old phone. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

2. Tap the SD card icon in the upper right corner, and then tap SD card under Back up to.

3. Select what you want to back up. If there's not enough space on your external storage, you may need to deselect some items, but you can come back later to transfer anything that won't fit.



4. You can choose between Everything; Just accounts, calls, contacts, and messages; or Custom. Tap Next. If a popup message appears, select the appropriate option.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions. They will be very different depending on what option you chose. When it's complete, tap Done, and then remove the external storage device.
6. Next, insert the external storage into the new Galaxy phone, and then launch Smart Switch.
7. Tap the SD card icon, and then tap Restore. Select what you want to restore, and then tap Restore again.
8. When it's complete, tap Next, and then tap Done. You can repeat this process as many times as needed.

Note: If you connect your device to an external hard drive via an OTG cable, you can use file explorer apps (such as My Files) to copy data from the device to the external hard drive. External hard drives must be formatted as FAT or exFAT to be recognized by Galaxy devices. Some external hard drive devices require an external power supply.

Copy your data from a Windows phone

You can also use Smart Switch to transfer your data from a Windows phone.

1. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.
2. On the new Galaxy phone, tap Receive data, and then tap Windows Phone.



3. Next, you will see the steps to download the Smart Switch software onto your old device. Follow the on-screen prompts to continue.

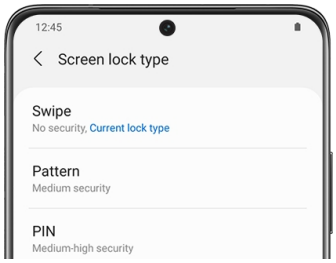
   Note: If your Location service is not enabled, you will be prompted to turn it on.
4. Once you've installed and opened Smart Switch, tap Connect on the old phone, and then select the network.
5. Enter the password shown on your new Galaxy phone. Your data will now be transferred.

Lock or unlock your phone

Use your device’s screen lock features to secure your device. It is recommended that you secure your device using

a secure screen lock (Pattern, PIN, or Password). This is necessary to set up and enable biometric locks. By default, the device locks automatically when the screen times out.

1. From Settings, tap Lock screen, tap Screen lock type, and then select a screen lock type (Pattern, PIN, or Password).



2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up the screen lock.
3. After you've set the lock, tap the switch next to Notifications at the top to enable notifications on the Lock screen. The following options are available for customization:
    - Icon only: Show only notification icons with no details on the Lock screen.
    - Details: Display notification details on the Lock screen.
    - Transparency: Adjust the desired transparency for notifications by using the slider.
    - Auto-reverse text color: Reverse the color of notification texts based on the current background color.
    - Hide content: Do not show notifications in the Notification panel.
    - Notifications to show: Choose which notifications to show on the Lock screen.
    - Show on Always On Display: Display notifications on the Always On Display screen.
4. Once you've adjusted the notification settings, return to the Lock screen settings page to configure the following screen lock options:
    - Smart Lock: Unlock your device automatically when trusted locations or other devices have been detected. A secure screen lock is required for this feature.
    - Secure lock settings: Customize your secure lock settings. A secure screen lock is required for this feature.
    - Always On Display: Enable the Always On Display screen.

    For more information on adjusting Lock screen settings, please see our guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078955/") .

Set up voicemail

You can set up your voicemail service when you access it for the first time.

1. Open the Phone app, and then touch and hold the 1 key or tap Voicemail.
2. Follow the tutorial to create a password, record a greeting, and record your name.

    Note: The options vary by carrier, but you can usually access your voicemail through the Phone app. Please contact your carrier for additional questions and information.



Navigate your phone with Gestures

Your phone's touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a capacitive stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object on the touch screen may damage the surface of the screen, and the damage will not be covered by the warranty. Read the information below to learn about the different ways to navigate your phone and the gestures that are used.

Tap

Lightly touch items (like apps) to select or launch them.

- Tap an item to select it.
- Double-tap an image to zoom in or out.

Drag and drop

Touch and hold an item, and then move it to a new location.

- Drag an app shortcut to add it to a Home screen.
- Drag a widget to place it in a new location.

Swipe

Lightly drag your finger across the screen.

- Swipe the screen to unlock the device.
- Swipe to scroll through Home screens or menu options.

Touch and hold

Touch and hold items to activate them.

- Touch and hold an app to display a pop-up menu of options.
- Touch and hold a Home screen to customize the Home screen.

Zoom in and out

Bring your thumb and forefinger together or apart on the screen to zoom in and out.

- Move your thumb and forefinger together on the screen to zoom out.
- Move your thumb and forefinger apart on the screen to zoom in.

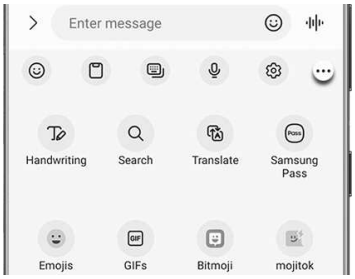
Use the on-screen keyboard

When you need to type something, text can be entered using a keyboard or your voice.

Toolbar

The toolbar provides quick access to features of the keyboard. Options may vary by carrier. Some options can always be displayed at the top of the keyboard. You can also tap Expand toolbar (the three horizontal dots) for even more options. If you'd like to customize your toolbar, just tap and hold an icon, and drag it to where you'd like it to appear.

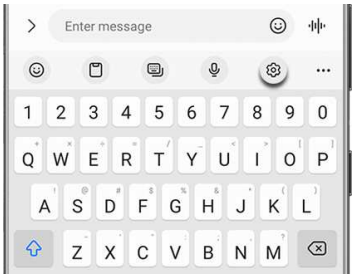
Note: Some options will be limited by context. For example, you won't be able to insert an AR Emoji in a Google search box. You may also need to download an additional app for some options like Spotify or Bitmoji.



- Emojis: Insert an emoji.
- Expression: Select emojis, GIFs, AR emojis, and more.
- GIFs: Add animated GIFs.
- Voice input: Use Samsung voice input.
- Settings: Access keyboard settings.
- Handwriting: Use your handwriting to enter text. This feature is only available on phones that support the S Pen.
- Search: Locate specific words or phrases in your conversations.
- Translate: Type words or sentences in the keyboard to translate them into another language.
- Samsung Pass: Use biometrics for secure access to apps and services.
- Spotify: Add music from Spotify.
- YouTube: Add videos from YouTube.
- Clipboard: Access the clipboard.
- Text editing: Use an editing panel to help pinpoint text that you want to cut, copy, and paste.
- Modes: Select a keyboard layout.
- Keyboard size: Adjust the height and width of the keyboard.
- Bitmoji: Create your own personal emoji and use it in stickers.
- AR Emoji: Create your own personal emoji and use it in stickers you can share.
- Mojitok: Create your own stickers or insert automatically suggested ones.

Configure the Samsung keyboard

You can set customized options for the Samsung keyboard. From the Samsung keyboard, tap Settings (the gear icon) for the following options:



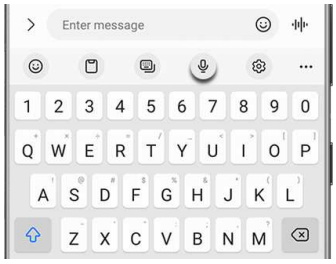
- Languages and types: Set the keyboard type and choose which languages are available on the keyboard. To switch between languages, swipe the Space bar left or right.
- Smart typing
    - Predictive text: See suggested words and phrases as you type.
    - Suggest emojis: Include emojis when using predictive text.
    - Suggest stickers while typing: View recommended stickers while you are typing.
    - Auto replace: Automatically replace what you type with predictive text recommendations.
    - Suggest text corrections: Underline potential grammar errors in green and suggest corrections.
    - Text shortcuts: Create shortcuts for frequently used phrases that will be suggested when you type the shortcut. For example, you can have your email address suggested every time you type "email".
    - More typing options: Customize additional typing options. You can automatically capitalize sentences, insert a space when you use predictive text, add a period when you tap the spacebar twice, or enable text prediction for all supported input languages.
- Style and layout
    - Keyboard toolbar: View or hide the keyboard toolbar.
    - High contrast keyboard: Adjust the size of the Samsung keyboard and change its colors to increase the contrast between the keys and the background.
    - Theme: Choose a theme for your keyboard.
    - Mode: Choose between Portrait and Landscape view.
    - Size and transparency: Adjust the size and transparency of the keyboard.
    - Layout: Display numbers and special characters on the keyboard.
    - Font size: Drag the slider to adjust the font size.
    - Custom symbols: Change the symbol shortcuts on the keyboard.
- Other settings
    - Swipe, touch, and feedback: Customize gestures and feedback.
    - Handwriting: Customize handwriting options (Galaxy S21 Ultra 5G only).
    - Select third-party content to use: Enable third-party keyboard features.
    - Reset to default settings: Return the keyboard to its original settings and clear personalized data.
    - About Samsung Keyboard: View the software version and legal information for the Samsung Keyboard.

- Contact us: Contact Samsung Support through Samsung Members (if supported by your carrier).

Use Samsung voice input

Instead of manually typing with the keyboard, you can enter text by speaking.

1. From the Samsung keyboard, tap Voice input (the microphone icon) and say what you'd like to type.



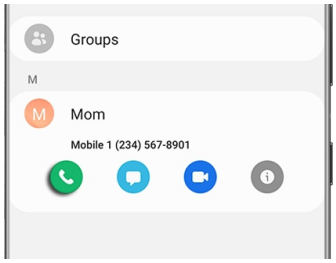
2. To set customized options for Samsung voice input, tap Voice input from the keyboard, and then tap Settings. The following options are available:
   - Keyboard language: Choose the language for the keyboard.
   - Voice input language: Select the language for Samsung voice input.
   - Hide offensive words: Hide potentially offensive words with asterisks.
   - About Samsung voice input: View version and legal information for Samsung voice input.

Use the Phone app for calls

The Phone app allows you to make and answer calls from the Home screen, Recents tab, Contacts, and more. Contact your carrier for more information. The actual appearance of the Phone app screen varies by carrier.

Make a call

- Using the keypad: From the Phone app, enter a number on the keypad and tap Call. Tap the Keypad tab if the keypad is not displayed.
- Make a call from Recents: From the Phone app, tap Recents to display a list of recent calls. Select a contact, and then tap Call.
- Make a call from Contacts: From the Contacts tab in the Phone app, select a contact, and then tap Call. You can also do this from the Contacts app.



Answer, decline, or end a call

When a call is received, the phone rings and the caller's phone number or name will display. If you are using an app when a call comes in, a pop-up screen will display. You can easily answer or decline an incoming call using the provided options on the call screen or pop-up menu.

- Answer a call: On the incoming call screen, drag or tap the Answer icon to answer the call.
- Decline a call: On the incoming call screen, drag or tap Decline to reject the call and send it to your voicemail.
- Decline a call with a message: You can choose to decline an incoming call with a text message response. On the incoming call screen, drag Send message upward and select a message, such as “I can’t talk right now.”
- End a conversation: Tap End call when you are ready to hang up.

Actions while you’re on a call

You can adjust the call volume, switch to a headset or speaker, and even multitask while on a call.



- Adjust volume: Press the Volume keys to increase or decrease the volume.
- Switch to headset or speaker: Listen to the call using the speaker or through a Bluetooth headset (not included). Tap the Speaker icon to hear the caller using the speaker or tap the Bluetooth icon to hear the caller using a connected Bluetooth headset.
- Multitask: If you exit the call screen to use another app, your active call is indicated in the Status bar.
    - To return to the call screen: Drag the Status bar down to display the Notification panel and tap the call.
    - To end a call while multitasking: Drag the Status bar down to display the Notification panel, and then tap End call.
- Place a call on hold: Tap More options (the three vertical dots) and then tap Hold call. When you're ready to resume the call, just tap RESUME CALL on the phone screen.

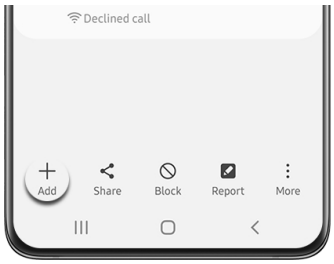
Call log

The numbers of the calls you have dialed, received, or missed are stored in the Call log. From the Phone app, tap Recents. A list of recent calls will display. If the caller is in your Contacts list, the caller’s name is displayed.

Save a contact from a recent call

Use recent call information to create a contact or update your Contacts list.

1. From the Phone app, tap Recents.
2. Tap the call that contains the information that you want to save to your Contacts list, and tap Add to contacts.



3. Tap Create new contact or Update existing contact.
4. Enter the necessary information to create or edit the contact.
5. Tap Save to confirm.

Delete call records

If your Call log is getting really long, you can delete some past records from it. You can also select multiple calls and delete them all at once.

1. From the Phone app, tap the Recents tab.
2. Touch and hold the call you want to delete from the Call log. Tap Delete to confirm.

Block a number

By adding a caller to your Block list, future calls from this number are sent directly to your voicemail, and messages are not received.

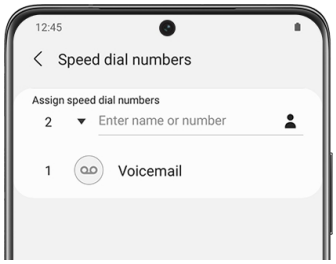
1. From the Phone app, tap the Recents tab.
2. Tap the caller you want to add to the Block list.
3. Tap the Details icon, then tap Block, and then confirm when prompted.

   Note: You can also modify your Block list in Settings. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), tap Settings, and tap Block numbers.

Speed dial

This feature lets you assign a contact to a number on your phone's keypad (i.e. 2, 3, etc.). You can then dial the number by holding down the designated number on the keypad.

1. From the Phone app, tap Keypad, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Speed dial numbers. The Speed dial number screen displays the reserved speed dial numbers.



2. Tap an unassigned number.
   - Tap the drop-down menu (the downward arrow) to select a different Speed dial number than the next one in the sequence (i.e. 3, 4, etc.).

- Number 1 is reserved for Voicemail.

3. Type in a name or number, or tap Add from Contacts (the person icon) to assign a contact to the number.
    - The selected contact is displayed in the Speed dial number box.

Make a call with Speed dial

You can make a call using Speed dial. From the Phone app, touch and hold the assigned Speed dial number in the keypad (i.e. 2, 3, etc.). If the Speed dial number is more than one digit long, enter the first digits, and then hold the last digit.

Remove a Speed dial number

If desired, you can remove an assigned Speed dial number. You can always assign another number to that shortcut later on.

1. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Speed dial numbers.
2. Tap the Delete icon (the red minus sign) by the contact you want to remove from Speed dial.

Emergency calls

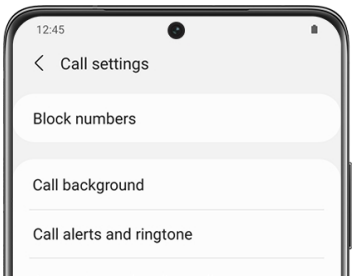
You can dial the emergency telephone number in your region regardless of the phone's service status. If your phone is not activated, you can only make an emergency call.

1. From the Phone app, enter the emergency telephone number (911 in North America) and tap Call.
2. Complete your call. During this type of call, you have access to most in-call features.

    Note: The emergency telephone number can be dialed even if the phone is locked, allowing anyone to use your phone to call for help in an emergency. When accessed from a locked screen, only the emergency calling feature is accessible to the caller. The rest of the phone remains secured.

Phone settings

These settings allow you to modify settings associated with the Phone app. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.



Place a multi-party call

You can add another number to a phone call while the call is in progress. Options vary by carrier.

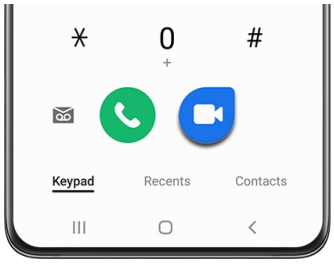
1. From the active call, tap Add call (the plus sign) to dial the second call.
2. Dial the new number and tap Call. When the call is answered:
    - Tap Swap to switch between the two calls.

- Tap the On hold number to switch between the two calls.
- Tap Merge to hear both callers at once (multi-conferencing).

Video calls

Video calls use your phone's cameras to record, so you and the recipient can talk and see each other in real time!

- Open the Phone app, enter a number, and then tap Google Meet call or Video call. Not all devices support video calling. The receiver has the option to accept the video call or answer the call as a regular voice call.



Real Time Text (RTT)

Type back and forth in real time with the other person while on a call. You can use RTT whenever you are calling someone whose phone also supports RTT or is connected to a teletypewriter (TTY) device. The RTT icon appears on all incoming RTT calls.

1. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
2. Tap Real Time Text for the following options:
    - RTT call button: Choose a visibility option for the RTT call button.
    - Always visible: Show the RTT call button on the keypad and during calls.
    - Use external TTY keyboard: Hide the RTT keyboard when an external TTY keyboard is connected.
    - TTY mode: Choose the preferred TTY mode for the keyboard in use.

Call display while using apps

When calls are received while using other apps, they can be displayed as pop-ups. However, you can change this setting to match your preferences.

From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Settings, and then tap Call display while using apps. The following options are available:

- Full screen: Display an incoming call in the full screen Phone app.
- Pop-up: Display an incoming call as a pop-up at the top of the screen.
- Mini pop-up: Display an incoming call as a smaller pop-up.
- Keep calls in pop-up: Enable this option to keep calls in the pop-up after they are answered.

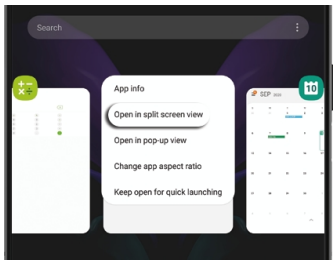
Use Multi window

Use Multi window split screen view

With Multi window, you can have two apps open at the same time using split screen view. For example, you can use the calculator for math homework while watching watching a video.

1. To access Multi window, open the first app and then tap Recent, which is located to the left of the Home button, unless you've chosen to customize your navigation bar ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062622/") .
2. Tap the desired app's icon, and then tap Open in split screen view. This app will be pinned to the top window.

   Note: Not all apps support split screen view.



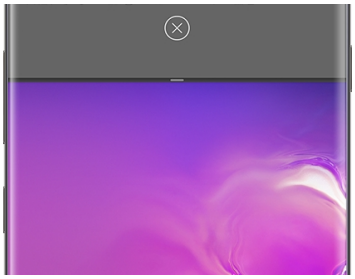
3. To open a second app in the bottom window, simply open the desired app from the list.
4. To close one of the windows, drag the center divider bar all the way to the top or bottom of the screen until the window closes.

Foldable phones like the Z Fold and Z Flip series have extra features when it comes to Multi window! You can read about it in our guide to Multi window on foldable phones ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086243/") .

Exit Multi window split screen view

When you want to give Multi window a break and just use one app, you can close the split screen view.

To do this, tap the Home button. This will close them completely out on the home screen but leave them together in recents.



Add or remove Edge panels

Create an App pair

Note: The Edge panel is available only on certain device models.

Instead of separately opening apps you always use together, create an App pair. That way, those two apps will open simultaneously in split screen view. If you're using the Z Fold2, you can create an App pair with three apps.

1. Swipe left to open the Apps Edge panel. Touch and hold your desired app, and drag and drop it into the top portion of the screen.

2. Open Apps Edge again, and then select a second app. Drag and drop it into the bottom portion of the screen.
3. Tap the divider between the two windows to change the orientation and create an App pair:
    - Tap the two arrows to swap the apps' positions.
    - Tap the App pair icon (it has a plus sign) to create an App pair. The App pair will be saved.
4. If you'd like to add a third app to the App pair, open Apps Edge again, and then drag and drop the new app into your preferred position.

    Note: Adding three apps to an App pair is only available on the Z Fold2.
5. Once all three apps are on the screen, tap the three vertical dots in the center, and then tap the App pair icon. The three apps will be saved in a group.

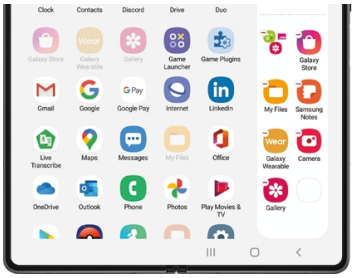
Remove shortcuts from Apps Edge

Note: The Edge panel is available only on certain device models.

Maybe doing homework while playing a game isn't the best idea. Remove that shortcut to make room for a new one.

From any screen, open Apps Edge by swiping the Edge panel to the left. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines) at the bottom, and then tap Edit. Now you can tap the minus symbol next to the shortcuts you want to remove.

You can always add the shortcut back later, or add new Edge panels ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080551/") with additional apps that you'd like to use.



Use Wireless power sharing

Most Qi-Compatible Samsung devices can be charged with Wireless PowerShare, but check out the full list of compatible devices just in case. The speed and power of the charge will vary by device.

Phones that can use and also be charged with Wireless PowerShare:

- Galaxy S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra
- Galaxy S21, S21+, and S21 Ultra
- Note20 5G and Note20 Ultra 5G
- Galaxy Note10, Note10+, and Note10+ 5G
- Galaxy Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3 and Z Fold4
- Galaxy Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, Z Flip3 and Z Flip4
- Galaxy S20 5G, S20+ 5G, S20 Ultra 5G, and S20 FE

- Galaxy S10e, S10, S10+, and S10 5G

Other devices that can be charged by Wireless PowerShare:

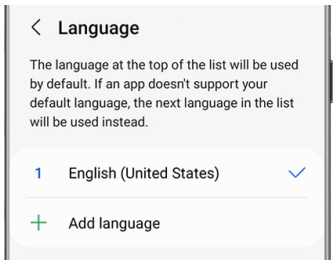
- Galaxy Buds, Galaxy Buds2, Galaxy Buds+, Galaxy Buds Live, Galaxy Buds Pro, and Galaxy Buds2 Pro
- Galaxy Watch, Galaxy Watch3, Galaxy Watch4 series, Galaxy Watch5 series, Gear Sport, and Gear S3
- Galaxy S7/S7 Edge, S8/S8+, S9/S9+, Note8, and Note9
- Galaxy Watch Active and Galaxy Watch Active2

Change language and input settings

Add or remove languages

You're trying to learn Spanish, but you aren't quite there yet. Add it as a language on your phone, so you can practice reading and writing in it.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap General Management.
2. Tap Language, and then tap Add language.

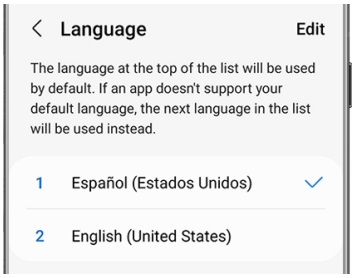


3. If you don't see the language you are looking for, tap More options (the three vertical dots), tap All languages, and then select your desired language.
4. Next, based on your preferences, tap Keep current or Set as default.
5. To delete languages, navigate to Settings, and then tap General management. Tap Language, and then tap Edit.
   Note: The Edit option will not show up unless you have more than one language added.
6. Select the language you want to delete, and then tap Remove. Tap Remove again to confirm.

Change the default language

If you're finally fluent in the language you've been studying, you can change the default language on your phone.

1. From Settings, tap General management, and then tap Language.
2. Select the language you want to be the default language.
3. Tap Apply to confirm. Your selected language will now become the phone's default language.

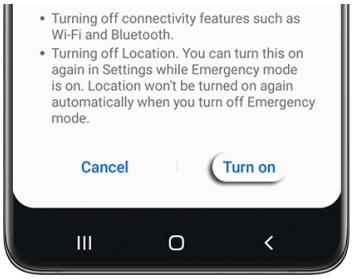


Use Emergency mode

Activate Emergency mode

When in Emergency mode, you will be able to use the Phone app to make a call to a specified contact and also to make emergency calls. You can also turn on the flashlight and sound alarms and send your location information to others in a message.

1. To turn on Emergency mode ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=use-emergency-mode") , swipe down from the top of the screen using two fingers to open the Quick settings panel. Tap the Power icon, and then tap Emergency mode.
2. If needed, enter your lock screen credentials.
3. Tap the checkbox to confirm you have read the Emergency mode terms and conditions, and then tap Agree.
4. Tap Turn on - Emergency Mode will activate.



You can also press and hold the Power and Volume down keys simultaneously, and then tap Emergency mode.

Emergency calling

Make an emergency call from the Lock screen

When something urgent is happening, you probably won't have time to unlock your device and call 9-1-1. If you have a security measure in place, like a PIN or a biometric security, you can make an emergency call right from the Lock screen. Just swipe up on your device's screen to be taken to the Lock screen, and then tap Emergency call. A dial pad will appear where you can enter your desired number. Your registered emergency contacts will also appear at the top of the screen. Finally, a Medical info icon will appear at the bottom of the screen. Tap this to show any medical information you've added to your personal contact.

Make an emergency call with no service or SIM card

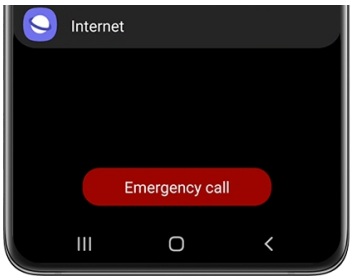
In a dire situation, you can still make emergency calls even if you don't have service or a working SIM card. As long as there is a network signal nearby, your device will let you contact 9-1-1. The network doesn't even have to be your own carrier - it just needs a signal that is strong enough to put the call through. When you need to make an emergency call, dial 9-1-1 the way you normally would.

Make a call while in Emergency mode

The Home screen in Emergency mode will only display the apps and functions you absolutely need. This includes the Phone app and the Emergency call option.

Tap the Phone app to access all of your contacts, so you can still make a call to family members and friends. The Keypad is also available if you need to dial a new number.

Tap Emergency call at the bottom of the Home screen to dial 9-1-1. Tap Yes to activate the call.



Turn off Emergency mode

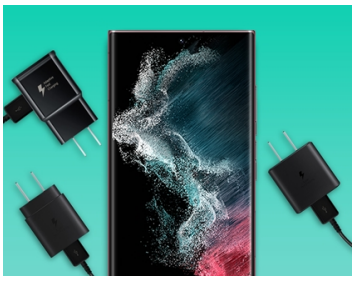
When you no longer need to worry about battery life, it's time to turn Emergency mode off.

Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Turn off Emergency mode.



Charge the battery

We discovered that more and more Galaxy users are reusing accessories they already have. Therefore, we are transitioning to the removal of the wall charger and earphones in our latest line of Galaxy devices. If you get a new phone or tablet, you will need to buy the wall charger separately. However, the inbox items will still include a USB-C cable that can be used for transferring data or for connecting an existing charger.



The Galaxy Z Fold4 and the Galaxy Z Flip4 are compatible with USB-C chargers that support USB Power delivery 3.0 or Quick Charge 2.0. They can be charged using a standard 15W charger or a Superfast 25W charger for fast charging ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062589/") . Samsung has used USB-C chargers on devices since 2017 – or since the Galaxy S8 and Note8. If you've had a Galaxy device since then, you'll be able to use its charger.

Here are past devices with compatible chargers:

Chargers with Superfast charging

- S22 and S21 series phones
- Note20 series phones
- S20 series phones
- Note10 series phones
- Z Fold 2 and Z Fold3
- Galaxy A71 and A53

  Note: These models can also be used with a standard 15W charger if needed.

Chargers with Adaptive fast charging

- Z Fold and Z Flip series phones
- S10 series phones
- Note9 and Note8 series phones
- S9 and S8 series phones
- A70, A50, A51, A52 5G, A42 5G, A32 5G, A13, A12, and A02s

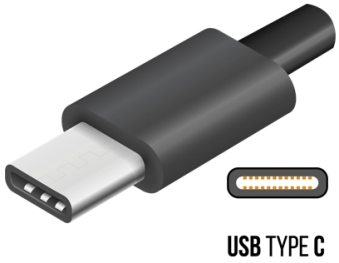
If you are a first-time Galaxy customer or do not have the charger for past devices, you can purchase ("https://www.samsung.com/us/search/searchMain/?listType=g&searchTerm=chargers&;sort=relevance&size=30&category=Accessories&accessories_type=Chargers+%26+Batteries") a new wall charger or wireless charger from the Samsung website. Please see the third section in this article for more information on different chargers.

Charging cables and USB connection types

If you don't have a compatible charger from a previous Samsung phone or tablet, you need a replacement, or just want to have a spare, you can purchase a charger ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/all-mobile-accessories/?accesso ries_type=Chargers+%26+Batteries") directly from Samsung. Just find your model in the following list to make sure you get the right one!

Most phones and tablets use either a USB Type C or Micro USB charger. USB Type C ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/tablets/micro-usb---usb-c-combo -cable-ep-dg930dweguj/") is the newest type of USB charger. The design helps prevent damage occurring inside the USB port because it doesn't matter which way you insert it into a phone or tablet.

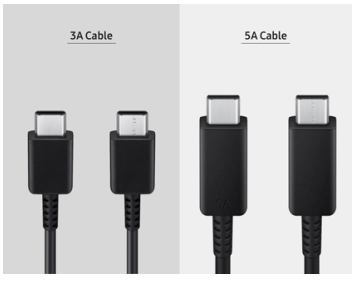
If you aren't sure what model phone or tablet you have, you can check in the device's settings. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap About phone or About tablet. Your device's name and model number will appear on this page.



Devices that use USB Type C

- The latest models: Galaxy Z Flip4 and Galaxy Z Fold4
- Galaxy Fold phones: Z Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3, Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, and Z Flip3 5G
- Galaxy S phones: S8, S8+, S9, S9+, S10e, S10, S10+, S10 5G, S20 5G, S20+ 5G, S20 Ultra 5G, S21 5G, S21+ 5G, S21 Ultra 5G, S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra
- Galaxy Note phones: Note8, Note9, Note10, Note10+, Note10+ 5G, Note 20 5G, and Note20 Ultra 5G
- Galaxy A phones: A03s, A10e, A20, A50, A02, A12, A13, A23 5G, A32 5G, A42 5G, A71, A51, A21, A11, A01, A13 5G, A52 5G, and A53 5G
- Galaxy S tablets: Tab S3, Tab S4, Tab S5e, Tab S6, Tab S7, and TabS7+
- Galaxy A tablets: Tab A 10.1 (2019-2020), Tab A 10.5 (2019), Tab A 8.0 (2016-2019), Tab A 8.4 (2020), Tab A7 (2020), Tab A7 Lite (2021), and Tab A 8 (2022)

To make things a little trickier, there are different kinds of USB-C cables. If you’re unsure which USB Type C cable you have, it’s most likely a 3A or 5A cable. Both types are capable of charging your devices as well as transferring data. However, 5A cables are thicker and able to carry more power.



Devices that use Micro USB Type B

You're probably already familiar with Micro USB Type B cables. They've been used for a long time with multiple devices. The cable's head is not symmetrical. One side has ridges while the other is flat. Make sure to insert it into

your phone's or tablet's USB port the correct way or it could damage the inside of your device.



- Galaxy S phones: S5, S6, S6 edge, S7, and S7 edge
- Galaxy Note phones: Note5
- Galaxy A phones: A6
- Galaxy J phones: J3 and J7 (all models)
- Galaxy S and E tablets: Tab S, Tab S2, and Tab E
- Galaxy A tablets: Tab A 10.1 (2016), Tab A 8.0 (2015), Tab A 7.0, and Tab A 9.7

If you've lost your Micro USB Type B charger, you can purchase a new one ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/tablets/micro-usb---usb-c-combo -cable-ep-dg930dweguj/") on Samsung.com. You can also use adapters with these cables to charge USB Type C devices.

Best practices for charging

The following tips and instructions will help you get the most out of your device's battery.

- When using wireless charging accessories, please be aware that any metal or magnetic materials (e.g., coins, magnetic cards) placed between the device and the wireless charger may decrease charging efficiency or cause damage to the phone or tablet and charger.
- Charging may take longer when using adapters, charging wirelessly, or charging the phone or tablet through another device like a PC.
- When using wired charging accessories, always check whether any foreign objects are in the connector or plug, as they may prevent charging or cause the charging accessories to overheat.
- Make sure your phone or tablet doesn't overheat. Keep it in a cool location, especially while charging.
- Don't let your battery completely drain. With new lithium-ion batteries being used, it is better to keep the battery partially charged, instead of letting it die. When possible, charge your device in small amounts to keep the battery from depleting.
  Note: If the power has been depleted, the battery charging indicator may take up to 10 minutes to appear on the device's screen while charging.
- Use a genuine Samsung fast charger for the quickest charge. You can't use the fast charging feature if you're using a standard charger.
- If your phone or tablet is not charging ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001573/") , there are a couple of things that could be causing the problem. However, if your charger doesn't work at all, it should be replaced. If it's under warranty you can request service ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/service/") . If not, you will need to purchase a new one ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/adaptive-fast-charging-w all-charger-detachable-microusb-usb-cable-white-ep-ta20jweusta/") .

Turn on your device

Important: Do not use the device if the body is cracked or broken. Use the device only after it has been repaired.

You can use the Side key (which also acts as the Power key) to turn your device on and off, as well as restart it. Please see below for directions.

- To power on: Press and hold the Side key to turn the device on.
- To power off: Press and hold the Side and Volume down keys at the same time, and tap Power off. Tap Power off again to confirm.
- To restart: Press and hold the Side and Volume down keys at the same time, and tap Restart. Tap Restart again to confirm.



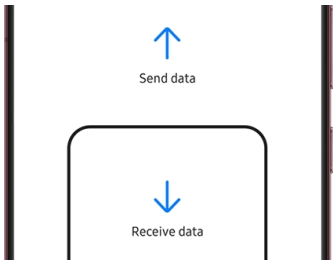
To learn more about powering off your device, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Advanced features, then tap Side key, and then tap How to power off your phone.

Transfer data from an old device

Wireless transfer from an Android phone

A wireless transfer is the preferred way to copy your data to a new phone. It's fast and lets you keep the phones plugged into their chargers during the transfer.

1. First, make sure the Smart Switch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") app is installed on both phones, and plug them into their chargers.
2. When you're ready, place the phones within 4 inches of each other.
3. Launch Smart Switch on both phones. Open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.
4. On the old phone, tap Send data, and then tap Wireless.

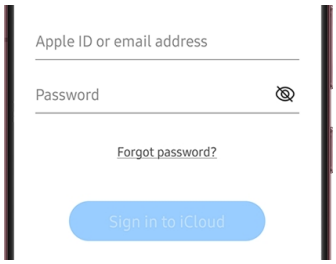


5. On your new phone, tap Receive data, tap Galaxy/Android, and then tap Wireless.
6. Next, complete the connection by tapping Allow on the old phone. On your new phone, choose the content you want to move, and then tap Transfer. Once the transfer is complete, tap Close on the new phone and you're good to go.

Import content from iCloud

You have lots of valuable data saved on your old iOS phone but transferring it seems like a logistical nightmare. No worries, Smart Switch makes transferring through iCloud ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00061001/") a breeze.

1. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.
2. Tap Receive data on the new phone, and then tap iPhone/iPad.
3. Tap Get data from iCloud instead at the bottom of the screen.
4. Enter your Apple ID and password, and then tap Sign in to iCloud.



5. Enter the verification code, and then tap OK.

6. Select the data you want to transfer, and then tap Transfer. When the transfer is finished, tap Next, tap Next again, and then tap Done.

   Note: iTunes music and videos cannot be transferred from iCloud. Unencrypted iTunes music can be transferred to your phone by simply copying the M4A files from a PC with your iTunes library. You can also transfer your music files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086603/") directly from a PC.

Connect devices with a USB cable

Note: If you use Smart Switch via a USB OTG connection, make sure your devices are at least 20% charged to ensure a safe data transfer. The transfer may take a while, depending on the volume of multimedia data. It is recommended to fully charge your devices before beginning the transfer.

Wired transfer is best for people who don't have a lot of data on their old phone. This is because wired transfer doesn't allow you to keep your phones connected to a charger during the transfer. If you have a lot of data or years' worth of text messages to transfer, we recommend performing a wireless transfer instead.

1. Connect the phones with the old phone's USB cable. Most cables will require you to use a USB-OTG adapter. If you have an iPhone ("https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=blW1lsN-VjA") with a Lightning to USB-C ("https://www.apple.com/shop/product/MX0K2AM/A/usb-c-to-lightning-cable-1-m?afid=p238%7Cs7WSElGpz-dc_mtid_1870765e38482_pcrid_500452390707_pgrid_70784887576_&cid=aos-us-kwgo-pla-btb--slid---product-MX0K2AM/A") or an Android with a USB-C to USB-C ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/usb-c-to-usb-c-cable-bla ck-ep-da705bbegus/#benefits-") cable you won't need an adapter; it will plug right into your new Galaxy.

2. Launch Smart Switch on both phones. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

3. On the old phone, tap Send data, and then tap Cable.

4. On the new phone, tap Receive data, select the type of device you're transferring from (i.e. Galaxy/Android), and then tap Cable. Smart Switch will begin scanning the old phone for transferrable content.

5. After the scan, select the data you want transferred to the new phone. An estimate of the transfer time will be displayed. If the transfer will take more than an hour, you may want to use a wireless transfer so both phones can be charged during the transfer.

   Note: You can view the other sections in this article to learn about wireless transfers.

6. When you are ready to start, tap Transfer.

7. When finished, tap Done on the new phone, and tap Close on the old phone.

   Note: A USB-OTG adapter is provided in-box with the Galaxy S10+, S10, S10e, Note10+, Note10+ 5G, and Z Flip. Newer phone models do not come with this adapter.

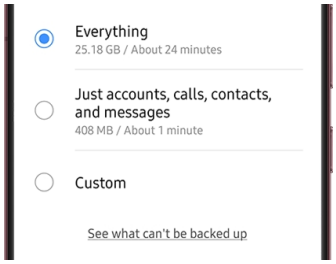
Use a microSD card or USB flash drive

If you have a large enough capacity microSD card or USB OTG flash drive, you can use Smart Switch to transfer your data and back up your old device to the external storage. Before you begin, insert the microSD card ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") or USB OTG storage device into the old phone.

1. Launch Smart Switch on the old phone. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

2. Tap the SD card icon in the upper right corner, and then tap SD card under Back up to.

3. Select what you want to back up. If there's not enough space on your external storage, you may need to deselect some items, but you can come back later to transfer anything that won't fit.



4. You can choose between Everything; Just accounts, calls, contacts, and messages; or Custom. Tap Next. If a popup message appears, select the appropriate option.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions. They will be very different depending on what option you chose. When it's complete, tap Done, and then remove the external storage device.

6. Next, insert the external storage into the new Galaxy phone, and then launch Smart Switch.

7. Tap the SD card icon, and then tap Restore. Select what you want to restore, and then tap Restore again.

8. When it's complete, tap Next, and then tap Done. You can repeat this process as many times as needed.

Note: If you connect your device to an external hard drive via an OTG cable, you can use file explorer apps (such as My Files) to copy data from the device to the external hard drive. External hard drives must be formatted as FAT or exFAT to be recognized by Galaxy devices. Some external hard drive devices require an external power supply.

Copy your data from a Windows phone

You can also use Smart Switch to transfer your data from a Windows phone.

1. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

2. On the new Galaxy phone, tap Receive data, and then tap Windows Phone.



3. Next, you will see the steps to download the Smart Switch software onto your old device. Follow the on-screen prompts to continue.

   Note: If your Location service is not enabled, you will be prompted to turn it on.

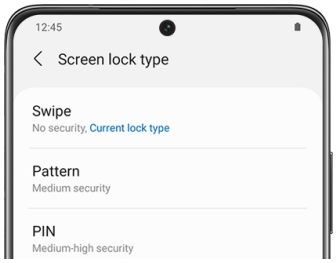
4. Once you've installed and opened Smart Switch, tap Connect on the old phone, and then select the network.

5. Enter the password shown on your new Galaxy phone. Your data will now be transferred.

Lock or unlock your phone

Use your device's screen lock features to secure your device. It is recommended that you secure your device using a secure screen lock (Pattern, PIN, or Password). This is necessary to set up and enable biometric locks. By default, the device locks automatically when the screen times out.

1. From Settings, tap Lock screen, tap Screen lock type, and then select a screen lock type (Pattern, PIN, or Password).



2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up the screen lock.
3. After you've set the lock, tap the switch next to Notifications at the top to enable notifications on the Lock screen. The following options are available for customization:
    - Icon only: Show only notification icons with no details on the Lock screen.
    - Details: Display notification details on the Lock screen.
    - Transparency: Adjust the desired transparency for notifications by using the slider.
    - Auto-reverse text color: Reverse the color of notification texts based on the current background color.
    - Hide content: Do not show notifications in the Notification panel.
    - Notifications to show: Choose which notifications to show on the Lock screen.
    - Show on Always On Display: Display notifications on the Always On Display screen.
4. Once you've adjusted the notification settings, return to the Lock screen settings page to configure the following screen lock options:
    - Smart Lock: Unlock your device automatically when trusted locations or other devices have been detected. A secure screen lock is required for this feature.
    - Secure lock settings: Customize your secure lock settings. A secure screen lock is required for this feature.
    - Always On Display: Enable the Always On Display screen.

    For more information on adjusting Lock screen settings, please see our guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078955/") .

Set up voicemail

You can set up your voicemail service when you access it for the first time.

1. Open the Phone app, and then touch and hold the 1 key or tap Voicemail.
2. Follow the tutorial to create a password, record a greeting, and record your name.

   Note: The options vary by carrier, but you can usually access your voicemail through the Phone app. Please contact your carrier for additional questions and information.



Navigate your phone with Gestures

Your phone's touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a capacitive stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object on the touch screen may damage the surface of the screen, and the damage will not be covered by the warranty. Read the information below to learn about the different ways to navigate your phone and the gestures that are used.

Tap

Lightly touch items (like apps) to select or launch them.

- Tap an item to select it.
- Double-tap an image to zoom in or out.

Drag and drop

Touch and hold an item, and then move it to a new location.

- Drag an app shortcut to add it to a Home screen.
- Drag a widget to place it in a new location.

Swipe

Lightly drag your finger across the screen.

- Swipe the screen to unlock the device.
- Swipe to scroll through Home screens or menu options.

Touch and hold

Touch and hold items to activate them.

- Touch and hold an app to display a pop-up menu of options.
- Touch and hold a Home screen to customize the Home screen.

Zoom in and out

Bring your thumb and forefinger together or apart on the screen to zoom in and out.

- Move your thumb and forefinger together on the screen to zoom out.
- Move your thumb and forefinger apart on the screen to zoom in.

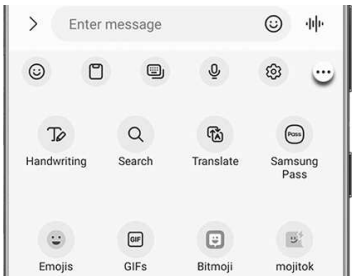
Use the on-screen keyboard

When you need to type something, text can be entered using a keyboard or your voice.

Toolbar

The toolbar provides quick access to features of the keyboard. Options may vary by carrier. Some options can always be displayed at the top of the keyboard. You can also tap Expand toolbar (the three horizontal dots) for even more options. If you'd like to customize your toolbar, just tap and hold an icon, and drag it to where you'd like it to appear.

Note: Some options will be limited by context. For example, you won't be able to insert an AR Emoji in a Google search box. You may also need to download an additional app for some options like Spotify or Bitmoji.

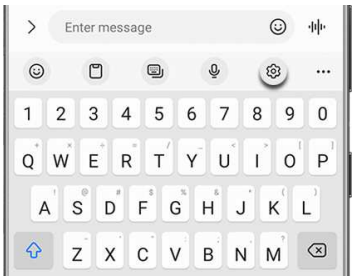


- Emojis: Insert an emoji.
- Expression: Select emojis, GIFs, AR emojis, and more.
- GIFs: Add animated GIFs.
- Voice input: Use Samsung voice input.
- Settings: Access keyboard settings.
- Handwriting: Use your handwriting to enter text. This feature is only available on phones that support the S Pen.
- Search: Locate specific words or phrases in your conversations.
- Translate: Type words or sentences in the keyboard to translate them into another language.
- Samsung Pass: Use biometrics for secure access to apps and services.
- Spotify: Add music from Spotify.
- YouTube: Add videos from YouTube.
- Clipboard: Access the clipboard.
- Text editing: Use an editing panel to help pinpoint text that you want to cut, copy, and paste.
- Modes: Select a keyboard layout.
- Keyboard size: Adjust the height and width of the keyboard.
- Bitmoji: Create your own personal emoji and use it in stickers.
- AR Emoji: Create your own personal emoji and use it in stickers you can share.

- Mojitok: Create your own stickers or insert automatically suggested ones.

Configure the Samsung keyboard

You can set customized options for the Samsung keyboard. From the Samsung keyboard, tap Settings (the gear icon) for the following options:



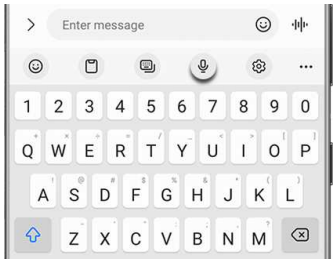
- Languages and types: Set the keyboard type and choose which languages are available on the keyboard. To switch between languages, swipe the Space bar left or right.
- Smart typing
    - Predictive text: See suggested words and phrases as you type.
    - Suggest emojis: Include emojis when using predictive text.
    - Suggest stickers while typing: View recommended stickers while you are typing.
    - Auto replace: Automatically replace what you type with predictive text recommendations.
    - Suggest text corrections: Underline potential grammar errors in green and suggest corrections.
    - Text shortcuts: Create shortcuts for frequently used phrases that will be suggested when you type the shortcut. For example, you can have your email address suggested every time you type "email".
    - More typing options: Customize additional typing options. You can automatically capitalize sentences, insert a space when you use predictive text, add a period when you tap the spacebar twice, or enable text prediction for all supported input languages.
- Style and layout
    - Keyboard toolbar: View or hide the keyboard toolbar.
    - High contrast keyboard: Adjust the size of the Samsung keyboard and change its colors to increase the contrast between the keys and the background.
    - Theme: Choose a theme for your keyboard.
    - Mode: Choose between Portrait and Landscape view.
    - Size and transparency: Adjust the size and transparency of the keyboard.
    - Layout: Display numbers and special characters on the keyboard.
    - Font size: Drag the slider to adjust the font size.
    - Custom symbols: Change the symbol shortcuts on the keyboard.
- Other settings
    - Swipe, touch, and feedback: Customize gestures and feedback.
    - Handwriting: Customize handwriting options (Galaxy S21 Ultra 5G only).

- Select third-party content to use: Enable third-party keyboard features.
- Reset to default settings: Return the keyboard to its original settings and clear personalized data.
- About Samsung Keyboard: View the software version and legal information for the Samsung Keyboard.
- Contact us: Contact Samsung Support through Samsung Members (if supported by your carrier).

Use Samsung voice input

Instead of manually typing with the keyboard, you can enter text by speaking.

1. From the Samsung keyboard, tap Voice input (the microphone icon) and say what you'd like to type.



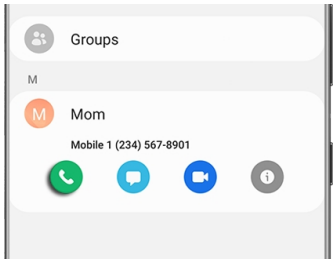
2. To set customized options for Samsung voice input, tap Voice input from the keyboard, and then tap Settings. The following options are available:
   - Keyboard language: Choose the language for the keyboard.
   - Voice input language: Select the language for Samsung voice input.
   - Hide offensive words: Hide potentially offensive words with asterisks.
   - About Samsung voice input: View version and legal information for Samsung voice input.

Use the Phone app for calls

The Phone app allows you to make and answer calls from the Home screen, Recents tab, Contacts, and more. Contact your carrier for more information. The actual appearance of the Phone app screen varies by carrier.

Make a call

- Using the keypad: From the Phone app, enter a number on the keypad and tap Call. Tap the Keypad tab if the keypad is not displayed.
- Make a call from Recents: From the Phone app, tap Recents to display a list of recent calls. Select a contact, and then tap Call.
- Make a call from Contacts: From the Contacts tab in the Phone app, select a contact, and then tap Call. You can also do this from the Contacts app.



Answer, decline, or end a call

When a call is received, the phone rings and the caller's phone number or name will display. If you are using an app when a call comes in, a pop-up screen will display. You can easily answer or decline an incoming call using the provided options on the call screen or pop-up menu.

- Answer a call: On the incoming call screen, drag or tap the Answer icon to answer the call.
- Decline a call: On the incoming call screen, drag or tap Decline to reject the call and send it to your voicemail.
- Decline a call with a message: You can choose to decline an incoming call with a text message response. On the incoming call screen, drag Send message upward and select a message, such as "I can't talk right now."
- End a conversation: Tap End call when you are ready to hang up.

Actions while you're on a call

You can adjust the call volume, switch to a headset or speaker, and even multitask while on a call.



- Adjust volume: Press the Volume keys to increase or decrease the volume.

- Switch to headset or speaker: Listen to the call using the speaker or through a Bluetooth headset (not included). Tap the Speaker icon to hear the caller using the speaker or tap the Bluetooth icon to hear the caller using a connected Bluetooth headset.
- Multitask: If you exit the call screen to use another app, your active call is indicated in the Status bar.
    - To return to the call screen: Drag the Status bar down to display the Notification panel and tap the call.
    - To end a call while multitasking: Drag the Status bar down to display the Notification panel, and then tap End call.
- Place a call on hold: Tap More options (the three vertical dots) and then tap Hold call. When you're ready to resume the call, just tap RESUME CALL on the phone screen.

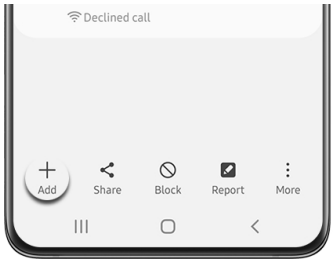
Call log

The numbers of the calls you have dialed, received, or missed are stored in the Call log. From the Phone app, tap Recents. A list of recent calls will display. If the caller is in your Contacts list, the caller’s name is displayed.

Save a contact from a recent call

Use recent call information to create a contact or update your Contacts list.

1. From the Phone app, tap Recents.
2. Tap the call that contains the information that you want to save to your Contacts list, and tap Add to contacts.



3. Tap Create new contact or Update existing contact.
4. Enter the necessary information to create or edit the contact.
5. Tap Save to confirm.

Delete call records

If your Call log is getting really long, you can delete some past records from it. You can also select multiple calls and delete them all at once.

1. From the Phone app, tap the Recents tab.
2. Touch and hold the call you want to delete from the Call log. Tap Delete to confirm.

Block a number

By adding a caller to your Block list, future calls from this number are sent directly to your voicemail, and messages are not received.

1. From the Phone app, tap the Recents tab.
2. Tap the caller you want to add to the Block list.

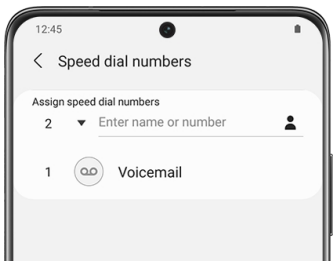
3. Tap the Details icon, then tap Block, and then confirm when prompted.

   Note: You can also modify your Block list in Settings. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), tap Settings, and tap Block numbers.

Speed dial

This feature lets you assign a contact to a number on your phone's keypad (i.e. 2, 3, etc.). You can then dial the number by holding down the designated number on the keypad.

1. From the Phone app, tap Keypad, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Speed dial numbers. The Speed dial number screen displays the reserved speed dial numbers.



2. Tap an unassigned number.

   - Tap the drop-down menu (the downward arrow) to select a different Speed dial number than the next one in the sequence (i.e. 3, 4, etc.).
   - Number 1 is reserved for Voicemail.

3. Type in a name or number, or tap Add from Contacts (the person icon) to assign a contact to the number.

   - The selected contact is displayed in the Speed dial number box.

Make a call with Speed dial

You can make a call using Speed dial. From the Phone app, touch and hold the assigned Speed dial number in the keypad (i.e. 2, 3, etc.). If the Speed dial number is more than one digit long, enter the first digits, and then hold the last digit.

Remove a Speed dial number

If desired, you can remove an assigned Speed dial number. You can always assign another number to that shortcut later on.

1. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Speed dial numbers.
2. Tap the Delete icon (the red minus sign) by the contact you want to remove from Speed dial.

Emergency calls

You can dial the emergency telephone number in your region regardless of the phone's service status. If your phone is not activated, you can only make an emergency call.

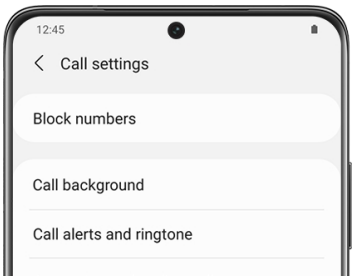
1. From the Phone app, enter the emergency telephone number (911 in North America) and tap Call.
2. Complete your call. During this type of call, you have access to most in-call features.

   Note: The emergency telephone number can be dialed even if the phone is locked, allowing anyone to use your phone to call for help in an emergency. When accessed from a locked screen, only the emergency

calling feature is accessible to the caller. The rest of the phone remains secured.

Phone settings

These settings allow you to modify settings associated with the Phone app. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.



Place a multi-party call

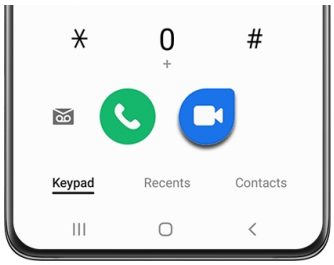
You can add another number to a phone call while the call is in progress. Options vary by carrier.

1. From the active call, tap Add call (the plus sign) to dial the second call.
2. Dial the new number and tap Call. When the call is answered:
    - Tap Swap to switch between the two calls.
    - Tap the On hold number to switch between the two calls.
    - Tap Merge to hear both callers at once (multi-conferencing).

Video calls

Video calls use your phone's cameras to record, so you and the recipient can talk and see each other in real time!

- Open the Phone app, enter a number, and then tap Google Meet call or Video call. Not all devices support video calling. The receiver has the option to accept the video call or answer the call as a regular voice call.



Real Time Text (RTT)

Type back and forth in real time with the other person while on a call. You can use RTT whenever you are calling someone whose phone also supports RTT or is connected to a teletypewriter (TTY) device. The RTT icon appears on all incoming RTT calls.

1. From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
2. Tap Real Time Text for the following options:
    - RTT call button: Choose a visibility option for the RTT call button.

- Always visible: Show the RTT call button on the keypad and during calls.
- Use external TTY keyboard: Hide the RTT keyboard when an external TTY keyboard is connected.
- TTY mode: Choose the preferred TTY mode for the keyboard in use.

Call display while using apps

When calls are received while using other apps, they can be displayed as pop-ups. However, you can change this setting to match your preferences.

From the Phone app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Settings, and then tap Call display while using apps. The following options are available:

- Full screen: Display an incoming call in the full screen Phone app.
- Pop-up: Display an incoming call as a pop-up at the top of the screen.
- Mini pop-up: Display an incoming call as a smaller pop-up.
- Keep calls in pop-up: Enable this option to keep calls in the pop-up after they are answered.

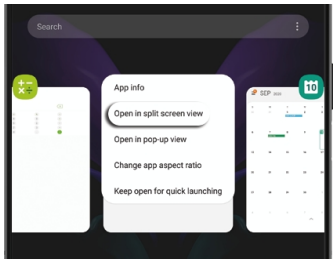
Use Multi window

Use Multi window split screen view

With Multi window, you can have two apps open at the same time using split screen view. For example, you can use the calculator for math homework while watching watching a video.

1. To access Multi window, open the first app and then tap Recent, which is located to the left of the Home button, unless you've chosen to customize your navigation bar ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062622/") .
2. Tap the desired app's icon, and then tap Open in split screen view. This app will be pinned to the top window.

   Note: Not all apps support split screen view.



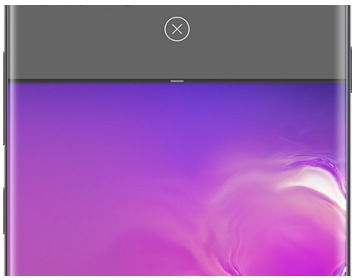
3. To open a second app in the bottom window, simply open the desired app from the list.
4. To close one of the windows, drag the center divider bar all the way to the top or bottom of the screen until the window closes.

Foldable phones like the Z Fold and Z Flip series have extra features when it comes to Multi window! You can read about it in our guide to Multi window on foldable phones ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086243/") .

Exit Multi window split screen view

When you want to give Multi window a break and just use one app, you can close the split screen view.

To do this, tap the Home button. This will close them completely out on the home screen but leave them together in recents.



Add or remove Edge panels

Create an App pair

Note: The Edge panel is available only on certain device models.

Instead of separately opening apps you always use together, create an App pair. That way, those two apps will open simultaneously in split screen view. If you're using the Z Fold2, you can create an App pair with three apps.

1. Swipe left to open the Apps Edge panel. Touch and hold your desired app, and drag and drop it into the top portion of the screen.
2. Open Apps Edge again, and then select a second app. Drag and drop it into the bottom portion of the screen.
3. Tap the divider between the two windows to change the orientation and create an App pair:
    - Tap the two arrows to swap the apps' positions.
    - Tap the App pair icon (it has a plus sign) to create an App pair. The App pair will be saved.
4. If you'd like to add a third app to the App pair, open Apps Edge again, and then drag and drop the new app into your preferred position.

    Note: Adding three apps to an App pair is only available on the Z Fold2.
5. Once all three apps are on the screen, tap the three vertical dots in the center, and then tap the App pair icon. The three apps will be saved in a group.

Remove shortcuts from Apps Edge

Note: The Edge panel is available only on certain device models.

Maybe doing homework while playing a game isn't the best idea. Remove that shortcut to make room for a new one.

From any screen, open Apps Edge by swiping the Edge panel to the left. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines) at the bottom, and then tap Edit. Now you can tap the minus symbol next to the shortcuts you want to remove.

You can always add the shortcut back later, or add new Edge panels ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080551/") with additional apps that you'd like to use.



Use Wireless power sharing

Most Qi-Compatible Samsung devices can be charged with Wireless PowerShare, but check out the full list of compatible devices just in case. The speed and power of the charge will vary by device.

Phones that can use and also be charged with Wireless PowerShare:

- Galaxy S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra
- Galaxy S21, S21+, and S21 Ultra
- Note20 5G and Note20 Ultra 5G
- Galaxy Note10, Note10+, and Note10+ 5G
- Galaxy Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3 and Z Fold4
- Galaxy Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, Z Flip3 and Z Flip4
- Galaxy S20 5G, S20+ 5G, S20 Ultra 5G, and S20 FE
- Galaxy S10e, S10, S10+, and S10 5G

Other devices that can be charged by Wireless PowerShare:

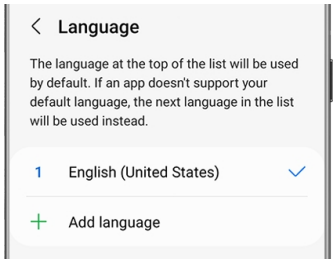
- Galaxy Buds, Galaxy Buds2, Galaxy Buds+, Galaxy Buds Live, Galaxy Buds Pro, and Galaxy Buds2 Pro
- Galaxy Watch, Galaxy Watch3, Galaxy Watch4 series, Galaxy Watch5 series, Gear Sport, and Gear S3
- Galaxy S7/S7 Edge, S8/S8+, S9/S9+, Note8, and Note9
- Galaxy Watch Active and Galaxy Watch Active2

Change language and input settings

Add or remove languages

You're trying to learn Spanish, but you aren't quite there yet. Add it as a language on your phone, so you can practice reading and writing in it.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap General Management.
2. Tap Language, and then tap Add language.

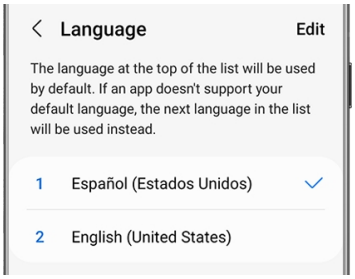


3. If you don't see the language you are looking for, tap More options (the three vertical dots), tap All languages, and then select your desired language.
4. Next, based on your preferences, tap Keep current or Set as default.
5. To delete languages, navigate to Settings, and then tap General management. Tap Language, and then tap Edit.
   Note: The Edit option will not show up unless you have more than one language added.
6. Select the language you want to delete, and then tap Remove. Tap Remove again to confirm.

Change the default language

If you're finally fluent in the language you've been studying, you can change the default language on your phone.

1. From Settings, tap General management, and then tap Language.
2. Select the language you want to be the default language.
3. Tap Apply to confirm. Your selected language will now become the phone's default language.

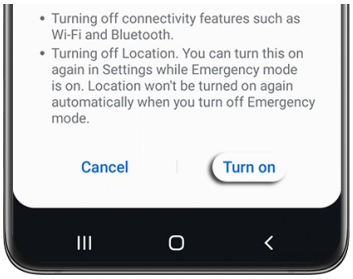


Use Emergency mode

Activate Emergency mode

When in Emergency mode, you will be able to use the Phone app to make a call to a specified contact and also to make emergency calls. You can also turn on the flashlight and sound alarms and send your location information to others in a message.

1. To turn on Emergency mode ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=use-emergency-mode") , swipe down from the top of the screen using two fingers to open the Quick settings panel. Tap the Power icon, and then tap Emergency mode.
2. If needed, enter your lock screen credentials.
3. Tap the checkbox to confirm you have read the Emergency mode terms and conditions, and then tap Agree.
4. Tap Turn on - Emergency Mode will activate.



You can also press and hold the Power and Volume down keys simultaneously, and then tap Emergency mode.

Emergency calling

Make an emergency call from the Lock screen

When something urgent is happening, you probably won't have time to unlock your device and call 9-1-1. If you have a security measure in place, like a PIN or a biometric security, you can make an emergency call right from the Lock screen. Just swipe up on your device's screen to be taken to the Lock screen, and then tap Emergency call. A dial pad will appear where you can enter your desired number. Your registered emergency contacts will also appear at the top of the screen. Finally, a Medical info icon will appear at the bottom of the screen. Tap this to show any medical information you've added to your personal contact.

Make an emergency call with no service or SIM card

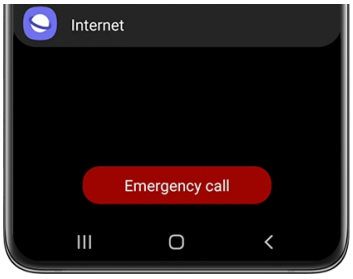
In a dire situation, you can still make emergency calls even if you don't have service or a working SIM card. As long as there is a network signal nearby, your device will let you contact 9-1-1. The network doesn't even have to be your own carrier - it just needs a signal that is strong enough to put the call through. When you need to make an emergency call, dial 9-1-1 the way you normally would.

Make a call while in Emergency mode

The Home screen in Emergency mode will only display the apps and functions you absolutely need. This includes the Phone app and the Emergency call option.

Tap the Phone app to access all of your contacts, so you can still make a call to family members and friends. The Keypad is also available if you need to dial a new number.

Tap Emergency call at the bottom of the Home screen to dial 9-1-1. Tap Yes to activate the call.



Turn off Emergency mode

When you no longer need to worry about battery life, it's time to turn Emergency mode off.

Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Turn off Emergency mode.



Galaxy phones and tablets dust and water resistance (IP rating)

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077679



Whether you're a hiking enthusiast or live in a bustling city, having a durable mobile device will give you peace of mind. If you have an S7 or newer, or a Tab S9, your device is equipped with protection from water, dirt, and grime. An IP rating or Ingress Protection rating is a universally accepted measurement for dust and liquid resistance. Almost all newer Galaxy phones and the Tab S9 have an IP rating of 68, excluding the Galaxy Z series, and the S10 5G. That means you can bring your device on your adventures without having to worry.

Note: Available screens and settings may vary by wireless service provider, software version, and device model. The touchscreen may not be active if wet. If you have an S Pen, it does not need to be inserted to maintain the IP68 rating. The S Pen has an IP68 rating as well. If a model is not listed, then it does not have an IP rating. Information regarding the specific IP rating of your device can be found in your user guide or at Samsung.com ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads/") .

Devices with an IP rating

Here is a list of all phones with Samsung's highest level of water protection. If a phone is not listed, it does not have an IP rating. You can visit our website to find a Galaxy phone ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/phones/all-phones/") or tablet ("https://www.samsung.com/us/tablets/galaxy-tab-s9/") with dust and water resistant protection that is right for you.

The S Pen in the Galaxy Note and S Ultra model phones has an IP68 rating. S Pen accessories ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/all-mobile-accessories/?accesso ries_type=S+Pens") available on our website for specific Note and S Ultra models also have an IP68 rating.

The following phones and tablets carry an IP68 rating:

- S24, S24+, and S24 Ultra
- S23, S23+, S23 Ultra, and S23 Fan Edition
- S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra
- S21 5G, S21+ 5G, S21 Ultra 5G, and S21 Fan Edition
- S20 5G, S20+ 5G, S20 Ultra 5G, and S20 Fan Edition
- S10e, S10, and S10+
- S8, S8+, and S8 Active

- Note9, including the S Pen
- XCover6 Pro
- Note20 5G and Note20 Ultra 5G, including the S Pen
- Note10, Note10+, and Note10+ 5G, including the S Pen
- Note8, including the S Pen
- S7, S7 edge, and S7 Active
- S9, S9+, and S9 Active
- S6 Active
- Galaxy Tab S9, S9 FE, S9+, S9 FE+, and S9 Ultra

The following phones carry an IP67 rating:

- S5 Active
- A52 5G, A53 5G, and A54 5G

The following phones carry an IPX8 rating:

- Z Fold3, Z Fold 4, and Z Fold5
- Z Flip3, Z Flip4, and Z Flip5

Water and dust resistance tips

If you are headed to the beach or waterpark, you can take comfort knowing your Galaxy device can keep up with you if it has a high IP rating. Just make sure you don't drop the phone in the ocean or while you're going down a waterslide.

Keep these tips in mind when you're facing the elements:

- Whenever your device gets wet, dry it thoroughly with a clean, soft cloth.
- Do not expose the device to salt water or ionized water. If it is exposed to salt water, wash it with fresh water, and then dry thoroughly with a clean, soft cloth. Otherwise, when it dries, salt may accumulate and block the primary microphone, earpiece, or external speaker.
- When drying off your device, be sure to pat the earpiece (top front of the phone), primary microphone (bottom of phone), external speaker (bottom of phone), and the power/accessory (USB) interface connector with a clean, soft cloth to remove as much water as possible.
- Do not try making a call immediately after your device has gotten wet. The microphone may have water in it, which may lower the volume of your voice on the other line. Wipe the device with a clean, soft cloth, and then allow the phone to air-dry before making a call.
- Physical damage to your device, such as chips and cracks, can significantly reduce its ability to resist dust and water.
- If the S Pen is exposed to water, wipe it with a dry cloth. If water has entered the S Pen slot on your phone, gently shake the phone to remove the water before using it. Make sure your phone and S Pen are completely dry before inserting the S Pen. Moisture can cause the S Pen to feel stiff when you're trying to detach it.

Personalize your phone

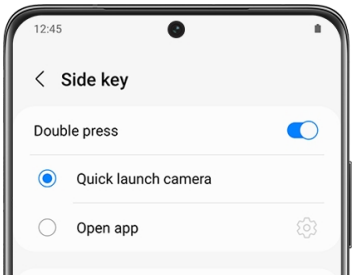
https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091423



Customize the Side key

Note: The Note10, Note20, S20, S21, Z Fold series, Z Flip series, A50, A51, A71, and A52 5G have a Side key. The Side key can be customized to open Bixby or perform other actions.

Keep opening Bixby by accident when you press the Side key? You can remap the Side key to open any app of your choice. Navigate to and open Settings, tap Advanced features, and then tap Side key. From here, you can select your desired settings.



For Double press, you can choose between:

- Quick launch camera
- Open app (Tap the Settings icon to select an app.)

For Press and hold, you can choose between:

- Wake Bixby
- Power off menu (You can also use the Quick settings panel or Bixby to turn off your phone.)

For additional details about setting up and using Bixby, please check out our Bixby guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00076739/") .

Customize the Navigation bar

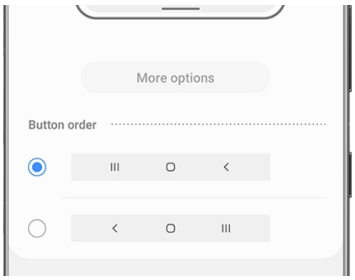
Button order

You can also adjust the order of the buttons on the Navigation bar.

From Settings, tap Display, and then tap Navigation bar. Make sure Buttons is selected, and then you can choose

your desired button setup at the bottom of the screen.

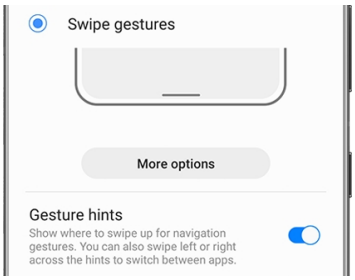
Note: This option will also affect the location you swipe when using Swipe gestures.



Use Swipe gestures

You can use gestures instead of buttons to navigate your device if that's simpler, or if you just want to remove the buttons from your screen for a less cluttered appearance.

1. From Settings, tap Display.
2. Tap Navigation bar, and then choose Swipe gestures.
3. Turn on Gesture hint for help on where to swipe, and turn on Show button to hide keyboard to enable the buttons when using Portrait mode. Additionally, you can block gestures with the S Pen so you don't accidentally activate a command when drawing or writing.
4. Tap More options to edit the direction you need to swipe.



Here are the functions for each gesture:

- Far left: When you swipe here, your recently opened apps will appear.
- Middle: Swipe up in the center to be taken to the Home screen.
- Far right: Swipe here to go back to the previous screen.

  Note: To completely hide the Swipe gestures lines, make sure to turn off Gesture hint by tapping the switch. The three lines on the bottom of the screen will disappear.

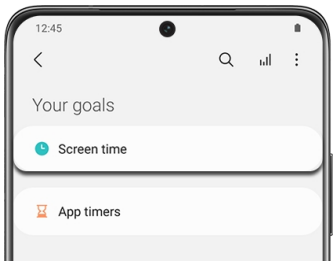
Manage your Digital Wellbeing

Set a Screen time

The Your goals option allows you to use the Screen time setting to manage your usage and set your preferred amount of daily screen time.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.

2. Tap Screen time under Your goals, and then tap Set goal. Choose your desired amount of the hours and minutes for your screen time goal. Tap Done.
   Note: On some devices, you may need to choose your desired time first, and then tap Set.



3. After the schedule is created, you can tap a day of the week to view your current usage. You'll see the hours and minutes you've spent on your device that day.

4. To change or delete the goal, tap Screen time, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then choose your desired option.

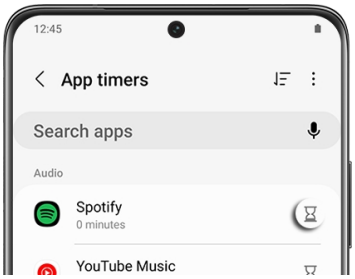
Set and use app timers

Think of the Digital Wellbeing feature as a budget, but for digital habits instead of spending habits. You can view your overall usage, the amount of time you've spent on your apps every day, the number of notifications you've received, and the number of times you've unlocked your phone or tablet. You can even set a timer for each app to help you keep track of how long you're using them.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.

2. Tap App timers under Your goals. Then, tap the hourglass icon next to your desired app.

3. Then, select your desired amount of time, and tap Done.



Use Bedtime mode

Note: On some devices and software versions, Bedtime mode will be called Wind Down.

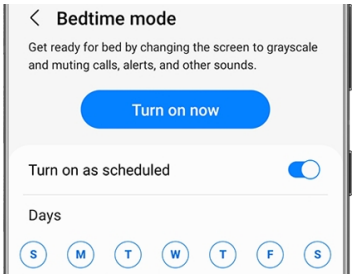
Looking at a screen before going to bed can actually affect how well you sleep. To prevent this, turn on Bedtime mode to change the screen to grayscale. This will help remind your brain that it's almost time for bed.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.

2. Tap Bedtime mode or Wind Down. If prompted, tap Start. Make sure the switch next to "Turn on as scheduled" is enabled.

3. Select your desired days to use Bedtime mode (i.e. Monday - Friday).

4. Next, tap Set schedule, and then choose your desired time. Tap Done or OK to finish.

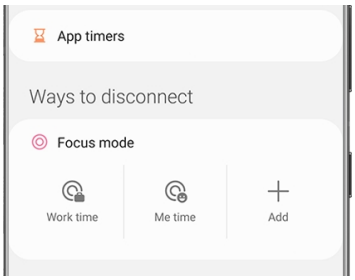


Use Focus mode

When you need to concentrate on studying or just want some alone time, you can use Focus mode.

Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing. Under Focus mode, pick from one of the three options:

- Work time: Set up this mode to block apps that you don't want to receive alerts from while working. Tap Edit to add your desired apps. Once your apps have been selected, tap Done, and then tap Start to activate Focus mode. Tap End Focus mode when you're finished.



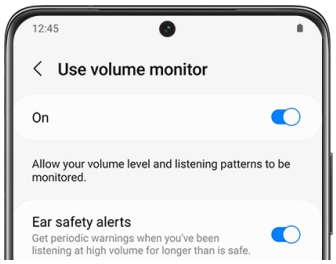
- Me time: Set up this mode to block apps that you don't want to receive alerts from when you're relaxing. Tap Edit to add apps, select your desired ones, and then tap Done. Tap Start to begin, and then tap End Focus mode when you're finished.
- Add: This lets you create your own Focus mode. First, name your mode and tap Save. Tap Edit to add apps, select your desired ones, and then tap Done. Tap Start to begin, and then tap End Focus mode when you're finished. Your unique mode will be saved for future use. To rename your mode or to delete your custom mode, tap on it from the Digital Wellbeing Home screen, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). From there, select your desired option.

Note: You must end your current Focus mode before adding a new mode.

Use Volume monitor

If you love turning up the volume when using your Galaxy Buds or other headphones, let Volume monitor make sure you’re keeping your ears safe.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap Volume monitor under Comfort care.
3. Tap Start if prompted, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots).
4. Tap Use volume monitor, and then tap the switch at the top to turn it on. You can also tap the switch next to Ear safety alerts to receive warnings when you’ve been listening at high volumes for long periods of time.

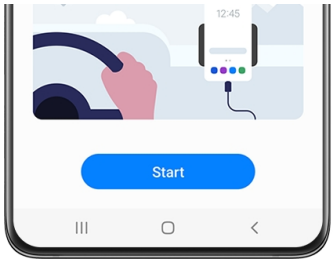


5. Next, tap Back to view your Daily and Weekly audio data. The next time you're listening to some music, you can check your audio data by going back to this screen.

Use Driving monitor

Driving monitor helps you focus on driving when your device is connected to your car via Bluetooth. You'll be able to check which apps you tend to use the most while driving.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap Driving monitor under Comfort care.
3. Tap Start if prompted, and then tap Add to choose your excluded apps.



4. Select the app(s) you'd like to exclude from Driving monitor, such as navigation apps that you may want to use while driving. Then, tap Done. Now, Driving monitor will only monitor the apps you did not exclude.
5. When you're ready to get on the road, tap Start to begin using Driving monitor. As long as your device is connected to your car using Bluetooth, Driving monitor will keep track of your device usage.
6. Your Driving time and Screen time while driving will be calculated at the bottom of the screen. You can also tap Daily or Weekly at the top to view your device usage over time.

Set up Parental controls

If you are concerned about your kids spending too much time on their devices or coming across something inappropriate on the internet, you can set up parental controls ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086102/") .

With this feature, you can set limits on their usage time and also add content restrictions. That way, you'll have one less thing to worry about.

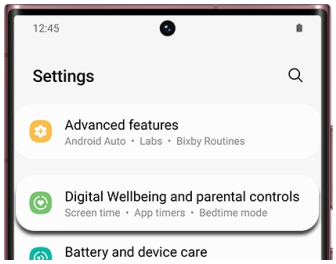


Parental controls

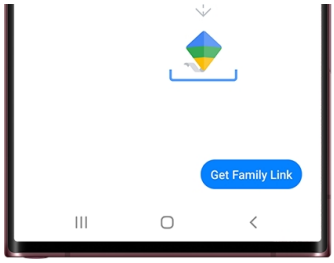
Set up Parental controls

You can restrict your child’s app usage by setting up Parental controls through Google’s Family Link app. Once you do, you'll be able to prevent them from accessing certain apps and also keep an eye on how long they use their phone or tablet.

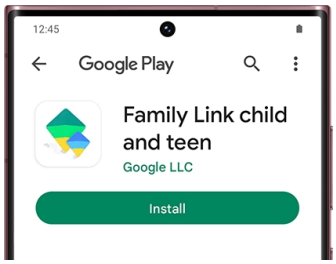
1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls.



2. Tap Parental controls, and then tap Get started.
3. Select Child or teen, or Parent, depending on the device’s user. In this case, tap Parent.
4. Next, tap Get Family Link and install Google Family Link.



5. If needed, install the app. When it's done downloading, tap Open, review the information, and then tap Get started.
6. If you have more than one Google account added to your device, select your desired one.
7. Next, you will need to choose who will be using the device: Parent or Child or teen. For this example, tap Parent.
8. Make sure the device you want to supervise is nearby, and then tap Next. Read the information, and then tap I'm ready.
9. Select Yes or No depending if your child has a Google account. For this example, tap Yes.
10. Review the instructions to set up your child’s device, then tap Done, and then tap OK.
11. Using your child’s device, download Google Family Link for children & teens ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.kids.familylinkhelper&hl=en_US") , and then enter the provided Family Link setup code.



12. Use the on-screen instructions on both devices to finish connecting the two devices.
13. Once it's all set up, you can use the Family Link app to keep an eye on everything. Tap Need help? at the bottom for additional instructions on how to use the supervision features on Android or Chrome OS devices.

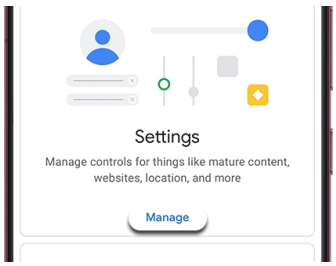
If you ever want to add another child to supervise, open the app, and then tap Add (the plus sign) in the upper right-hand corner. From there, you can repeat the same process to add your child's Google account.

If you'd like to learn more about Google's Family Link app, please visit Google's help center ("https://support.google.com/families/answer/7158477") .

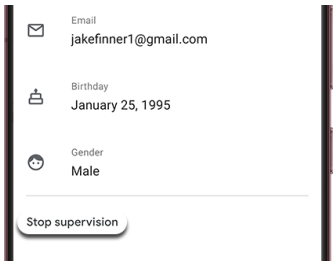
Stop supervising an account

Keep in mind you cannot stop supervising your child's account until they are at least 13 years old. Google may still limit access to age restricted content on their services.

1. On the parent device, open the Google Family Link app.
2. Tap the child's account that you will no longer supervise.
3. Tap Manage under Settings, and then tap Account info.



4. Tap Stop supervision and follow the on-screen instructions to confirm your understanding about how stopping supervision will affect your child's access.



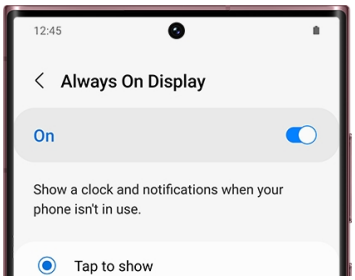
5. Tap the checkbox and then tap Stop supervision. Follow the displayed instructions.

Always On Display

Turn Always On Display on or off

Always On Display is very handy, but maybe you want to save some battery power. No worries, you can turn your AOD on or off whenever you want.

1. From Settings, search for and select Always On Display.
2. Tap Always On Display, and then tap the switch to turn it on or off.
3. From this screen, you can also adjust the AOD's settings. Please see the next section for more details.



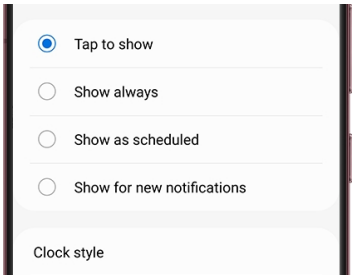
Note: Always On Display is not available on the Cover screen for the Galaxy Z Flip or Galaxy Z Flip 5G.

Adjust your AOD's display options and settings

As you probably already know, Always On Display shows important information on your Galaxy device's screen when it's turned off. However, there are a couple settings and display mode options that you can adjust.

From Settings, search for and select Always On Display, and then tap Always On Display. From this screen, you can adjust AOD's new features.

- Tap to show: This is the default setting. When it's activated, you must tap the screen to make your AOD appear for 10 seconds. This setting will help conserve battery.
- Show always: This setting will display AOD continuously whenever your phone screen is off. Use this setting if you don't want to tap anything to see your AOD. Keep in mind that this setting will use more battery power.



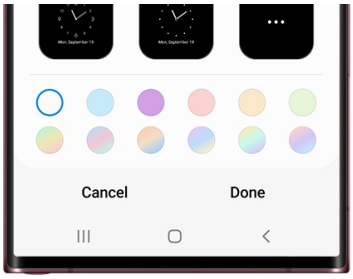
- Show as scheduled: This setting shows your AOD based on a set schedule. Use this setting if you want AOD to display at certain times. For example, you can set your AOD to only display during your work day and turn off while you're asleep. This setting will reduce AOD's battery consumption.
- Show for new notifications: This setting will show AOD when you recieve a new notification.
- Clock style: You can customize the clock type and color.
- Show music information: Use this setting to show music information on your screen when it's off. This is useful because you'll see the artist and track information of a song without having to unlock your phone.
- Screen orientation: Choose between Portrait mode and Landscape mode.
- Auto brightness: This setting is on by default and automatically adjusts the brightness level of your AOD. To manually control the brightness level, tap the switch next to Auto brightness. Then, adjust the slider to set your desired brightness level. Alternatively, you can double tap the clock when your AOD displays, and then adjust the brightness level there.

Note: AOD is turned on by default, but if it has been disabled, you will need to turn it on to access its settings. AOD is not available when a Power saving mode is turned on.

Customize your AOD's Clock style

Whether it's digital or analog, everyone has a preferred way to tell the time. With AOD, you can choose the clock style that appears on your Galaxy device.

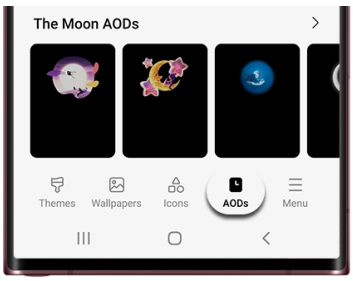
From Settings, search for and select Always On Display. Tap Always On Display again, and then tap Clock style. From here, you can choose your desired clock style. You can also change the clock's color. When you are finished, tap Done.



Download new Clock styles for your AOD

Pick a theme that matches your interests—Whales, hummingbirds, or Minions, anyone?

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap AODs, select an AOD theme you like, and then tap Download or tap the price (i.e., $0.99).
3. If needed, choose either Select payment method or Use discounts, and then enter the necessary information.
4. Once it's downloaded, tap Apply, choose your desired preferences, and then tap Done.
5. Your new design will now display on your device's screen when the AOD is active.

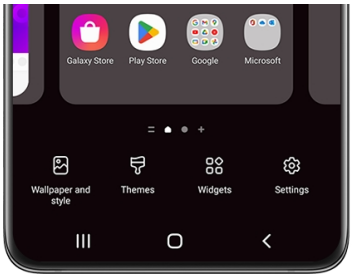


Manage Home screens

Manage Home screens

When you open your device, you want to get right to the good stuff, and that starts with the Home screen. You can customize your Home screens any way you want. Add, remove, or change your main Home screen, so everything is just how you like.

1. From any Home screen, touch and hold an empty space.
2. The screen will enter Edit mode, displaying multiple screens. From here, use the following options to manage your screens:

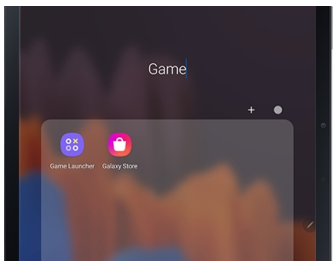


- Add a screen: Swipe left until you see an empty Home screen, and then tap Add (it looks like a plus sign).
- Remove a screen: Swipe to a Home screen you want to remove, and then tap the Delete icon (it looks like a trash can) at the top.
- Set a screen as the main Home screen: Swipe to the Home screen you want to make your main screen. Tap the Home icon (it looks like a house) at the top to make it your go-to screen. The bolded Home icon indicates which one is the main Home screen.
- Change the order of screens: Touch and hold the screen you want to move, and then drag it to the desired position.
- Turn Samsung Free or Google Discover on or off: If you'd like to enable or disable Samsung Free or Google Discover ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088162/") , swipe all the way to the right until you reach the Samsung Free and Google Discover screen. Tap the switch at the top to turn it on or off.
- Edit the Home screen settings: Tap Settings at the bottom of the screen to be taken to even more options for the Home screen, such as adjusting the Home screen's layout.

Create or delete folders

Your device comes with preloaded folders, like the Samsung folder, so all your related apps can be together in one place. But you can also create and edit your own folders to help you organize your other apps.

1. From the Home screen, touch and hold an app. You can also swipe up to access the Apps screen, and then choose an app.
2. Drag the app on top of another app, and then release. The two apps will both be added to the same folder.
3. Tap Folder name and enter an appropriate name for the folder. Tap Done.



4. To select a color for the folder, tap the Palette icon in the upper right-hand corner.
5. You can add more apps to the folder by tapping Add (the plus sign) or by dragging other apps into the folder.
6. To exit the folder, tap anywhere outside the folder.
7. If the folder is on your Home screen, you can move it to a different spot. Touch and hold the folder, and drag it to your desired location.
8. If your folder is on the Apps screen, you can also move it by touching and dragging it. Or, you can touch and hold the folder, and then tap Add to Home. A shortcut for the folder will appear on the Home screen and a

copy of the folder will remain on the Apps screen.

9. To delete a folder, touch and hold the desired folder, and then tap Remove. The folder will be removed and the apps will return to the Apps screen.

10. If you have multiple copies of the same folder (i.e. one on the Home screen and one in Apps), they will have to be deleted separately.

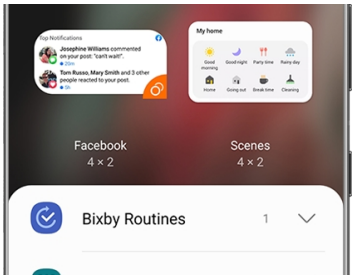
Add or remove widgets

Widgets are like mini versions of apps. They appear on your Home screen and when you tap them, they will activate or use an app's feature. These shortcuts will help you access your favorite apps faster.

1. To add a widget, swipe to a Home screen. Then, touch and hold an empty spot.

2. Tap Widgets, select your desired widget, and then tap Add.

3. To remove a widget, just touch and hold the widget on the Home screen, and then tap Remove.



There are a few options available after you've placed your widget. Keep in mind the options may vary depending on the widget.

- Resize: Widgets that can be resized will have a blue line along its edges. You can resize it by touching and dragging the lines.

- Color: Set your widget to a different color. You can access this by touching and holding the widget and then tapping Settings.

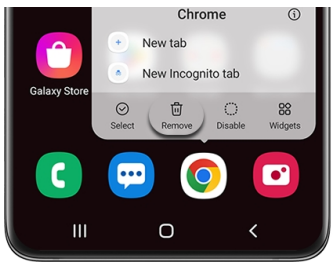
- Transparency: Increase or decrease the widget's transparency so you can easily see it. You can access this by touching and holding the widget and then tapping Settings.

Replace apps in your favorite apps section

The bottom row on your Home screen is reserved for your favorite app shortcuts. You can remove these shortcuts and add new ones if you'd like to change up your Home screen.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold the app shortcut you'd like to remove or replace.

2. Next, drag it to another part of the screen. Or, tap Remove to remove the shortcut from the Home screen. You'll still be able to access the app from the Apps screen.



3. To add a new favorite app shortcut, swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open the Apps screen. Touch and hold your desired app, and then drag it to an empty spot next to the rest of your favorites.

4. You can repeat this process for all of your current favorites.

Adjust your Display settings

Customize your font size and style

The new blog you're reading is spellbinding, but looking at the screen is straining your vision. Adjust the font and give your eyes a rest.

From Settings, tap Display. To change the font size and style, tap Font size and style, and then adjust the options as desired.

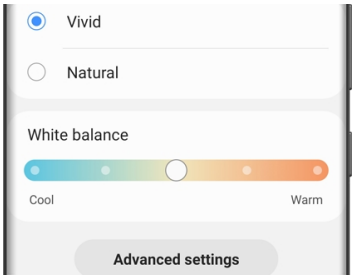


Adjust color settings

Note: Depending on the device model, the screen modes may vary or be unavailable.

Does that image seem a bit off? You can use Screen mode and color settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00063051/") to adjust how the display looks.

From Settings, tap Display, and then tap Screen mode. Next, choose your desired screen mode. Keep in mind that some screen modes may not be available unless the Blue light filter is turned off.



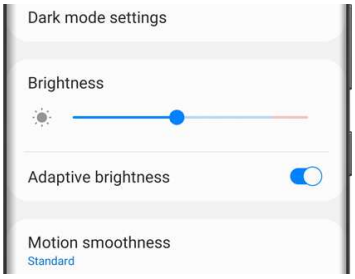
Adjust your screen brightness

It's so sunny out, you can barely see the screen. No worries, you can adjust the brightness yourself or have your device do it for you.

From Settings, tap Display. Adjust the slider until you reach your desired brightness.

You can also turn Adaptive brightness on or off - this feature will automatically adjust your phone's brightness depending on if you're in a bright or dark environment. Tap the switch next to Adaptive brightness to turn it on or off.

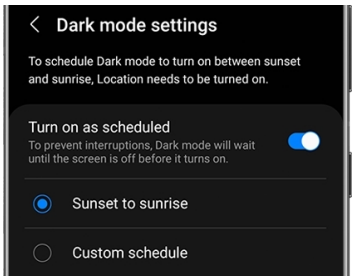
Note: You can also control screen brightness from the Quick settings panel. With two fingers, swipe down from the top of the screen, and then adjust the slider at the bottom of the panel.



Additional display settings

Your device has a few other features and settings to make things even smoother. For instance, you can organize your Home screen's apps and items ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00079032/") if it's looking a little cluttered.

Do your eyes get strained after looking at the screen for a long time? You can use Dark mode or Night mode ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00082645/") so the screen is easier to see, or adjust the screen refresh rate ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086005/") .



Dark Mode

Manually turn on Dark mode or Night mode

Note: Dark mode may not work if you're using a downloaded theme ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078997/") , a high contrast font, or certain third-party apps.

When you use Dark mode, all your device's menus, settings, and preloaded Samsung apps will use a darker theme. Most third-party apps will stay the same, however.

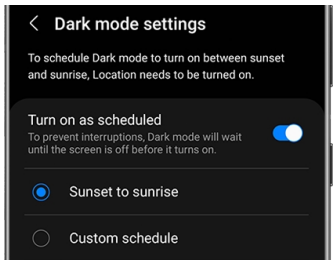
1. First, swipe down from the top of the screen with two fingers to open the Quick settings panel.
2. Then, swipe to and tap the Dark mode or Night mode icon. The icon will glow when the mode is enabled.
3. To turn the mode off, tap the icon again.

On devices with Android 10 or later, you can also access Dark mode from the top of the Display settings screen.

Set a schedule for Dark mode or Night mode

If you forget to enable Dark mode or Night mode sometimes, just make it automatically turn on or off at a set time.

1. First, swipe down from the top of the screen with two fingers to open the Quick settings panel. Then, touch and hold the Dark mode or Night mode icon to open its settings page.
2. Tap the switch next to Turn on as scheduled. Choose Sunset to sunrise to make Dark mode automatically turn on in the evening and turn off in the morning.



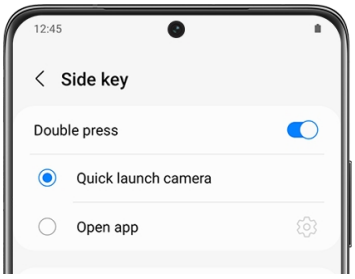
3. You can also choose Custom schedule to set your own schedule for Dark mode. Tap Set schedule, and then select your desired Start time. Next, tap End, select an End time, and then tap Done.

Note: Even if you set a scheduled time for Dark mode, you can still turn it on or off manually whenever you want.

Customize the Side key

Note: The Note10, Note20, S20, S21, Z Fold series, Z Flip series, A50, A51, A71, and A52 5G have a Side key. The Side key can be customized to open Bixby or perform other actions.

Keep opening Bixby by accident when you press the Side key? You can remap the Side key to open any app of your choice. Navigate to and open Settings, tap Advanced features, and then tap Side key. From here, you can select your desired settings.



For Double press, you can choose between:

- Quick launch camera
- Open app (Tap the Settings icon to select an app.)

For Press and hold, you can choose between:

- Wake Bixby
- Power off menu (You can also use the Quick settings panel or Bixby to turn off your phone.)

For additional details about setting up and using Bixby, please check out our Bixby guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00076739/") .

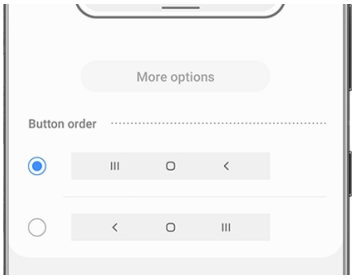
Customize the Navigation bar

Button order

You can also adjust the order of the buttons on the Navigation bar.

From Settings, tap Display, and then tap Navigation bar. Make sure Buttons is selected, and then you can choose your desired button setup at the bottom of the screen.

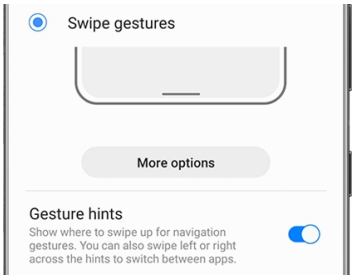
Note: This option will also affect the location you swipe when using Swipe gestures.



Use Swipe gestures

You can use gestures instead of buttons to navigate your device if that's simpler, or if you just want to remove the buttons from your screen for a less cluttered appearance.

1. From Settings, tap Display.
2. Tap Navigation bar, and then choose Swipe gestures.
3. Turn on Gesture hint for help on where to swipe, and turn on Show button to hide keyboard to enable the buttons when using Portrait mode. Additionally, you can block gestures with the S Pen so you don't accidentally activate a command when drawing or writing.
4. Tap More options to edit the direction you need to swipe.



Here are the functions for each gesture:

- Far left: When you swipe here, your recently opened apps will appear.
- Middle: Swipe up in the center to be taken to the Home screen.
- Far right: Swipe here to go back to the previous screen.

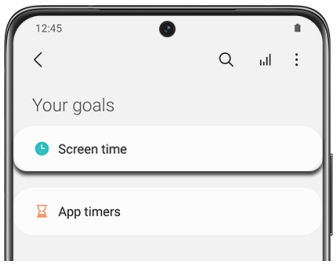
  Note: To completely hide the Swipe gestures lines, make sure to turn off Gesture hint by tapping the switch. The three lines on the bottom of the screen will disappear.

Manage your Digital Wellbeing

Set a Screen time

The Your goals option allows you to use the Screen time setting to manage your usage and set your preferred amount of daily screen time.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap Screen time under Your goals, and then tap Set goal. Choose your desired amount of the hours and minutes for your screen time goal. Tap Done.
   Note: On some devices, you may need to choose your desired time first, and then tap Set.

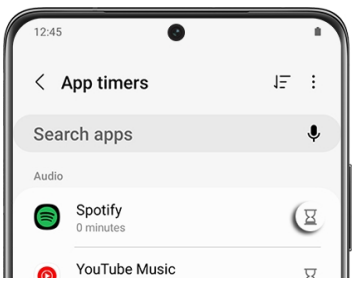


3. After the schedule is created, you can tap a day of the week to view your current usage. You'll see the hours and minutes you've spent on your device that day.
4. To change or delete the goal, tap Screen time, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then choose your desired option.

Set and use app timers

Think of the Digital Wellbeing feature as a budget, but for digital habits instead of spending habits. You can view your overall usage, the amount of time you've spent on your apps every day, the number of notifications you've received, and the number of times you've unlocked your phone or tablet. You can even set a timer for each app to help you keep track of how long you're using them.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap App timers under Your goals. Then, tap the hourglass icon next to your desired app.
3. Then, select your desired amount of time, and tap Done.

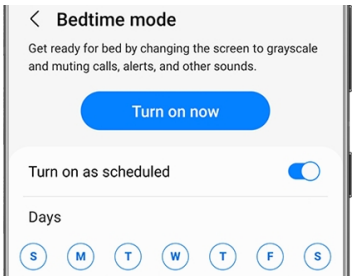


Use Bedtime mode

Note: On some devices and software versions, Bedtime mode will be called Wind Down.

Looking at a screen before going to bed can actually affect how well you sleep. To prevent this, turn on Bedtime mode to change the screen to grayscale. This will help remind your brain that it's almost time for bed.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap Bedtime mode or Wind Down. If prompted, tap Start. Make sure the switch next to "Turn on as scheduled" is enabled.
3. Select your desired days to use Bedtime mode (i.e. Monday - Friday).
4. Next, tap Set schedule, and then choose your desired time. Tap Done or OK to finish.

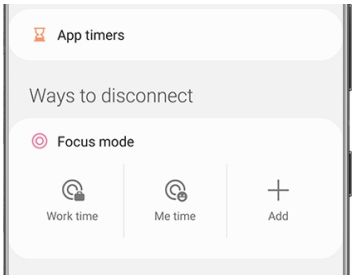


Use Focus mode

When you need to concentrate on studying or just want some alone time, you can use Focus mode.

Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing. Under Focus mode, pick from one of the three options:

- Work time: Set up this mode to block apps that you don't want to receive alerts from while working. Tap Edit to add your desired apps. Once your apps have been selected, tap Done, and then tap Start to activate Focus mode. Tap End Focus mode when you're finished.



- Me time: Set up this mode to block apps that you don't want to receive alerts from when you're relaxing. Tap Edit to add apps, select your desired ones, and then tap Done. Tap Start to begin, and then tap End Focus mode when you're finished.
- Add: This lets you create your own Focus mode. First, name your mode and tap Save. Tap Edit to add apps, select your desired ones, and then tap Done. Tap Start to begin, and then tap End Focus mode when you're finished. Your unique mode will be saved for future use. To rename your mode or to delete your custom mode, tap on it from the Digital Wellbeing Home screen, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). From there, select your desired option.

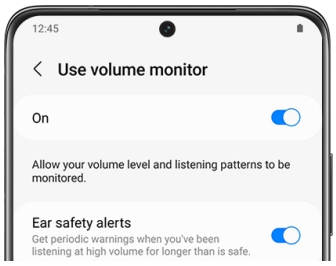
Note: You must end your current Focus mode before adding a new mode.

Use Volume monitor

If you love turning up the volume when using your Galaxy Buds or other headphones, let Volume monitor make sure you’re keeping your ears safe.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap Volume monitor under Comfort care.
3. Tap Start if prompted, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots).

4. Tap Use volume monitor, and then tap the switch at the top to turn it on. You can also tap the switch next to Ear safety alerts to receive warnings when you've been listening at high volumes for long periods of time.

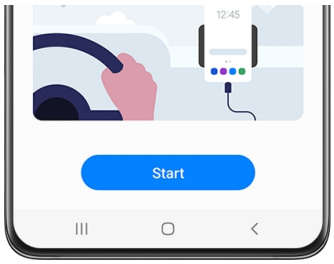


5. Next, tap Back to view your Daily and Weekly audio data. The next time you're listening to some music, you can check your audio data by going back to this screen.

Use Driving monitor

Driving monitor helps you focus on driving when your device is connected to your car via Bluetooth. You'll be able to check which apps you tend to use the most while driving.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls. Tap Digital Wellbeing.
2. Tap Driving monitor under Comfort care.
3. Tap Start if prompted, and then tap Add to choose your excluded apps.



4. Select the app(s) you'd like to exclude from Driving monitor, such as navigation apps that you may want to use while driving. Then, tap Done. Now, Driving monitor will only monitor the apps you did not exclude.
5. When you're ready to get on the road, tap Start to begin using Driving monitor. As long as your device is connected to your car using Bluetooth, Driving monitor will keep track of your device usage.
6. Your Driving time and Screen time while driving will be calculated at the bottom of the screen. You can also tap Daily or Weekly at the top to view your device usage over time.

Set up Parental controls

If you are concerned about your kids spending too much time on their devices or coming across something inappropriate on the internet, you can set up parental controls ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086102/") .

With this feature, you can set limits on their usage time and also add content restrictions. That way, you'll have one less thing to worry about.

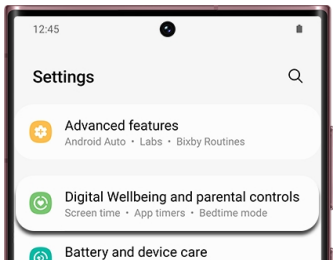


Parental controls

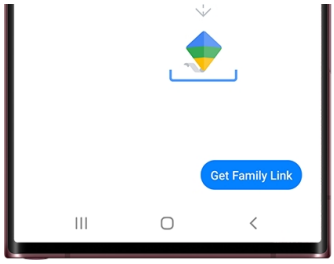
Set up Parental controls

You can restrict your child’s app usage by setting up Parental controls through Google’s Family Link app. Once you do, you'll be able to prevent them from accessing certain apps and also keep an eye on how long they use their phone or tablet.

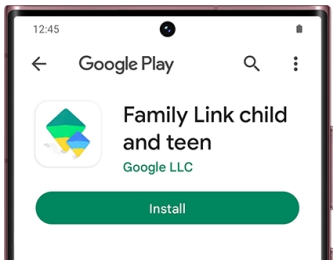
1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Digital Wellbeing and parental controls.



2. Tap Parental controls, and then tap Get started.
3. Select Child or teen, or Parent, depending on the device’s user. In this case, tap Parent.
4. Next, tap Get Family Link and install Google Family Link.



5. If needed, install the app. When it's done downloading, tap Open, review the information, and then tap Get started.
6. If you have more than one Google account added to your device, select your desired one.
7. Next, you will need to choose who will be using the device: Parent or Child or teen. For this example, tap Parent.
8. Make sure the device you want to supervise is nearby, and then tap Next. Read the information, and then tap I'm ready.
9. Select Yes or No depending if your child has a Google account. For this example, tap Yes.
10. Review the instructions to set up your child’s device, then tap Done, and then tap OK.
11. Using your child’s device, download Google Family Link for children & teens ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.kids.familylinkhelper&hl=en_US") , and then enter the provided Family Link setup code.



12. Use the on-screen instructions on both devices to finish connecting the two devices.
13. Once it's all set up, you can use the Family Link app to keep an eye on everything. Tap Need help? at the bottom for additional instructions on how to use the supervision features on Android or Chrome OS devices.

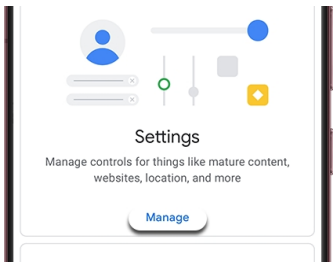
If you ever want to add another child to supervise, open the app, and then tap Add (the plus sign) in the upper right-hand corner. From there, you can repeat the same process to add your child's Google account.

If you'd like to learn more about Google's Family Link app, please visit Google's help center ("https://support.google.com/families/answer/7158477") .

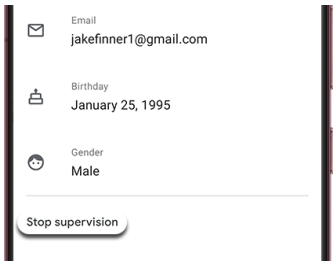
Stop supervising an account

Keep in mind you cannot stop supervising your child's account until they are at least 13 years old. Google may still limit access to age restricted content on their services.

1. On the parent device, open the Google Family Link app.
2. Tap the child's account that you will no longer supervise.
3. Tap Manage under Settings, and then tap Account info.



4. Tap Stop supervision and follow the on-screen instructions to confirm your understanding about how stopping supervision will affect your child's access.



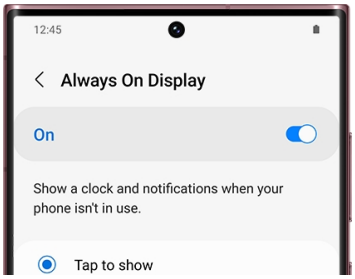
5. Tap the checkbox and then tap Stop supervision. Follow the displayed instructions.

Always On Display

Turn Always On Display on or off

Always On Display is very handy, but maybe you want to save some battery power. No worries, you can turn your AOD on or off whenever you want.

1. From Settings, search for and select Always On Display.
2. Tap Always On Display, and then tap the switch to turn it on or off.
3. From this screen, you can also adjust the AOD's settings. Please see the next section for more details.



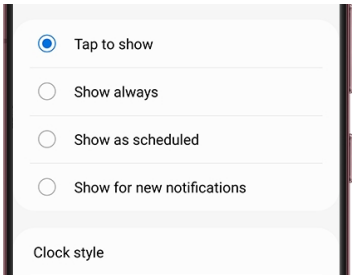
Note: Always On Display is not available on the Cover screen for the Galaxy Z Flip or Galaxy Z Flip 5G.

Adjust your AOD's display options and settings

As you probably already know, Always On Display shows important information on your Galaxy device's screen when it's turned off. However, there are a couple settings and display mode options that you can adjust.

From Settings, search for and select Always On Display, and then tap Always On Display. From this screen, you can adjust AOD's new features.

- Tap to show: This is the default setting. When it's activated, you must tap the screen to make your AOD appear for 10 seconds. This setting will help conserve battery.
- Show always: This setting will display AOD continuously whenever your phone screen is off. Use this setting if you don't want to tap anything to see your AOD. Keep in mind that this setting will use more battery power.



- Show as scheduled: This setting shows your AOD based on a set schedule. Use this setting if you want AOD to display at certain times. For example, you can set your AOD to only display during your work day and turn off while you're asleep. This setting will reduce AOD's battery consumption.
- Show for new notifications: This setting will show AOD when you recieve a new notification.
- Clock style: You can customize the clock type and color.
- Show music information: Use this setting to show music information on your screen when it's off. This is

useful because you'll see the artist and track information of a song without having to unlock your phone.

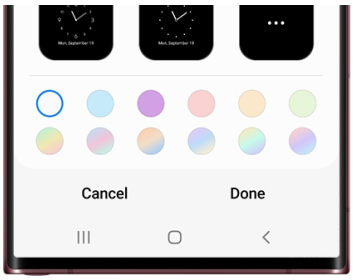
- Screen orientation: Choose between Portrait mode and Landscape mode.
- Auto brightness: This setting is on by default and automatically adjusts the brightness level of your AOD. To manually control the brightness level, tap the switch next to Auto brightness. Then, adjust the slider to set your desired brightness level. Alternatively, you can double tap the clock when your AOD displays, and then adjust the brightness level there.

Note: AOD is turned on by default, but if it has been disabled, you will need to turn it on to access its settings. AOD is not available when a Power saving mode is turned on.

Customize your AOD's Clock style

Whether it's digital or analog, everyone has a preferred way to tell the time. With AOD, you can choose the clock style that appears on your Galaxy device.

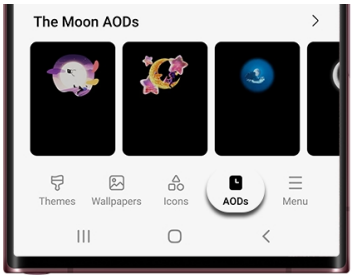
From Settings, search for and select Always On Display. Tap Always On Display again, and then tap Clock style. From here, you can choose your desired clock style. You can also change the clock's color. When you are finished, tap Done.



Download new Clock styles for your AOD

Pick a theme that matches your interests—Whales, hummingbirds, or Minions, anyone?

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap AODs, select an AOD theme you like, and then tap Download or tap the price (i.e., $0.99).
3. If needed, choose either Select payment method or Use discounts, and then enter the necessary information.
4. Once it's downloaded, tap Apply, choose your desired preferences, and then tap Done.
5. Your new design will now display on your device's screen when the AOD is active.

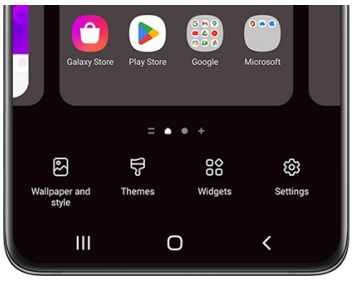


Manage Home screens

Manage Home screens

When you open your device, you want to get right to the good stuff, and that starts with the Home screen. You can customize your Home screens any way you want. Add, remove, or change your main Home screen, so everything is just how you like.

1. From any Home screen, touch and hold an empty space.
2. The screen will enter Edit mode, displaying multiple screens. From here, use the following options to manage your screens:

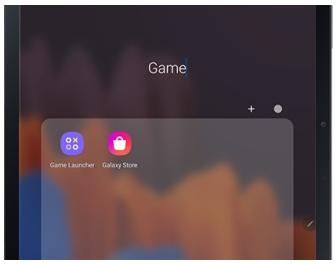


- Add a screen: Swipe left until you see an empty Home screen, and then tap Add (it looks like a plus sign).
- Remove a screen: Swipe to a Home screen you want to remove, and then tap the Delete icon (it looks like a trash can) at the top.
- Set a screen as the main Home screen: Swipe to the Home screen you want to make your main screen. Tap the Home icon (it looks like a house) at the top to make it your go-to screen. The bolded Home icon indicates which one is the main Home screen.
- Change the order of screens: Touch and hold the screen you want to move, and then drag it to the desired position.
- Turn Samsung Free or Google Discover on or off: If you'd like to enable or disable Samsung Free or Google Discover ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088162/") , swipe all the way to the right until you reach the Samsung Free and Google Discover screen. Tap the switch at the top to turn it on or off.
- Edit the Home screen settings: Tap Settings at the bottom of the screen to be taken to even more options for the Home screen, such as adjusting the Home screen's layout.

Create or delete folders

Your device comes with preloaded folders, like the Samsung folder, so all your related apps can be together in one place. But you can also create and edit your own folders to help you organize your other apps.

1. From the Home screen, touch and hold an app. You can also swipe up to access the Apps screen, and then choose an app.
2. Drag the app on top of another app, and then release. The two apps will both be added to the same folder.
3. Tap Folder name and enter an appropriate name for the folder. Tap Done.

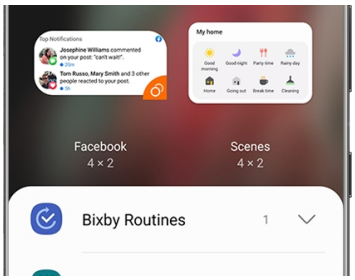


4. To select a color for the folder, tap the Palette icon in the upper right-hand corner.
5. You can add more apps to the folder by tapping Add (the plus sign) or by dragging other apps into the folder.
6. To exit the folder, tap anywhere outside the folder.
7. If the folder is on your Home screen, you can move it to a different spot. Touch and hold the folder, and drag it to your desired location.
8. If your folder is on the Apps screen, you can also move it by touching and dragging it. Or, you can touch and hold the folder, and then tap Add to Home. A shortcut for the folder will appear on the Home screen and a copy of the folder will remain on the Apps screen.
9. To delete a folder, touch and hold the desired folder, and then tap Remove. The folder will be removed and the apps will return to the Apps screen.
10. If you have multiple copies of the same folder (i.e. one on the Home screen and one in Apps), they will have to be deleted separately.

Add or remove widgets

Widgets are like mini versions of apps. They appear on your Home screen and when you tap them, they will activate or use an app's feature. These shortcuts will help you access your favorite apps faster.

1. To add a widget, swipe to a Home screen. Then, touch and hold an empty spot.
2. Tap Widgets, select your desired widget, and then tap Add.
3. To remove a widget, just touch and hold the widget on the Home screen, and then tap Remove.



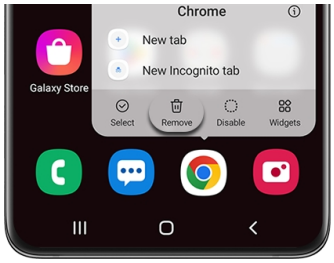
There are a few options available after you've placed your widget. Keep in mind the options may vary depending on the widget.

- Resize: Widgets that can be resized will have a blue line along its edges. You can resize it by touching and dragging the lines.
- Color: Set your widget to a different color. You can access this by touching and holding the widget and then tapping Settings.
- Transparency: Increase or decrease the widget's transparency so you can easily see it. You can access this by touching and holding the widget and then tapping Settings.

Replace apps in your favorite apps section

The bottom row on your Home screen is reserved for your favorite app shortcuts. You can remove these shortcuts and add new ones if you'd like to change up your Home screen.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold the app shortcut you'd like to remove or replace.
2. Next, drag it to another part of the screen. Or, tap Remove to remove the shortcut from the Home screen. You'll still be able to access the app from the Apps screen.



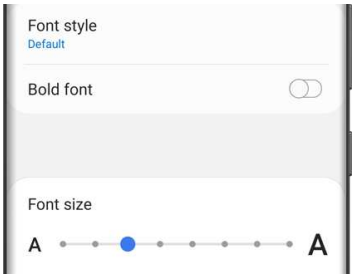
3. To add a new favorite app shortcut, swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open the Apps screen. Touch and hold your desired app, and then drag it to an empty spot next to the rest of your favorites.
4. You can repeat this process for all of your current favorites.

Adjust your Display settings

Customize your font size and style

The new blog you're reading is spellbinding, but looking at the screen is straining your vision. Adjust the font and give your eyes a rest.

From Settings, tap Display. To change the font size and style, tap Font size and style, and then adjust the options as desired.

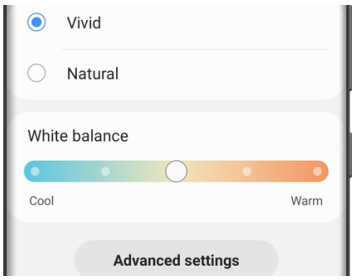


Adjust color settings

Note: Depending on the device model, the screen modes may vary or be unavailable.

Does that image seem a bit off? You can use Screen mode and color settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00063051/") to adjust how the display looks.

From Settings, tap Display, and then tap Screen mode. Next, choose your desired screen mode. Keep in mind that some screen modes may not be available unless the Blue light filter is turned off.



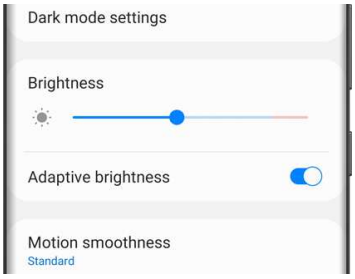
Adjust your screen brightness

It's so sunny out, you can barely see the screen. No worries, you can adjust the brightness yourself or have your device do it for you.

From Settings, tap Display. Adjust the slider until you reach your desired brightness.

You can also turn Adaptive brightness on or off - this feature will automatically adjust your phone's brightness depending on if you're in a bright or dark environment. Tap the switch next to Adaptive brightness to turn it on or off.

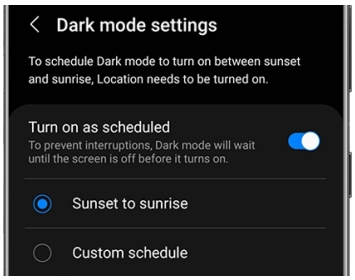
Note: You can also control screen brightness from the Quick settings panel. With two fingers, swipe down from the top of the screen, and then adjust the slider at the bottom of the panel.



Additional display settings

Your device has a few other features and settings to make things even smoother. For instance, you can organize your Home screen's apps and items ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00079032/") if it's looking a little cluttered.

Do your eyes get strained after looking at the screen for a long time? You can use Dark mode or Night mode ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00082645/") so the screen is easier to see, or adjust the screen refresh rate ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086005/") .



Dark Mode

Manually turn on Dark mode or Night mode

Note: Dark mode may not work if you're using a downloaded theme ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078997/") , a high contrast font, or certain third-party apps.

When you use Dark mode, all your device's menus, settings, and preloaded Samsung apps will use a darker theme. Most third-party apps will stay the same, however.

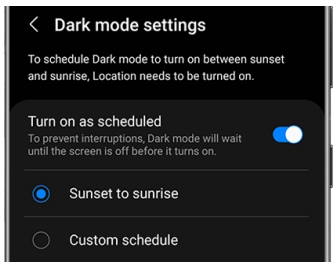
1. First, swipe down from the top of the screen with two fingers to open the Quick settings panel.
2. Then, swipe to and tap the Dark mode or Night mode icon. The icon will glow when the mode is enabled.
3. To turn the mode off, tap the icon again.

On devices with Android 10 or later, you can also access Dark mode from the top of the Display settings screen.

Set a schedule for Dark mode or Night mode

If you forget to enable Dark mode or Night mode sometimes, just make it automatically turn on or off at a set time.

1. First, swipe down from the top of the screen with two fingers to open the Quick settings panel. Then, touch and hold the Dark mode or Night mode icon to open its settings page.
2. Tap the switch next to Turn on as scheduled. Choose Sunset to sunrise to make Dark mode automatically turn on in the evening and turn off in the morning.

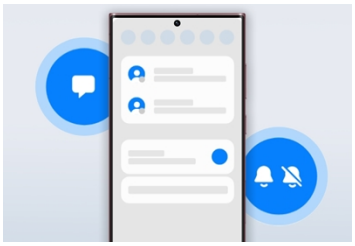


3. You can also choose Custom schedule to set your own schedule for Dark mode. Tap Set schedule, and then select your desired Start time. Next, tap End, select an End time, and then tap Done.

Note: Even if you set a scheduled time for Dark mode, you can still turn it on or off manually whenever you want.

Notifications

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091442

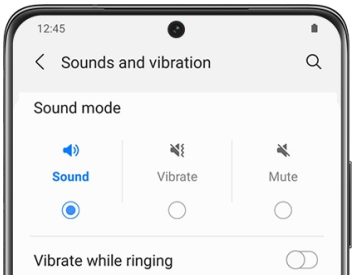


Sounds and vibration

Control the sounds and vibrations used to indicate notifications, screen touches, and other interactions, so you'll always know what kind of alert you are getting. App alerts can also be prioritized depending on which notifications you'd like to see first.

- Sound mode: Change the sound mode on your device without using the Volume keys. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then select a mode. You can select from Sound, Vibrate, or Mute.

  Note: Use the sound mode setting instead of the Volume keys to change the sound mode without losing your customized sound levels.

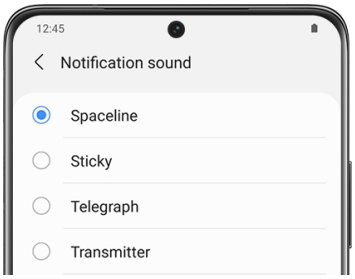


- Vibrations: Control how and when your device vibrates. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then select Vibrate. Then, customize the options for Call vibration pattern, Notification vibration pattern, and Vibration intensity.
- Volume: Set the volume level for call ringtones, notifications, media, and system sounds. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Volume. Then, drag the sliders for each sound type.

  Note: You can also use the Volume keys to adjust the volume. When pressed, a pop-up menu shows the volume level and current sound type. You can tap the menu to expand it, and then adjust the volume of the other sound types by dragging their sliders.
- Ringtone: Customize your call ringtone by choosing from preset sounds or adding your own. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Ringtone. You can also assign ringtones to specific contacts by opening the Contacts app, then tapping a contact, and then tapping Edit. Tap View more, and then tap Ringtone. Now just tap a ringtone to hear a preview and select it, or tap Add (the plus sign) to use an audio file as a ringtone.

- Notification sound: Choose a preset sound for all notification alerts. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Notification sound. Tap a sound to hear a preview and select it.

  Note: You can also customize unique notification sounds for each app using the App settings menu ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062618/") .



- System sound: Choose a sound theme to use for touch interactions, charging, changing the sound mode, Samsung Keyboard, and more. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap System sound. Select an available sound.

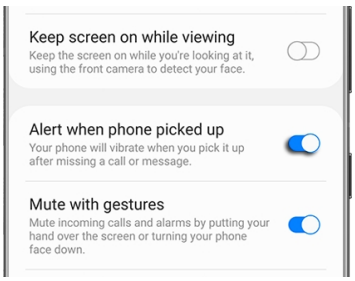
- Notification pop-up style: Prioritize and streamline app alerts by changing which apps send notifications and how notifications alert you. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then select a pop-up style. You can choose Brief or Detailed, and then customize the notifications as desired.

- Recently sent notifications: View a list of apps that have sent notifications. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then tap your desired option under Recently sent. You can also tap More to expand the list. From here, you can customize the notification settings as needed.

- Alert when phone picked up: Set the device to notify you about missed calls and messages by vibrating when you pick it up. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Advanced features, and then tap Motions and gestures. Tap the switch next to Alert when phone picked up to turn it on.
  Note: This is not available on tablets.

- Dolby Atmos ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080318/") : Enjoy Dolby Atmos audio quality when playing content. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Then, select Dolby Atmos or Dolby Atmos for gaming.

  Note: This feature may only be available with a headset or Galaxy Buds connected.



- Equalizer ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080318/") : Choose an audio preset that is customized to different genres of music, or manually change your audio settings. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Tap Equalizer to choose a music genre.

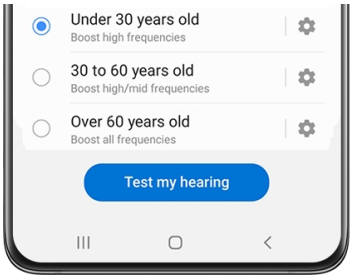
- UHQ upscaler ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080318/") : Enhance the sound

resolution of music and videos for a clearer listening experience. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Tap UHQ upscaler and choose an upscaling option.

Note: This feature is not available with the Galaxy Buds models. It is only available with wired headsets and supported Bluetooth devices.

- Adapt sound ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080348/") : Customize the sound for each ear and enhance your listening experience. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Tap Adapt sound and then tap Adapt sound for to select when to change the sound settings, and then tap the sound profile that fits you best. Next, tap the Settings icon to customize it.

  Note: Tap Test my hearing to let your device identify the best sound for you.



- Separate app sound ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080348/") : Choose to have an app play media sounds on a Bluetooth speaker or headset that is separate from the other sounds (like notifications). To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Separate app sound. Tap Turn on now to enable Separate app sound, and then set the options for App and Audio device.

  Note: A Bluetooth device must be connected to use the audio options.

- Do not disturb ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077281/") : Do not disturb allows you to block sounds and notifications while this mode is turned on. You can also specify exceptions for people, apps, and alarms, and set a schedule for recurring events like sleep or meetings. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then tap Do not disturb. You can configure settings for Do not disturb, For how long, Sleeping, Add schedule, Calls, messages and conversations, Alarms and sounds, Apps, and Hide notifications.

- Advanced settings: Configure notifications from apps and services. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then tap Advanced settings. You can configure settings for Show notification icons, Show battery percentage, Notification history, Conversations, Floating notifications, Suggest actions and replies for notifications, Show snooze button, Notification reminders, App icon badges, and Wireless Emergency Alerts.

Control notifications

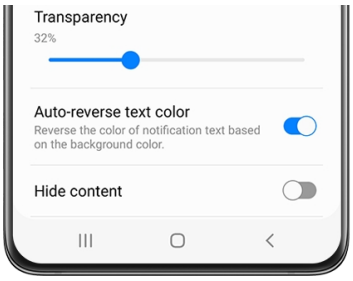
Lock screen notification settings

Nobody likes when other people can view their notifications, especially if it is something personal like a text message. Fortunately, you can hide the notification details on the Lock screen.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Lock screen, and then tap Notifications. From here, you can customize the available settings to your liking:

- Notification style: Choose between Icons only, or Details. If you'd like more information about a

notification at a fast glance, choose Details. This option also lets you adjust notifications' transparency and auto-reverse their text color.



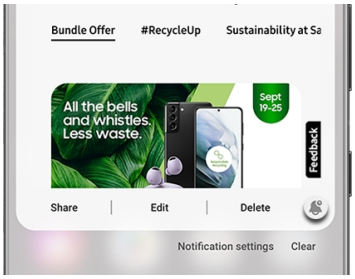
- Transparency: Adjust the slider to see more of your Lock screen wallpaper behind the notification.
- Auto-reverse text color: Automatically adjusts the color of the notification text to make sure it's readable against your background.
- Hide content: Hide notification content in the Notification panel.
- Notifications to show: Enable either Alert and silent notifications, or Alert notifications only.
- Show on Always On Display: Show or hide notifications when your Always On Display is active. This option may not be available on all devices or when you are using Power saving mode.

Snooze notifications

Just like how you snooze your alarm clock every morning, you can "snooze" your notifications too. This will make them disappear and then reappear after a set amount of time.

To snooze a notification from the Lock screen, tap the down arrow to fully open the notification.

Tap the Snooze icon (it looks like a bell), select your desired amount of time, and then tap Save.



Note: The Snooze option may not be available on all software versions.

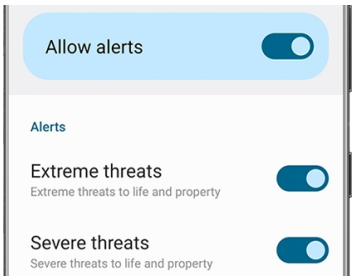
Emergency alert notifications

Emergency alerts are messages sent by public services to alert you of dangerous weather, missing persons, or other matters of local or national importance. If desired, you can customize which emergency alerts you receive and disable ones you don't want, except for National alerts.

To adjust these alerts, navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Notifications. Tap Advanced settings, and then tap Wireless emergency alerts. The following options are available but may differ depending on your carrier:

- National alerts: National warning messages issued by the national government. These alerts cannot be turned off.
- Extreme threats: Extreme threats to life and property, such as a flash flood or hurricane.
- Severe threats: Severe threats to life and property. Considered slightly less dangerous than extreme threats.

- AMBER alerts: Child abduction emergency bulletins.
- Public safety messages: Recommended actions that can save lives or property.
- Test alerts: Carrier tests and scheduled tests from the safety alert system. This may be called "State and local tests" on certain carriers.



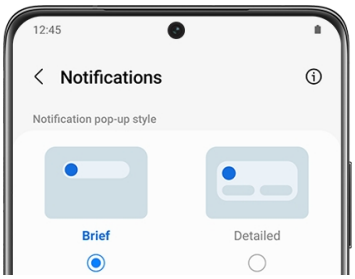
If you are not receiving emergency alerts, it could be due to the following reasons:

- Your device has poor cell reception.
- Airplane mode is enabled on your device or emergency alerts are turned off.
- Some devices will not show an alert when you're in the middle of a phone call. This varies by make and model.
- Your device is connected to a cell site that is not broadcasting the alert, is undergoing maintenance, or is out of service.

Note: If your device receives the same emergency alert over and over, try powering it off and turning it back on.

Adjust app notification settings

You probably have a bunch of apps on your device, like messaging and music apps, that you use daily. Your app notifications can be customized ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062618/") to suit your needs if you want to view, block, or snooze them during the day. Or, change up the notification sounds and vibrations so you can be alerted right away when you receive an important message.



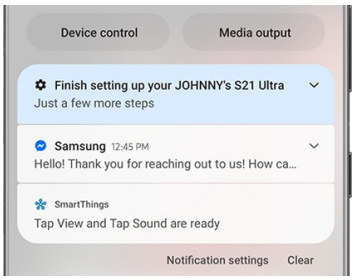
Control app notifications

View notifications

Did you just receive an important email? To view your notifications, swipe down from the top of your phone's screen using two fingers. Notifications will be displayed under the Quick settings panel.

- To open a notification, tap it.
- To clear all notifications, tap Clear.
- To close the Notification panel, swipe up or tap Back.

- To customize your notifications, tap Notification settings at the bottom of the panel. Tap More to edit which apps you will receive notifications from.



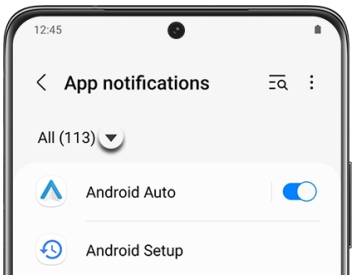
Use the following steps if you'd like to see which apps have recently sent notifications:

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Notifications.
2. The Recently sent section will list the apps that have sent a notification within the last couple of hours or days. Tap More to see a complete list.
3. From here, you can tap the drop-down menu at the top to sort the list between Most recent notifications or Most frequent. You can also see notifications that have been blocked.
4. If you'd like to customize your notifications further, please see our guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062636/") for controlling notifications.

Block app notifications

You can block notifications you don't want, so they'll be out of your hair.

1. From Settings, tap Notifications, and then tap More under Recently sent.
2. Tap the drop-down menu at the top, and then tap All. The drop-down menu will be set to Most recent by default.
3. Tap the switch(es) next to the app(s) that you would like to block notifications for.
4. To view what apps you've blocked, tap the drop-down menu, and then tap Notifications turned off.

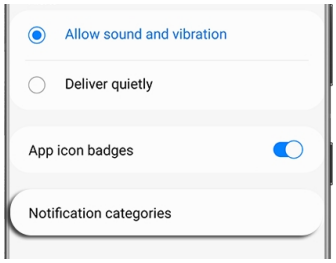


Customize additional notification settings

Every app will send you notifications about different things. For example, a social media app may send you notifications about a new video someone posted or a message your account received. You can customize which specific notifications you get, so you're not bogged down with ones you don't want.

1. From Settings, tap Notifications, and then tap More under Recently sent.
2. Tap the drop-down menu at the top, and then tap All.
3. Next, tap the name of the app you'd like to customize.
4. From this page, you can adjust some settings, such as muting alert sounds or enabling App icon badges.

5. Next, tap Notification categories, and then tap the switch next to your desired categories to enable or disable them.



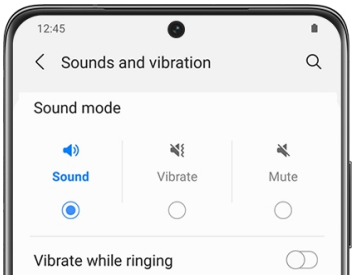
Note: The available options may vary depending on the app.

Sounds and vibration

Control the sounds and vibrations used to indicate notifications, screen touches, and other interactions, so you'll always know what kind of alert you are getting. App alerts can also be prioritized depending on which notifications you'd like to see first.

- Sound mode: Change the sound mode on your device without using the Volume keys. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then select a mode. You can select from Sound, Vibrate, or Mute.

  Note: Use the sound mode setting instead of the Volume keys to change the sound mode without losing your customized sound levels.



- Vibrations: Control how and when your device vibrates. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then select Vibrate. Then, customize the options for Call vibration pattern, Notification vibration pattern, and Vibration intensity.

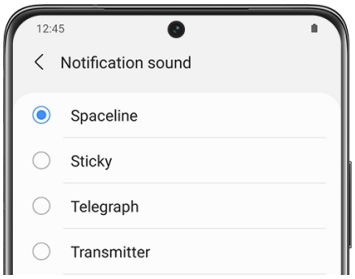
- Volume: Set the volume level for call ringtones, notifications, media, and system sounds. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Volume. Then, drag the sliders for each sound type.

  Note: You can also use the Volume keys to adjust the volume. When pressed, a pop-up menu shows the volume level and current sound type. You can tap the menu to expand it, and then adjust the volume of the other sound types by dragging their sliders.

- Ringtone: Customize your call ringtone by choosing from preset sounds or adding your own. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Ringtone. You can also assign ringtones to specific contacts by opening the Contacts app, then tapping a contact, and then tapping Edit. Tap View more, and then tap Ringtone. Now just tap a ringtone to hear a preview and select it, or tap Add (the plus sign) to use an audio file as a ringtone.

- Notification sound: Choose a preset sound for all notification alerts. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Notification sound. Tap a sound to hear a preview and select it.

  Note: You can also customize unique notification sounds for each app using the App settings menu ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062618/") .



- System sound: Choose a sound theme to use for touch interactions, charging, changing the sound mode, Samsung Keyboard, and more. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap System sound. Select an available sound.

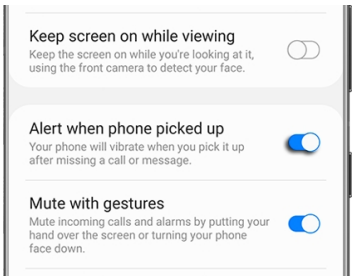
- Notification pop-up style: Prioritize and streamline app alerts by changing which apps send notifications and how notifications alert you. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then select a pop-up style. You can choose Brief or Detailed, and then customize the notifications as desired.

- Recently sent notifications: View a list of apps that have sent notifications. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then tap your desired option under Recently sent. You can also tap More to expand the list. From here, you can customize the notification settings as needed.

- Alert when phone picked up: Set the device to notify you about missed calls and messages by vibrating when you pick it up. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Advanced features, and then tap Motions and gestures. Tap the switch next to Alert when phone picked up to turn it on.
  Note: This is not available on tablets.

- Dolby Atmos ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080318/") : Enjoy Dolby Atmos audio quality when playing content. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Then, select Dolby Atmos or Dolby Atmos for gaming.

  Note: This feature may only be available with a headset or Galaxy Buds connected.



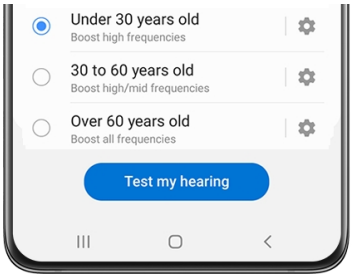
- Equalizer ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080318/") : Choose an audio preset that is customized to different genres of music, or manually change your audio settings. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Tap Equalizer to choose a music genre.

- UHQ upscaler ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080318/") : Enhance the sound resolution of music and videos for a clearer listening experience. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Tap UHQ upscaler and choose an upscaling option.

  Note: This feature is not available with the Galaxy Buds models. It is only available with wired headsets and supported Bluetooth devices.

- Adapt sound ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080348/") : Customize the sound for each ear and enhance your listening experience. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Sound quality and effects. Tap Adapt sound and then tap Adapt sound for to select when to change the sound settings, and then tap the sound profile that fits you best. Next, tap the Settings icon to customize it.

  Note: Tap Test my hearing to let your device identify the best sound for you.



- Separate app sound ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080348/") : Choose to have an app play media sounds on a Bluetooth speaker or headset that is separate from the other sounds (like notifications). To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Sounds and vibration, and then tap Separate app sound. Tap Turn on now to enable Separate app sound, and then set the options for App and Audio device.

  Note: A Bluetooth device must be connected to use the audio options.

- Do not disturb ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077281/") : Do not disturb allows you to block sounds and notifications while this mode is turned on. You can also specify exceptions for people, apps, and alarms, and set a schedule for recurring events like sleep or meetings. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then tap Do not disturb. You can configure settings for Do not disturb, For how long, Sleeping, Add schedule, Calls, messages and conversations, Alarms and sounds, Apps, and Hide notifications.

- Advanced settings: Configure notifications from apps and services. To find this, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Notifications, and then tap Advanced settings. You can configure settings for Show notification icons, Show battery percentage, Notification history, Conversations, Floating notifications, Suggest actions and replies for notifications, Show snooze button, Notification reminders, App icon badges, and Wireless Emergency Alerts.

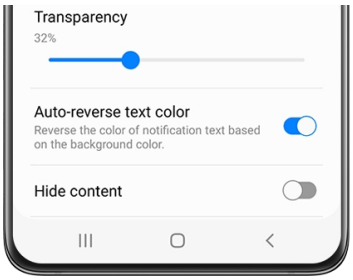
Control notifications

Lock screen notification settings

Nobody likes when other people can view their notifications, especially if it is something personal like a text message. Fortunately, you can hide the notification details on the Lock screen.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Lock screen, and then tap Notifications. From here, you can customize the available settings to your liking:

- Notification style: Choose between Icons only, or Details. If you'd like more information about a notification at a fast glance, choose Details. This option also lets you adjust notifications' transparency and auto-reverse their text color.



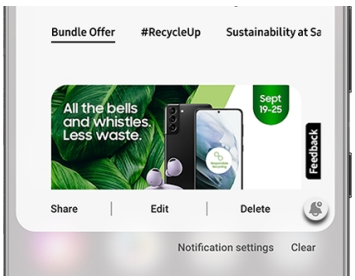
- Transparency: Adjust the slider to see more of your Lock screen wallpaper behind the notification.
- Auto-reverse text color: Automatically adjusts the color of the notification text to make sure it's readable against your background.
- Hide content: Hide notification content in the Notification panel.
- Notifications to show: Enable either Alert and silent notifications, or Alert notifications only.
- Show on Always On Display: Show or hide notifications when your Always On Display is active. This option may not be available on all devices or when you are using Power saving mode.

Snooze notifications

Just like how you snooze your alarm clock every morning, you can "snooze" your notifications too. This will make them disappear and then reappear after a set amount of time.

To snooze a notification from the Lock screen, tap the down arrow to fully open the notification.

Tap the Snooze icon (it looks like a bell), select your desired amount of time, and then tap Save.



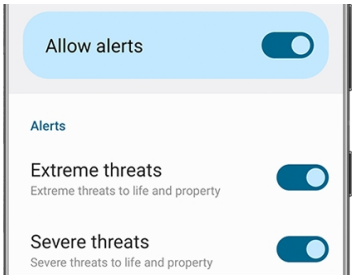
Note: The Snooze option may not be available on all software versions.

Emergency alert notifications

Emergency alerts are messages sent by public services to alert you of dangerous weather, missing persons, or other matters of local or national importance. If desired, you can customize which emergency alerts you receive and disable ones you don't want, except for National alerts.

To adjust these alerts, navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Notifications. Tap Advanced settings, and then tap Wireless emergency alerts. The following options are available but may differ depending on your carrier:

- National alerts: National warning messages issued by the national government. These alerts cannot be turned off.
- Extreme threats: Extreme threats to life and property, such as a flash flood or hurricane.
- Severe threats: Severe threats to life and property. Considered slightly less dangerous than extreme threats.
- AMBER alerts: Child abduction emergency bulletins.
- Public safety messages: Recommended actions that can save lives or property.
- Test alerts: Carrier tests and scheduled tests from the safety alert system. This may be called "State and local tests" on certain carriers.



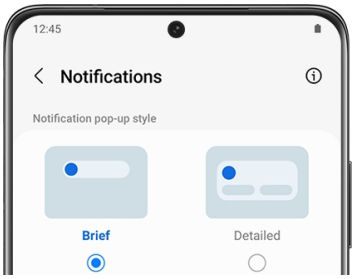
If you are not receiving emergency alerts, it could be due to the following reasons:

- Your device has poor cell reception.
- Airplane mode is enabled on your device or emergency alerts are turned off.
- Some devices will not show an alert when you're in the middle of a phone call. This varies by make and model.
- Your device is connected to a cell site that is not broadcasting the alert, is undergoing maintenance, or is out of service.

Note: If your device receives the same emergency alert over and over, try powering it off and turning it back on.

Adjust app notification settings

You probably have a bunch of apps on your device, like messaging and music apps, that you use daily. Your app notifications can be customized ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062618/") to suit your needs if you want to view, block, or snooze them during the day. Or, change up the notification sounds and vibrations so you can be alerted right away when you receive an important message.

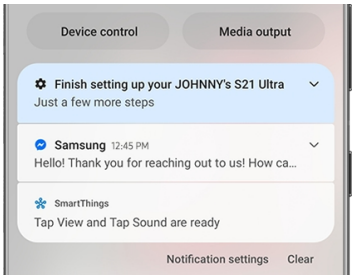


Control app notifications

View notifications

Did you just receive an important email? To view your notifications, swipe down from the top of your phone's screen using two fingers. Notifications will be displayed under the Quick settings panel.

- To open a notification, tap it.
- To clear all notifications, tap Clear.
- To close the Notification panel, swipe up or tap Back.
- To customize your notifications, tap Notification settings at the bottom of the panel. Tap More to edit which apps you will receive notifications from.



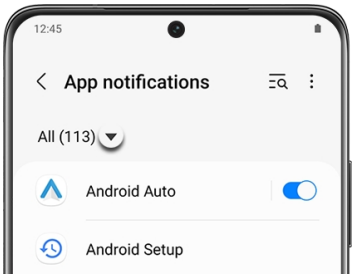
Use the following steps if you'd like to see which apps have recently sent notifications:

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Notifications.
2. The Recently sent section will list the apps that have sent a notification within the last couple of hours or days. Tap More to see a complete list.
3. From here, you can tap the drop-down menu at the top to sort the list between Most recent notifications or Most frequent. You can also see notifications that have been blocked.
4. If you'd like to customize your notifications further, please see our guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062636/") for controlling notifications.

Block app notifications

You can block notifications you don't want, so they'll be out of your hair.

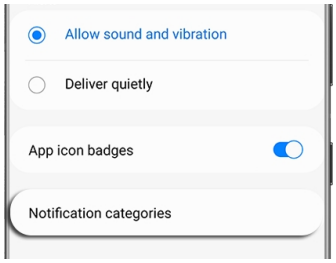
1. From Settings, tap Notifications, and then tap More under Recently sent.
2. Tap the drop-down menu at the top, and then tap All. The drop-down menu will be set to Most recent by default.
3. Tap the switch(es) next to the app(s) that you would like to block notifications for.
4. To view what apps you've blocked, tap the drop-down menu, and then tap Notifications turned off.



Customize additional notification settings

Every app will send you notifications about different things. For example, a social media app may send you notifications about a new video someone posted or a message your account received. You can customize which specific notifications you get, so you're not bogged down with ones you don't want.

1. From Settings, tap Notifications, and then tap More under Recently sent.
2. Tap the drop-down menu at the top, and then tap All.
3. Next, tap the name of the app you'd like to customize.
4. From this page, you can adjust some settings, such as muting alert sounds or enabling App icon badges.
5. Next, tap Notification categories, and then tap the switch next to your desired categories to enable or disable them.



Note: The available options may vary depending on the app.

Camera

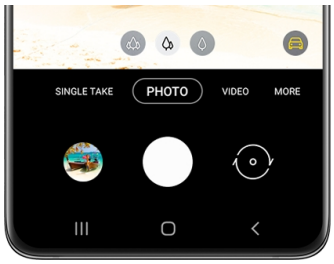
https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091462



Configure shooting modes

Choose from several shooting modes to get the effect and appearance you want when taking pictures or videos.

1. Swipe up from the bottom of your phone's screen to access the Apps menu, and then open the Camera app.



2. From the app, swipe the screen right and left to change shooting modes. Below is a list of available shooting modes:

    - Single take: Capture multiple pictures and video clips ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088362/") from different angles.
    - Photo: Take photos and allow the camera to determine the ideal settings for pictures.
    - Video: Record videos ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086582/") and allow the camera to determine the ideal settings for videos.
    - More: Choose other available shooting modes. Tap Add to drag modes into or out of the shooting modes tray at the bottom of the Camera screen.
        - Pro: Manually adjust the ISO sensitivity, exposure value, white balance, and color tone while taking pictures.
        - Panorama: Create a linear image by taking pictures in either a horizontal or vertical direction.
        - Food: Take pictures that emphasize the vivid colors of food.
        - Night: Use this to take photos in low-light conditions without using the flash.
        - Portrait: Add and adjust background effects for photos.
        - Portrait video: Add and adjust background effects for videos.
        - Pro video: Manually adjust the ISO sensitivity, exposure value, white balance, color tone, and

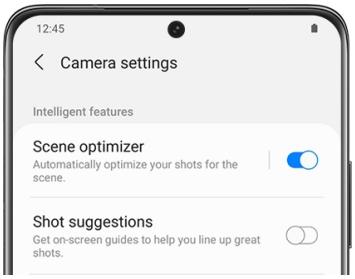
mic sound options ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087562/") while recording videos.

- Super slow-mo: Record videos at an extremely high frame rate for viewing high-quality slow motion. You can play a specific section of each video in slow motion after recording it.
- Slow motion: Record videos at a high frame rate for viewing in slow motion.
- Hyperlapse: Create a time lapse video by recording at various frame rates. The frame rate is adjusted depending on the scene being recorded and the movement of the device.
- Director's view: Access advanced features ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088322/") such as lock onto a subject in view, change between different rear camera lenses, and more.

3. After you've chosen a shooting method, set up your shot ("https://downloadcenter.samsung.com/content/PM/202101/20210129215516972/EB/SAM_G991U_G996U_G998U_EN_FINAL_210122/navigate_the_camera_screen_d1e3075.html") and take some pictures or videos. If your subject is far away, you can use Space Zoom ("https://downloadcenter.samsung.com/content/PM/202101/20210129215516972/EB/SAM_G991U_G996U_G998U_EN_FINAL_210122/space_zoom_d1e3243.html") to zoom in and get a closer picture.

Camera settings

You can use the settings menu to configure your camera's settings. Swipe up from the bottom of your phone's screen to access the Apps menu, and then open the Camera app. From the app, tap the Settings icon to access additional options.



Intelligent features

- Scene optimizer: Automatically adjust exposure, contrast, white balance, and more based on what is detected in the camera frame. The Scene optimizer is only available when using the rear camera. The Scene optimizer icon will change automatically based on what the camera detects, such as a leaf icon when taking nature photos or a moon icon when taking photos in a dark setting.
- Shot suggestions: Get on-screen guides to help you line up great shots.
- Scan QR codes: Automatically detects QR codes when using the camera.

Pictures

- Swipe Shutter button to: Choose to either take a burst shot or create a GIF when you swipe the shutter to the nearest edge.
- Format and advanced options or Picture formats: Choose file formats and other save options.
- HEIF pictures: Save pictures as high-efficiency images to save space on your phone. Some sharing sites may not support this format.

- RAW copies: Save JPEG and RAW copies of pictures taken in Pro mode.
- Ultra wide shape correction: Automatically correct distortion in pictures taken with the ultra wide lens.

Selfies

- Use wide angle for group selfies: Automatically switches to wide-angle when there are two or more people in the selfie.
- Save selfies as previewed: Save selfies as they appear in the preview without flipping them.
- Selfie color tone: Set the color tone for your selfies to Natural or Bright.

Videos

- Advanced recording options: Enhance your videos with advanced recording formats.
- High efficiency videos: Record videos in HEVC format to save space. Other devices or sharing sites may not support playback of this format.
- HDR10+ videos: Optimize videos by recording in HDR10+. Playback devices must support HDR10+ video.
- Zoom-in mic: Match the mic zoom to the camera zoom while recording videos. You can pinch the screen while recording to zoom in or out. As you zoom in, the sounds of the subject you zoom in on will become louder. As you zoom out, the surrounding sound will no longer be suppressed.
- Video stabilization: Activate anti-shake to keep the focus steady when the camera is moving.

Useful features, General, and Privacy

- Auto HDR: Capture more detail in the bright and dark areas of your shots.
- Tracking auto-focus: Keep a moving subject in focus.
- Grid lines: Display viewfinder grid lines to help compose a picture or video.
- Location tags: Attach a GPS location tag to your pictures and videos.
- Shooting methods: There are a few different methods you can choose from.
    - Press Volume keys to: Use the Volume keys to take pictures, record video, zoom, or control system volume.
    - Voice commands: Take pictures by saying certain key words.
    - Floating Shutter button: Add an extra shutter button that you can move anywhere on the screen.
    - Show palm: Hold your hand out with your palm facing the camera to have your picture taken in a few seconds.
- Settings to keep: Choose whether to use the same shooting mode, selfie angle, and filters as the last time.
- Shutter sound: Play a tone when taking a picture.
- Vibration feedback: Enable vibrations when tapping the screen in the Camera app.
- Reset settings: Reset the Camera app’s settings.
- Contact us: Contact Samsung support through Samsung Members (if supported by your carrier).
- About Camera: View app and software information.

Cover screen preview

Cover screen camera and selfies

Even with your Galaxy Z Flip folded, the Cover screen can act as a viewfinder for quickly taking that selfie. ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-z-flip3/?topic=flex-and-take-pi ctures") To take Quick shot selfies when the phone is folded, double press the Side key. Press either Volume key to capture the photo. To see your photo, unfold the phone and tap the Gallery icon from the Camera app. You can also use the Cover screen preview when unfolded by tapping the icon in the upper right corner to turn on the preview.

In addition to selfies, you can also take Cover screen videos on the Z Flip3 and Z Flip4.

1. From the Cover screen, double press the Side key to open the Camera app.



2. Swipe left or right to switch between PHOTO and VIDEO. On the Z Flip4, you can also select PORTRAIT.
3. Swipe up or down to zoom out or in. On the Z Flip4, you can also double tap the screen to switch between zoomed out and zoomed in.
4. To capture a video, tap the screen; a short timer will appear and your video will be recorded. You can also press the Volume key.
5. Then, unfold your phone and tap the Gallery icon in the bottom right to view your video.

   On your Z Flip4, you can adjust the aspect ratio used on the Cover screen as well. While your phone is unfolded, open the Camera app, and then select PHOTO, VIDEO, or PORTRAIT. Tap the aspect ratio icon at the top of the screen, and then tap your desired option, such as 3:4. Then, fold your phone and double press the Side key to launch the Camera app. The aspect ratio will transfer to your Quick shots!

Unfolded and Flex mode cameras

Go hands-free when the phone is partially folded in Flex mode to take that great shot, and then unfold the phone for access to all of the camera modes.

Use the Camera app when the Galaxy Z Flip is unfolded to access all settings, including Wide, Ultra-Wide lenses, and panoramas.

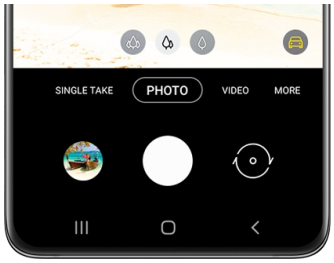
Photos in Flex mode can be taken by holding the phone while it’s folded, or by setting it down on a flat surface. Adjust the phone’s top cover to create angles, choose the front or rear lens, and then tap Capture.



Configure shooting modes

Choose from several shooting modes to get the effect and appearance you want when taking pictures or videos.

1. Swipe up from the bottom of your phone's screen to access the Apps menu, and then open the Camera app.



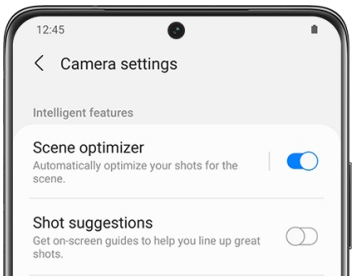
2. From the app, swipe the screen right and left to change shooting modes. Below is a list of available shooting modes:

    - Single take: Capture multiple pictures and video clips ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088362/") from different angles.
    - Photo: Take photos and allow the camera to determine the ideal settings for pictures.
    - Video: Record videos ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086582/") and allow the camera to determine the ideal settings for videos.
    - More: Choose other available shooting modes. Tap Add to drag modes into or out of the shooting modes tray at the bottom of the Camera screen.
        - Pro: Manually adjust the ISO sensitivity, exposure value, white balance, and color tone while taking pictures.
        - Panorama: Create a linear image by taking pictures in either a horizontal or vertical direction.
        - Food: Take pictures that emphasize the vivid colors of food.
        - Night: Use this to take photos in low-light conditions without using the flash.
        - Portrait: Add and adjust background effects for photos.
        - Portrait video: Add and adjust background effects for videos.
        - Pro video: Manually adjust the ISO sensitivity, exposure value, white balance, color tone, and mic sound options ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087562/") while recording videos.
        - Super slow-mo: Record videos at an extremely high frame rate for viewing high-quality slow motion. You can play a specific section of each video in slow motion after recording it.
        - Slow motion: Record videos at a high frame rate for viewing in slow motion.
        - Hyperlapse: Create a time lapse video by recording at various frame rates. The frame rate is adjusted depending on the scene being recorded and the movement of the device.
        - Director's view: Access advanced features ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088322/") such as lock onto a subject in view, change between different rear camera lenses, and more.

3. After you've chosen a shooting method, set up your shot ("https://downloadcenter.samsung.com/content/PM/202101/20210129215516972/EB/SAM_G991U_G996U_G998U_EN_FINAL_210122/navigate_the_camera_screen_d1e3075.html") and take some pictures or videos. If your subject is far away, you can use Space Zoom ("https://downloadcenter.samsung.com/content/PM/202101/20210129215516972/EB/SAM_G991U_G996U_G998U_EN_FINAL_210122/space_zoom_d1e3243.html") to zoom in and get a closer picture.

Camera settings

You can use the settings menu to configure your camera's settings. Swipe up from the bottom of your phone's screen to access the Apps menu, and then open the Camera app. From the app, tap the Settings icon to access additional options.



Intelligent features

- Scene optimizer: Automatically adjust exposure, contrast, white balance, and more based on what is detected in the camera frame. The Scene optimizer is only available when using the rear camera. The Scene optimizer icon will change automatically based on what the camera detects, such as a leaf icon when taking nature photos or a moon icon when taking photos in a dark setting.
- Shot suggestions: Get on-screen guides to help you line up great shots.
- Scan QR codes: Automatically detects QR codes when using the camera.

Pictures

- Swipe Shutter button to: Choose to either take a burst shot or create a GIF when you swipe the shutter to the nearest edge.
- Format and advanced options or Picture formats: Choose file formats and other save options.
- HEIF pictures: Save pictures as high-efficiency images to save space on your phone. Some sharing sites may not support this format.
- RAW copies: Save JPEG and RAW copies of pictures taken in Pro mode.
- Ultra wide shape correction: Automatically correct distortion in pictures taken with the ultra wide lens.

Selfies

- Use wide angle for group selfies: Automatically switches to wide-angle when there are two or more people in the selfie.
- Save selfies as previewed: Save selfies as they appear in the preview without flipping them.
- Selfie color tone: Set the color tone for your selfies to Natural or Bright.

Videos

- Advanced recording options: Enhance your videos with advanced recording formats.
- High efficiency videos: Record videos in HEVC format to save space. Other devices or sharing sites may not support playback of this format.
- HDR10+ videos: Optimize videos by recording in HDR10+. Playback devices must support HDR10+ video.

- Zoom-in mic: Match the mic zoom to the camera zoom while recording videos. You can pinch the screen while recording to zoom in or out. As you zoom in, the sounds of the subject you zoom in on will become louder. As you zoom out, the surrounding sound will no longer be suppressed.
- Video stabilization: Activate anti-shake to keep the focus steady when the camera is moving.

Useful features, General, and Privacy

- Auto HDR: Capture more detail in the bright and dark areas of your shots.
- Tracking auto-focus: Keep a moving subject in focus.
- Grid lines: Display viewfinder grid lines to help compose a picture or video.
- Location tags: Attach a GPS location tag to your pictures and videos.
- Shooting methods: There are a few different methods you can choose from.
    - Press Volume keys to: Use the Volume keys to take pictures, record video, zoom, or control system volume.
    - Voice commands: Take pictures by saying certain key words.
    - Floating Shutter button: Add an extra shutter button that you can move anywhere on the screen.
    - Show palm: Hold your hand out with your palm facing the camera to have your picture taken in a few seconds.
- Settings to keep: Choose whether to use the same shooting mode, selfie angle, and filters as the last time.
- Shutter sound: Play a tone when taking a picture.
- Vibration feedback: Enable vibrations when tapping the screen in the Camera app.
- Reset settings: Reset the Camera app’s settings.
- Contact us: Contact Samsung support through Samsung Members (if supported by your carrier).
- About Camera: View app and software information.

How to use Single take on Galaxy phones

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088362



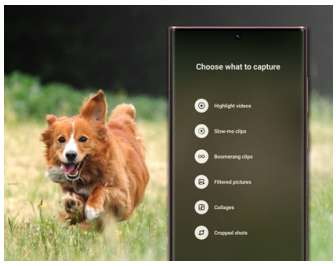
There are some differences when using Single take on Galaxy phones ("https://www.samsung.com/us/smartphones/") . For example, Story Video Editor is not available on the S21, S22, or Note20, but you can use this editor to add text or music to your Single take photos on the S20 and Z Fold. Each phone offers camera options for recording crisp videos and taking beautiful photos of your favorite things, whether you have the S24, S23 ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091862/") , S22 ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00090243/") , S21, Note20 ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087362/") , Z Flip ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086023/") or Z Fold ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00083026/") models.

Use Single take

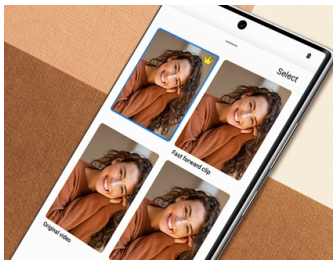
Single take will capture multiple photos at once of your family, your pets, or even yourself. The camera's AI will decide which angles to snap, so all of your photos come out crisp and bright.

Note: Single take will capture a variety of still shots and video clips with preapplied filters and effects.

1. Navigate to and open the Camera app, then tap MORE, and then tap SINGLE TAKE.
2. Tap the Options icon in the top right corner to select the type of shots you want to capture. You can choose from Highlight videos, Slow-mo clips, Boomerang clips, Filtered pictures, Collages, and Cropped shots. Tap OK when you're finished.



3. When you're ready, position your phone, and then tap Capture. You can tap Stop to finish taking photos before the time is up. If you need a little more time, you can tap +5s when it appears to add an additional five seconds of capture.
4. Tap the Gallery thumbnail to view your photos.
5. Tap Single take under the preview and swipe through to see all the images and videos captured.



6. Touch and hold a photo or video to select it - this will bring up an additional menu. Tap Best shot (the crown icon) to save the selected photo or video as your best-looking shot.

7. Tap Download to add the shot as a separate file in Gallery. Or, tap Share to send your content to friends or a social media account. Tap Trash to delete the photo or video.

Differences between the camera types

There are some differences when using Single take on the Galaxy models. For example, Story Video Editor is not available on the S21, S22, or Note20, but you can use this editor to add text or music to your Single take photos on the S20 and Z Fold. Each phone offers camera options for recording crisp videos and taking beautiful photos of your favorite things.

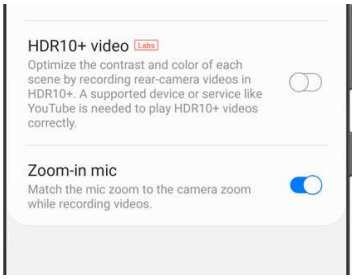


Zoom-in mic

Not only can you zoom in to capture photos, you can also use your phone's zoom to capture sounds. With the Zoom-in mic feature, every sound is increased as you zoom in while filming. This feature should be on by default but you can check it to make sure.

Open the Camera app, and then tap the Settings icon. Swipe to and tap Advanced recording options, and then tap the switch next to Zoom-in mic.

You can also use a variety of sound options in Pro video mode ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087562/") . These Multi-source microphone settings will make voices and subtle noises easier to hear.



Record, edit, and share 8K videos using your Galaxy phone

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086582



8K video is the newest, best-quality picture standard available, and devices like your Galaxy S24 series phone can record videos in this impressive format. Your videos can also be edited however you like, while maintaining a high resolution with zero blur. On some supported devices, you'll have access to additional editing options and can even control which microphone is recording. If you'd like to show the world your new videos, you can share them to YouTube or to your Smart TV.

Note: 8K video sharing on a TV is not supported through an HDMI USB-C connection. When recording 4K or 8K videos they can only be saved on the internal memory of the phone.

Film and edit an 8K video

In order to film an 8K video on your phone, you'll need to enable the 8K setting in the Camera app. Then, you can use the Editor to trim your video. On a supported device, you can also use the Pro Video function to capture 8K pictures as well.

You can experience the clearest 8K videos yet on the Galaxy S23 series ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/phones/all-phones/?model_family=Galaxy+S23+Ultra,Galaxy+S23%2B,Galaxy+S23") , thanks to their improved low light capture and optical zoom magnification.

1. To start taking a video, open the Camera app.
2. On a supported phone, tap VIDEO, or choose Pro Video, and then tap the Resolution icon to set the resolution to 8K.



3. When you're ready, tap Record to begin filming.
4. You can also tap Capture while you're recording an 8K video to save a high-resolution photo.
5. When you're finished recording, open the Gallery app and find your video.
6. Tap Play on the video and then tap the screen while the video is playing.

7. Tap the Quick crop icon in the left corner to take high-resolution 33MP pictures of the video.
8. To edit the video, tap Edit (the pencil icon).
9. Next, use the slider at the bottom of the screen to trim your video. Tap the speaker icon to adjust the sound level or add background music.
10. If you'd like, you can change the video's resolution to something other than 8K. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Size and format, and then choose your desired resolution.
11. When you are done editing, tap Save. It may take a few minutes to save the video, depending on its size.
12. To check the resolution details of an 8K video or photo after recording, open the Gallery app. Find the video or photo, and then swipe up on it to view its details.

On devices that support it, you can also control the sound input and change the microphone's direction ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087562/") when recording videos.

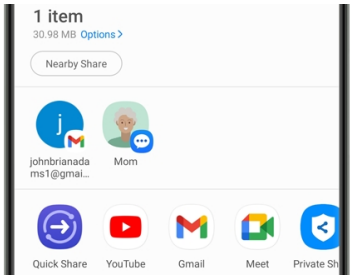
Share your 8K video

Now it’s time to share your video so everyone can enjoy it. You can share via Wi-Fi- from your phone to your Smart TV, or by uploading it to YouTube. Compatible Smart TVs ("https://www.samsung.com/us/televisions-home-theater/tvs/all-tvs/?key_category_featur es=8K+Resolution") can be found on our website.

Note: Your phone and TV must have Wi-Fi turned on to share the video.

To send your video to your TV, you can use either Tap view ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086463/") or Smart View. With Tap view, you can tap your phone against the edge of your TV to instantly transfer media. Or, you can enable Smart View to mirror your phone’s screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062585/") on your TV.

Maybe you want to upload the video to YouTube instead. First, open the Gallery app, and then select your video. Tap Share at the bottom of the screen, and then tap YouTube to open the app. Sign into your account, and then follow the prompts to upload your video. The video may take some time to upload due to the file size.



Use Director's View and Dual recording on your Galaxy phone

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088322



Are you an aspiring vlogger or YouTuber that has difficulty juggling multiple devices when you're trying to record yourself? Or maybe you just need something new to freshen things up in your videos? Either way, you should check out Director's View and Dual recording on Galaxy phones ("https://www.samsung.com/us/smartphones/") ! It lets you record a video using the rear camera and selfie camera at the same time! You'll be able to record things around you and your reactions simultaneously.

Note: Director's View and Dual recording are available on select devices running One UI 3.1 and higher. Director's view is not available on the Galaxy S24.

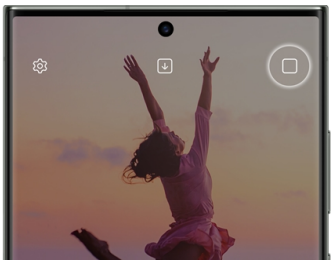
Record more at once with Director's View and Dual recording

You can use Director's View by itself (with no selfie camera) or with Dual recording, which lets you simultaneously record with the rear camera and selfie camera at the same time. Director's View also gives you the option to switch between the rear camera lenses.

1. Navigate to and open the Camera app.
2. Tap MORE, and then tap DIRECTOR'S VIEW.

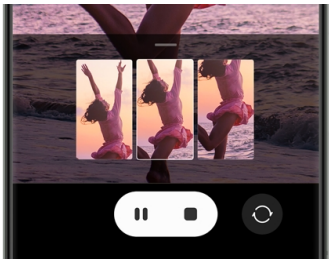


3. Different lens options will appear at the bottom of the screen. If you don't see these options, tap the arrow pointing up near the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap the available options to switch between the different camera lenses – even when you've already started recording! For example, you can switch between the Ultra-wide lens and telephoto lens instantly. You can also switch between the rear and selfie cameras by swiping up or down on the screen.
5. To change to Dual recording, tap the rectangular icon in the upper right corner. It will have a slightly different appearance, depending on the current mode.



6. From here, tap your desired recording option:
    - Tap the Picture-in-picture icon to have a small window appear in the corner, where you can see yourself in real time as you record.
    - Tap the Split icon to display the camera's viewfinder on the top and selfie camera on the bottom. You'll get a large view of whatever you're recording as well as yourself.
    - Tap the Single icon to make only the camera's viewfinder appear. In other words, this will turn off Dual recording and the selfie camera.
7. If you're using an S22 or S23, you have an additional option if you plan to use Dual recording. You can record the selfie front view video and the main rear view video as separate files! To do this, tap the Download icon (a box with a downward arrow) located at the top of the screen BEFORE you start recording. Two boxes will appear in the icon when it's set to download the videos individually. You can also tap this icon to save the video as previewed.
   Note: This setting is not currently available on any other device besides the S22 series and S23 series.
8. Once you've chosen your desired settings, tap Record to begin taking a video.
9. Like we said, you can alternate between the rear camera's lenses while a video is recording. However, you can't change the Dual recording feature once a video has started, so make sure to choose one before starting.

   Note: Switching from the rear camera to the selfie camera while recording will turn off Dual recording.
10. Tap the Pause icon to temporarily stop recording. You can press the Record icon to continue the recording.



11. When you're finished, tap the Stop icon. The video will be saved in the Gallery app.

Gallery

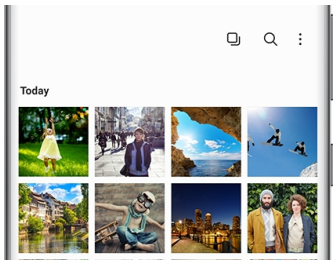
https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091443



View and edit pictures and videos

If you spent an hour trying to take that perfect selfie or video, you can look back at your hard work by viewing it in Gallery.

1. Navigate to and open Gallery, and then tap the Pictures tab. To search for a specific picture or video, tap the Search icon in the upper right corner. You can search by its tag, album name, or other details.



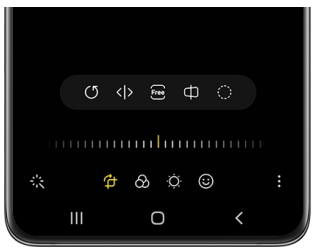
2. On newer devices, there is an option to group similar-looking pictures together. When this happens, not all of your images will appear in the Picture tab; instead, you'll see a small number (i.e., 2, 3, or so on) in the corner of some image thumbnails. Tap the thumbnail to view the images that have been grouped together.

3. If you do not wish to use this feature and would like all your pictures to display, simply tap the Group similar images icon at the top of the screen (it looks like a square).

4. Once you've found your desired photo or video, tap the thumbnail to view it. Tap More options (the three vertical dots) to be given additional options. You can view the file's details, print a photo, set an image as your background, and more!

5. If you'd like to edit a photo or video, navigate to and select it. Tap Edit (the pencil icon), and then use the available tools to adjust the photo or video:

    - To rotate horizontally or vertically, tap the Rotate icon (the circular arrow).



    - To flip horizontally (mirror it), tap the Flip icon (the line and two arrows).

- To change the aspect ratio, tap the Aspect ratio icon (it should say "Free"), and then choose your desired option. You can also rotate the photo or video up to 45 degrees by moving the slider in either direction.
- To adjust the perspective, tap the Perspective icon (it looks like a window). Choose either Horizontal or Vertical, and then use the slider to change the perspective.
- To select a certain portion of the picture, tap the Lasso icon (it looks like a dotted circle). Use the different tools to draw and select your desired portion of the picture. This is not available when editing videos.
- To add filters, tap the Filter icon (it looks like three circles). Choose your preferred filter from the default options. Or, tap My filters to create a new filter or apply one you've created in the past.
- To adjust the brightness and other lighting settings, tap the Brightness icon (it looks like a sun). From here, you can adjust the light balance, contrast, saturation, and more.
- To draw, add stickers, or write text, tap the Smiley face icon. Use the provided options to decorate the picture or video. While drawing, you can undo or redo edits by tapping the Undo or Redo icons.
- To access even more editing options, tap More options (the three vertical dots) in the lower right-hand corner. Here you can use the Object eraser, Color mix, and other helpful options.

6. If you are unsatisfied with the edits you made, tap Revert to undo all of them.
7. To save your edits over the existing picture or video, tap Save in the upper right-hand corner. If you'd like to save a new picture or video with the edits and keep the original, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Save as copy.

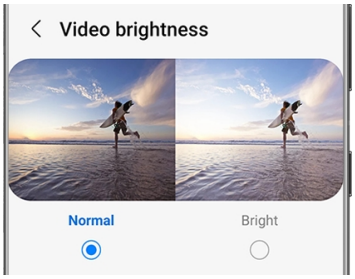
   Note: If you tap Back while editing, a popup will appear and ask if you'd like to save or discard your changes.

Video brightness

Your Galaxy device has an amazing screen, so make the most of it! The Video enhancer feature works with most streaming apps to give you bright, vibrant color.

From Settings, tap Advanced features and then tap Video brightness. Select Normal or Bright.

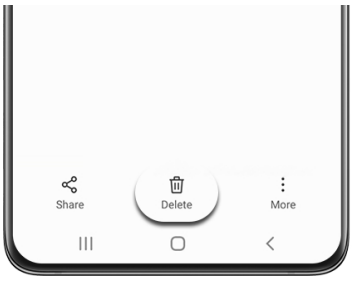
If you select Bright, a list of compatible apps will appear. You can select which app(s) are automatically enhanced by tapping the switch(es).



Delete pictures and videos

Your friend photobombed an otherwise great picture or video. Delete their prank in just a few steps.

1. From Gallery, tap Albums, and then tap your desired album.
2. Touch and hold the thumbnail of the photo(s) or video(s) you want to delete. Tap Delete, and then tap Move to Trash to confirm.
3. If you want to permanently delete images or videos from the Trash, open Gallery, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines) at the bottom.
4. Tap Trash, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap Empty, and then tap Delete.



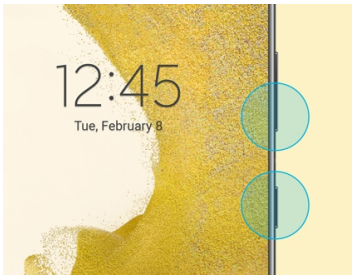
Take a screenshot

Use button combinations

No matter what phone or tablet you have, the steps for taking a screenshot are similar, but it does vary slightly based on the model. Before you take one, you'll need to locate the Power and Volume down keys.

Usually, the Volume keys are on the left side and the Power button (or Side key) is on the right. However, for some models, the keys' locations may be reversed. Or, all the keys could be on the same side!

When you want to take a screenshot, just hold the Volume down key and the Power key (Side key) simultaneously. The screen will flash, indicating that a screenshot was captured.



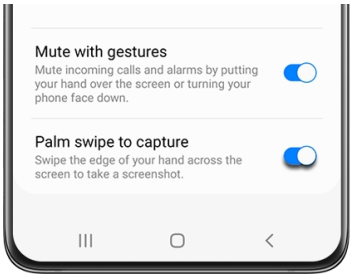
Certain tablets may have a physical Home key instead. You can press and hold the Power and Home keys simultaneously to take a screenshot.

Use palm swipe

Note: This function may not be available on all Galaxy devices. The Galaxy Tab S6 Lite does not support Palm swipe to capture due to a hardware limitation. However, you can use the tablet keys or the Air command menu to take a screenshot instead. You can then view and share your screenshot in the Gallery app.

Wait, there's another way to take a screenshot. On some devices, you can use Palm swipe to take a screenshot without even pressing a button.

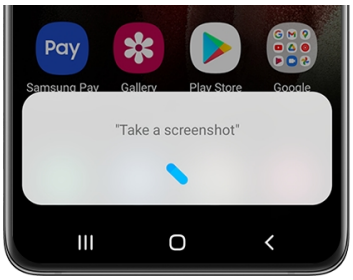
From Settings, search for and select Palm swipe to capture. Then, tap the switch next to Palm swipe to capture. Now you'll be able to take a screenshot just by swiping the edge of your hand across your phone's screen.



Use your voice

If you have Bixby Voice or Google Assistant set up, you can take a screenshot with a simple voice command. Say "Hey Bixby, take a screenshot," and Bixby will capture what's on your screen.

You can even string together complex commands and say "Hey Bixby, take a screenshot, and share on Twitter."

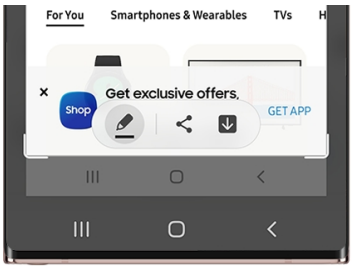


Use the S Pen

If you're always using an S Pen with a compatible phone or tablet, why not take a screenshot with it as well? The S Pen's Screen write feature can easily snap a quick screenshot of whatever you're doing.

Remove your S Pen from your device, and then navigate to the screen you'd like to capture. With your S Pen, tap the Air command menu icon, and then tap Screen write. Your device will automatically take a screenshot of the page you're on. Use the controls to write or draw on the screenshot if you'd like. When you're done, tap the Save icon to store the screenshot in Gallery.

You can also use your S Pen to capture parts of an image with Smart Select ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087602/") .

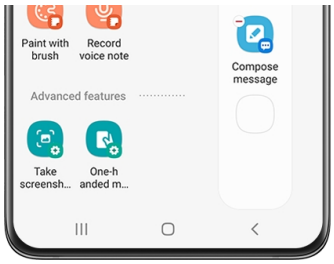


Use the Tasks Edge panel

Your device's Edge panel can also help you out when taking a screenshot. You'll just need to add the Tasks Edge panel and the Take screenshot shortcut.

1. Open the panel by swiping left on the Edge panel handle on the right side of the screen.
2. Tap the Settings icon at the bottom, and then swipe to and tap the Tasks panel to select it.
3. Tap Edit under the panel. Your preferred shortcuts will appear on the right side; swipe to and tap Take screenshots on the left side to add this to your shortcuts.

   Note: The Take screenshots shortcut may be automatically added.

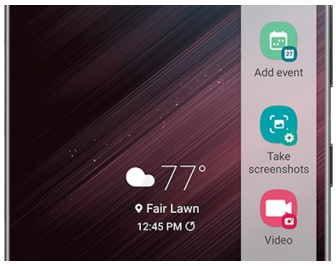


4. You can also select or deselect additional shortcuts if desired. To remove a shortcut, tap the red minus icon.

   Note: You cannot add more than twelve shortcuts.

5. Tap Back twice to view your Home screen, and then navigate to a screen you'd like to capture.

6. Swipe left on the Edge panel handle again to open it. Swipe left a second time to view the Tasks panel.



7. Next, tap Take screenshot. Your device will take a screenshot of the current screen. Now, you can easily use this shortcut whenever you need to capture your screen!

Screen recorder

Record your screen

Note: Screen recorder will not record phone, VOIP calls, or video calls. Additionally, some apps may block the screen recorder feature due to copyright restrictions. Availability of some features will vary by model and software version.

Instead of using a third-party app, record your screen on Galaxy phones with Screen recorder. Record anything that's displayed on your screen! You can even use the front camera to record yourself during the video.

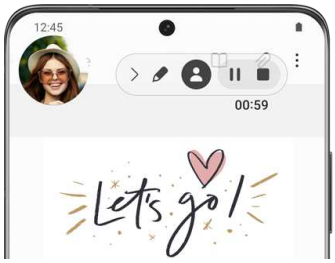
1. Open the Quick settings panel by swiping down from the top of the screen with two fingers. Then, tap Screen recorder.

   Note: If the Screen recorder icon is not there, you can add it to the Quick settings panel ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") .



2. Choose your desired option, such as No sound, Media sounds, or Media sounds and mic, and then tap Start recording.

3. Once the countdown finishes, your phone will start recording whatever's on the screen.
4. On devices that support it, you can add yourself to the video using the front-facing camera. Just tap the Front camera icon – it looks like a person icon. A small window will appear in the upper left corner and will record everything you do.



Note: The Galaxy Tab A8 does not support front camera recording with Screen recorder.

5. For extra fun, you can also write on the screen while it's recording. Tap the Pencil icon, select your desired color, and then use your finger or S Pen to write on the screen. However, you cannot interact with games, videos, or navigational options while you're writing on the screen.
6. Tap the Pencil icon again to stop drawing. Once you turn off the Pencil feature, the screen will go back to normal and you can continue recording regularly.
7. When you're done recording, tap the Stop icon. The video will be saved in Gallery. However, some screen recordings can only be accessed by opening the My Files app, tapping Internal storage, and then tapping the DCIM folder.

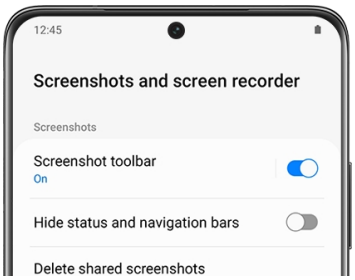
Access Screen recorder settings

Note: Availablilty of some settings will vary based on model and software version.

Do you want the video quality to be a higher resolution? No worries, you can easily adjust this and other settings to make your video perfect.

Open the Quick settings panel by swiping down from the top of the screen with two fingers. Then, touch and hold Screen recorder to opens its settings page.

Note: If the icon isn't there, you can add it ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") to the Quick settings panel.



Swipe up on the settings page to see the available options listed under Screen recorder:

- Sound: Select what sounds the video will record. You can choose between No sound, Media sounds, or Media sounds and mic.
- Video quality: Choose your desired quality for videos. The available options are 1080p, 720p, and 480p.
- Selfie video size: Adjust the size of the popup window when you're recording yourself using the front camera on devices that support the front camera when recording the screen.

  Note: The Galaxy Tab A8 does not support front camera recording with Screen recorder.

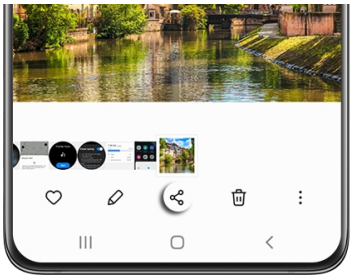
- Show taps and touches: Small dots will appear whenever you touch or tap the screen while recording.

Share pictures and videos

If you want to send some new photos or videos to your friends, you can use Nearby Share, Quick Share, or Private Share ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") . These features will let you send your images and videos directly to a compatible phone or tablet without opening any additional apps.

You can also use the Sharing panel to share your images and videos to your favorite apps, such as Instagram or Facebook.

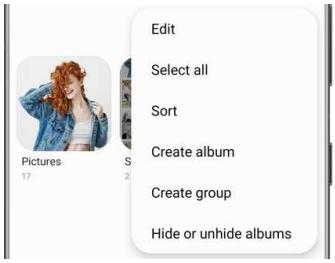
1. To begin, open Gallery and select the photo or video you'd like to share.
2. Then, tap the Share icon at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select your desired app and then follow the on-screen instructions to share your image or video.



Group similar images

With so many photos and videos, your Gallery can get a little disorganized. Just create an album to get rid of the clutter.

1. From Gallery, tap the Albums tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Create album.

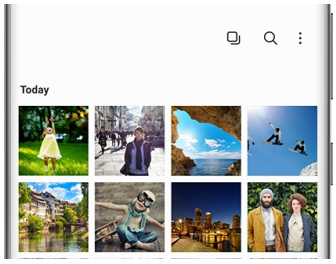


2. Enter the desired name for your new album, and then tap Create.
3. To add pictures or videos to your new album, tap the album. Tap Add items, and then tap the Pictures tab.
4. Select the pictures or videos you want to add, and then tap Done.
5. Then, choose how you'd like to move the pictures or videos by selecting Copy or Move.

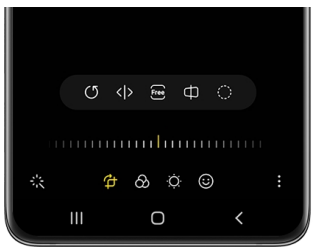
View and edit pictures and videos

If you spent an hour trying to take that perfect selfie or video, you can look back at your hard work by viewing it in Gallery.

1. Navigate to and open Gallery, and then tap the Pictures tab. To search for a specific picture or video, tap the Search icon in the upper right corner. You can search by its tag, album name, or other details.



2. On newer devices, there is an option to group similar-looking pictures together. When this happens, not all of your images will appear in the Picture tab; instead, you'll see a small number (i.e., 2, 3, or so on) in the corner of some image thumbnails. Tap the thumbnail to view the images that have been grouped together.
3. If you do not wish to use this feature and would like all your pictures to display, simply tap the Group similar images icon at the top of the screen (it looks like a square).
4. Once you've found your desired photo or video, tap the thumbnail to view it. Tap More options (the three vertical dots) to be given additional options. You can view the file's details, print a photo, set an image as your background, and more!
5. If you'd like to edit a photo or video, navigate to and select it. Tap Edit (the pencil icon), and then use the available tools to adjust the photo or video:
    - To rotate horizontally or vertically, tap the Rotate icon (the circular arrow).



    - To flip horizontally (mirror it), tap the Flip icon (the line and two arrows).
    - To change the aspect ratio, tap the Aspect ratio icon (it should say "Free"), and then choose your desired option. You can also rotate the photo or video up to 45 degrees by moving the slider in either direction.
    - To adjust the perspective, tap the Perspective icon (it looks like a window). Choose either Horizontal or Vertical, and then use the slider to change the perspective.
    - To select a certain portion of the picture, tap the Lasso icon (it looks like a dotted circle). Use the different tools to draw and select your desired portion of the picture. This is not available when editing videos.
    - To add filters, tap the Filter icon (it looks like three circles). Choose your preferred filter from the default options. Or, tap My filters to create a new filter or apply one you've created in the past.

- To adjust the brightness and other lighting settings, tap the Brightness icon (it looks like a sun). From here, you can adjust the light balance, contrast, saturation, and more.
- To draw, add stickers, or write text, tap the Smiley face icon. Use the provided options to decorate the picture or video. While drawing, you can undo or redo edits by tapping the Undo or Redo icons.
- To access even more editing options, tap More options (the three vertical dots) in the lower right-hand corner. Here you can use the Object eraser, Color mix, and other helpful options.

6. If you are unsatisfied with the edits you made, tap Revert to undo all of them.
7. To save your edits over the existing picture or video, tap Save in the upper right-hand corner. If you'd like to save a new picture or video with the edits and keep the original, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Save as copy.

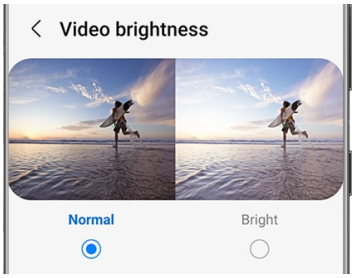
   Note: If you tap Back while editing, a popup will appear and ask if you'd like to save or discard your changes.

Video brightness

Your Galaxy device has an amazing screen, so make the most of it! The Video enhancer feature works with most streaming apps to give you bright, vibrant color.

From Settings, tap Advanced features and then tap Video brightness. Select Normal or Bright.

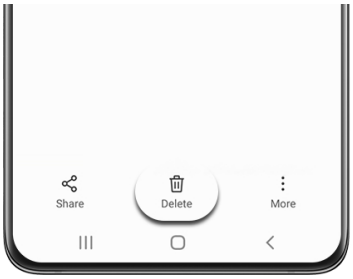
If you select Bright, a list of compatible apps will appear. You can select which app(s) are automatically enhanced by tapping the switch(es).



Delete pictures and videos

Your friend photobombed an otherwise great picture or video. Delete their prank in just a few steps.

1. From Gallery, tap Albums, and then tap your desired album.
2. Touch and hold the thumbnail of the photo(s) or video(s) you want to delete. Tap Delete, and then tap Move to Trash to confirm.
3. If you want to permanently delete images or videos from the Trash, open Gallery, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines) at the bottom.
4. Tap Trash, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap Empty, and then tap Delete.



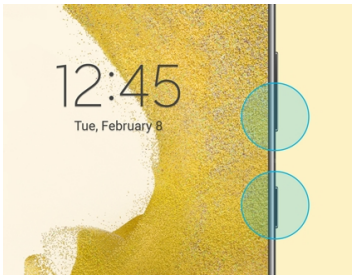
Take a screenshot

Use button combinations

No matter what phone or tablet you have, the steps for taking a screenshot are similar, but it does vary slightly based on the model. Before you take one, you'll need to locate the Power and Volume down keys.

Usually, the Volume keys are on the left side and the Power button (or Side key) is on the right. However, for some models, the keys' locations may be reversed. Or, all the keys could be on the same side!

When you want to take a screenshot, just hold the Volume down key and the Power key (Side key) simultaneously. The screen will flash, indicating that a screenshot was captured.



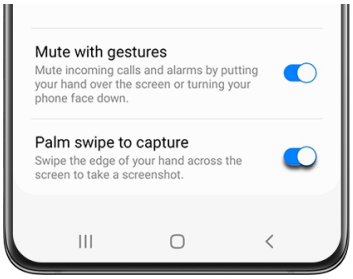
Certain tablets may have a physical Home key instead. You can press and hold the Power and Home keys simultaneously to take a screenshot.

Use palm swipe

Note: This function may not be available on all Galaxy devices. The Galaxy Tab S6 Lite does not support Palm swipe to capture due to a hardware limitation. However, you can use the tablet keys or the Air command menu to take a screenshot instead. You can then view and share your screenshot in the Gallery app.

Wait, there's another way to take a screenshot. On some devices, you can use Palm swipe to take a screenshot without even pressing a button.

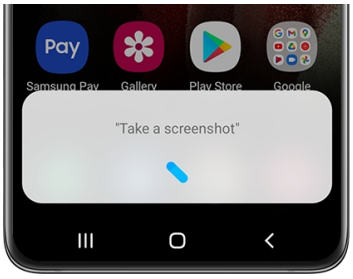
From Settings, search for and select Palm swipe to capture. Then, tap the switch next to Palm swipe to capture. Now you'll be able to take a screenshot just by swiping the edge of your hand across your phone's screen.



Use your voice

If you have Bixby Voice or Google Assistant set up, you can take a screenshot with a simple voice command. Say "Hey Bixby, take a screenshot," and Bixby will capture what's on your screen.

You can even string together complex commands and say "Hey Bixby, take a screenshot, and share on Twitter."

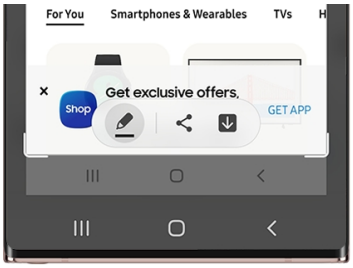


Use the S Pen

If you’re always using an S Pen with a compatible phone or tablet, why not take a screenshot with it as well? The S Pen's Screen write feature can easily snap a quick screenshot of whatever you're doing.

Remove your S Pen from your device, and then navigate to the screen you'd like to capture. With your S Pen, tap the Air command menu icon, and then tap Screen write. Your device will automatically take a screenshot of the page you're on. Use the controls to write or draw on the screenshot if you'd like. When you're done, tap the Save icon to store the screenshot in Gallery.

You can also use your S Pen to capture parts of an image with Smart Select ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087602/") .

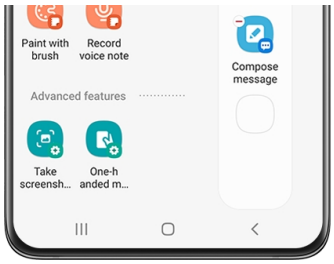


Use the Tasks Edge panel

Your device's Edge panel can also help you out when taking a screenshot. You’ll just need to add the Tasks Edge panel and the Take screenshot shortcut.

1. Open the panel by swiping left on the Edge panel handle on the right side of the screen.
2. Tap the Settings icon at the bottom, and then swipe to and tap the Tasks panel to select it.
3. Tap Edit under the panel. Your preferred shortcuts will appear on the right side; swipe to and tap Take screenshots on the left side to add this to your shortcuts.

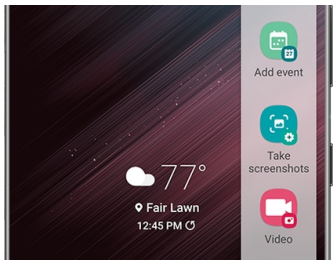
   Note: The Take screenshots shortcut may be automatically added.



4. You can also select or deselect additional shortcuts if desired. To remove a shortcut, tap the red minus icon.

   Note: You cannot add more than twelve shortcuts.

5. Tap Back twice to view your Home screen, and then navigate to a screen you’d like to capture.
6. Swipe left on the Edge panel handle again to open it. Swipe left a second time to view the Tasks panel.



7. Next, tap Take screenshot. Your device will take a screenshot of the current screen. Now, you can easily use this shortcut whenever you need to capture your screen!

Screen recorder

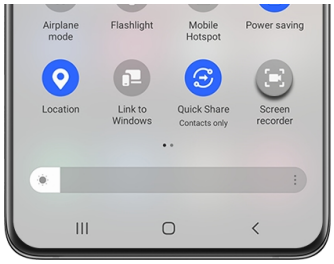
Record your screen

Note: Screen recorder will not record phone, VOIP calls, or video calls. Additionally, some apps may block the screen recorder feature due to copyright restrictions. Availability of some features will vary by model and software version.

Instead of using a third-party app, record your screen on Galaxy phones with Screen recorder. Record anything that's displayed on your screen! You can even use the front camera to record yourself during the video.

1. Open the Quick settings panel by swiping down from the top of the screen with two fingers. Then, tap Screen recorder.

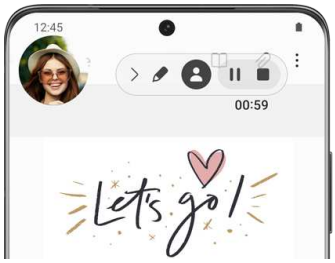
   Note: If the Screen recorder icon is not there, you can add it to the Quick settings panel ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") .



2. Choose your desired option, such as No sound, Media sounds, or Media sounds and mic, and then tap Start recording.

3. Once the countdown finishes, your phone will start recording whatever's on the screen.

4. On devices that support it, you can add yourself to the video using the front-facing camera. Just tap the Front camera icon – it looks like a person icon. A small window will appear in the upper left corner and will record everything you do.



   Note: The Galaxy Tab A8 does not support front camera recording with Screen recorder.

5. For extra fun, you can also write on the screen while it's recording. Tap the Pencil icon, select your desired color, and then use your finger or S Pen to write on the screen. However, you cannot interact with games, videos, or navigational options while you're writing on the screen.

6. Tap the Pencil icon again to stop drawing. Once you turn off the Pencil feature, the screen will go back to normal and you can continue recording regularly.

7. When you're done recording, tap the Stop icon. The video will be saved in Gallery. However, some screen recordings can only be accessed by opening the My Files app, tapping Internal storage, and then tapping the DCIM folder.

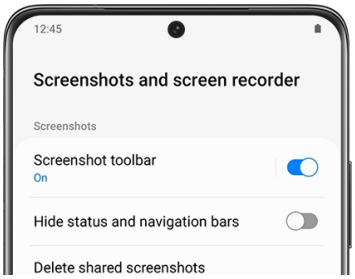
Access Screen recorder settings

Note: Availablilty of some settings will vary based on model and software version.

Do you want the video quality to be a higher resolution? No worries, you can easily adjust this and other settings to make your video perfect.

Open the Quick settings panel by swiping down from the top of the screen with two fingers. Then, touch and hold Screen recorder to opens its settings page.

Note: If the icon isn't there, you can add it ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") to the Quick settings panel.



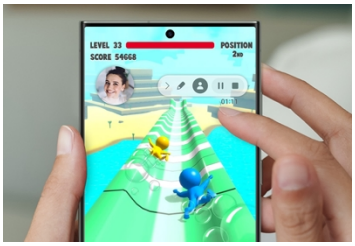
Swipe up on the settings page to see the available options listed under Screen recorder:

- Sound: Select what sounds the video will record. You can choose between No sound, Media sounds, or Media sounds and mic.
- Video quality: Choose your desired quality for videos. The available options are 1080p, 720p, and 480p.
- Selfie video size: Adjust the size of the popup window when you’re recording yourself using the front camera on devices that support the front camera when recording the screen.

  Note: The Galaxy Tab A8 does not support front camera recording with Screen recorder.
- Show taps and touches: Small dots will appear whenever you touch or tap the screen while recording.

Record and capture your Galaxy phone or tablet's screen

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00084187



Screenshots are a great way to quickly save anything important that comes across your screen. With the Screen recorder feature on phones and tablets with One UI 2 or later, you can also capture funny memes, your epic gameplay, reaction videos, or show a loved one how to do something on their phone. You can find the newest Galaxy phones ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/phones/all-phones/") and tablets ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/tablets/all-tablets/") that support screen capture on our website.

Note: Not all screens or apps allow recordings or screenshots.

Take a screenshot

If you don't need a full video and just want a single image of what's on your screen, you can take an old-fashioned screenshot.

Press the Volume down button and the Power button (or the Side button) at the same time. The screen will flash, and a menu will appear on the bottom of the screen.

You'll see the available options:



- Scroll capture: Take a long screenshot to capture the whole screen. This setting is only available when scrolling is possible.
- Draw: Edit the screenshot before sharing or saving it.
- Add tag: Add and save tags to your screenshot.
- Share: Share the screenshot with another app or a contact.

  You can also take screenshots using gestures, button combinations, and the S Pen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00038721/") . Or, you can use the Smart Select ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087602/") function.

Record your screen

Note: Screen recorder will not record phone, VOIP calls, or video calls. Additionally, some apps may block the screen recorder feature due to copyright restrictions. Availability of some features will vary by model and software version.

Compatible devices

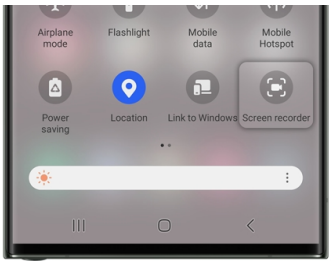
Screen recorder is available on the Tab S6, Tab S7, Tab S8, Tab S9, Tab A8, Tab A9+, Galaxy S10, S20, S21, S22, S23, Note 10, Note 20, Z Fold, and Z Flip models. The Galaxy A25 5G, A54 5G, A53 5G, A52 5G, and A32 5G also support Screen recorder.

How to record your screen

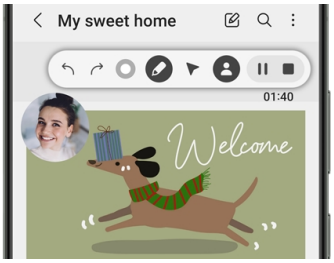
Instead of using a third-party app, record your screen on Galaxy phones with Screen recorder. Record anything that's displayed on your screen! You can even use the front camera to record yourself during the video.

1. Open the Quick panel by swiping down from the top of the screen with two fingers. Then, tap Screen recorder.

   Note: If the Screen recorder icon is not there, you can add it ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") to the Quick panel.



2. Choose your desired option under Sound settings, and then tap Start recording.
3. Once the countdown finishes, your phone will start recording whatever's on the screen.
4. On devices that support it, you can add yourself to the video using the front-facing camera. Just tap the Front camera icon – it looks like a person icon. A small window will appear in the upper left corner and will record everything you do.



   Note: The Galaxy Tab A8 does not support front camera recording with Screen recorder.

5. For extra fun, you can also write on the screen while it's recording. Tap the Pencil icon, select your desired color, and then use your finger or S Pen to write on the screen. However, you cannot interact with games, videos, or navigational options while you're writing on the screen.
6. Tap the Pencil icon again to stop drawing. Once you turn off the Pencil feature, the screen will go back to normal and you can continue recording normally.
7. When you're done recording, tap the Stop icon. The video will be saved in Gallery. However, some screen

recordings can only be accessed by opening the My Files app, then tapping Internal storage, and then tapping the DCIM folder.

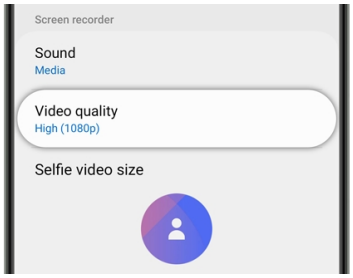
Access Screen recorder settings

Note: Availability of some settings will vary based on model and software version.

Do you want the video quality to be a higher resolution? No worries, you can easily adjust this and other settings to make your video perfect.

Open the Quick panel by swiping down from the top of the screen with two fingers. Then, touch and hold the Screen recorder icon to opens its settings page.

Note: If the icon isn't there, you can add it ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") to the Quick panel.



Swipe up on the settings page to see the available options listed under Screen recorder:

- Sound: Select what sounds the video will record. You can choose from None, Media, or Media and mic.
- Video quality: Choose your desired quality for videos. The available options are High (1080p), Medium (720p), and Low (480p).
- Selfie video size: Adjust the size of the pop-up window when you're recording yourself using the front camera on devices that support the front camera when recording the screen.

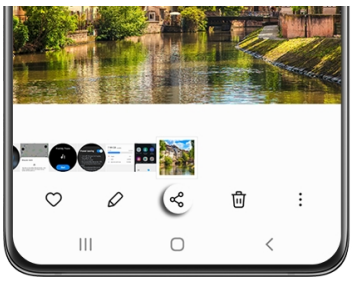
  Note: The Galaxy Tab A8 does not support front camera recording with Screen recorder.
- Show taps and touches: Small dots will appear whenever you touch or tap the screen while recording.
- Save screen recordings in: Select where your screen recordings will save.
  Note: This option may not be available on all devices.

Share pictures and videos

If you want to send some new photos or videos to your friends, you can use Nearby Share, Quick Share, or Private Share ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") . These features will let you send your images and videos directly to a compatible phone or tablet without opening any additional apps.

You can also use the Sharing panel to share your images and videos to your favorite apps, such as Instagram or Facebook.

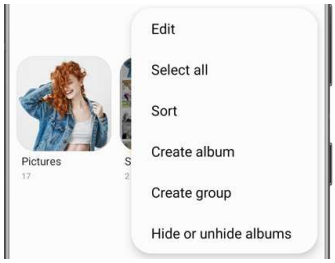
1. To begin, open Gallery and select the photo or video you'd like to share.
2. Then, tap the Share icon at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select your desired app and then follow the on-screen instructions to share your image or video.



Group similar images

With so many photos and videos, your Gallery can get a little disorganized. Just create an album to get rid of the clutter.

1. From Gallery, tap the Albums tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Create album.



2. Enter the desired name for your new album, and then tap Create.
3. To add pictures or videos to your new album, tap the album. Tap Add items, and then tap the Pictures tab.
4. Select the pictures or videos you want to add, and then tap Done.
5. Then, choose how you'd like to move the pictures or videos by selecting Copy or Move.

Essentials Apps

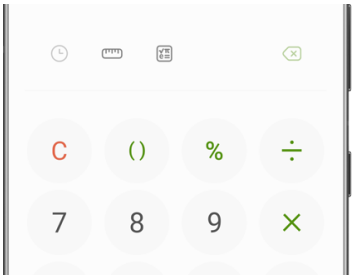
https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091444



Calculator

The Calculator app features both basic and scientific math functions, as well as a unit converter. You can use the Calculator app the same way you'd use a physical calculator. To access the Calculator, swipe up on a Home screen to open the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap Calculator. Along with its basic functions, you can also use the following options:

- History: Tap the History icon (it looks like a clock) to view past calculations you've made.
- Unit converter: Tap the Unit converter icon (it looks like a ruler) to convert different measurements.
- Scientific mode: Tap the Scientific mode icon (it looks like a box with numeric symbols) to display additional function keys.



If you have uninstalled the Samsung Calculator, you can reinstall it from the Galaxy Store ("https://apps.samsung.com/appquery/appDetail.as?appId=com.sec.android.app.popupcalculator&cId=000006170083") . If you need quick access to Calculator, you can add it to your Home screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077916/") .

Calendar

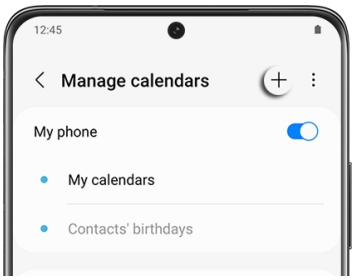
The Calendar app can be connected to your various online accounts (like Google or Outlook) to consolidate all your calendars in one place. To find the Calendar app, swipe up on a Home screen to access the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap Calendar.

Add calendars to sync

1. Open the Calendar app, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap Manage calendars.

3. Tap Add (the plus sign), and then select your desired type of account.
4. Enter your account information and follow the prompts.

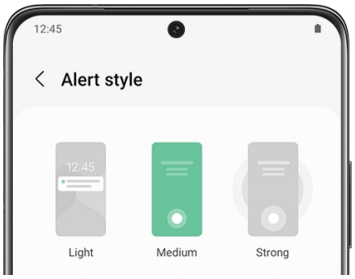
   Note: Accounts may also support email, contacts, and other features.
5. Once the account has been added, you can see it in the menu. Tap the account to see the types of calendars you can display. Some accounts, like a Google account, can display your contact's birthdays, or U.S. holidays.



Calendar alert style

When a Calendar event is happening soon, the app will send an alert on your phone. Alerts can be set to different styles to suit your needs.

1. Open the Calendar app, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap the Settings icon.
3. Swipe to and tap Alert style to select from the following options:



- Light: Receive a notification and hear a short sound.
- Medium: Get a full screen alert and hear a short sound.
- Strong: Get a full screen alert and ring sound that persists until dismissed.

  Depending on the alert style selected above, the following sound options will be available:

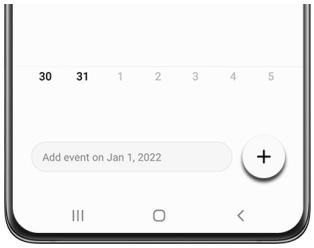
  - Short sound: Choose the alert sound for Light or Medium alert styles.
  - Long sound: Choose the alert sound for the Strong alert style.

    Create or delete an event

    Your Calendar can be used to create events. If needed, you can delete the events later on.

    1. Open the Calendar app, and then tap Add event (the plus sign) to create an event.
    2. Enter details for the event, and then tap Save.
    3. To remove the event, navigate back to the Calendar app and then tap the desired event.

4. Tap the event again in the pop-up window, tap Delete, and then tap Move to move it to the Trash.



If you have uninstalled the Samsung Calendar, you can reinstall it from the Galaxy Store ("https://apps.samsung.com/appquery/appDetail.as?appId=com.samsung.android.calendar&cId=000005979539") . If you need quick access to Calendar, you can add it to your Home screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077916/") .

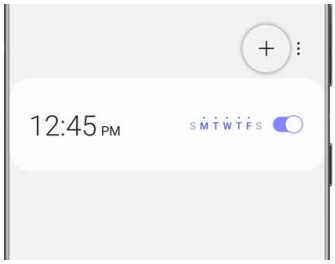
Clock

The Clock app offers features for keeping track of time and setting alarms. To find the Clock app, swipe up on a Home screen to access the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap Clock.

Add or delete an alarm

Use the Alarm tab to set one-time or recurring alarms and choose options for how to be notified. You can also delete alarms.

1. From the Clock app, tap the Alarm tab, and then tap Add alarm (the plus sign).

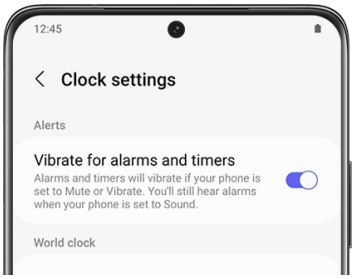


2. Tap the following items to customize an alarm:
    - Time: Set a time for the alarm.
    - Day: Choose the days for this alarm.
    - Alarm name: Enter a name for the alarm.
    - Alarm sound: Choose a sound to play for the alarm and drag the slider to set the volume of the alarm.
    - Vibration: Choose whether the alarm uses vibration alert.
    - Snooze: Allow snoozing. Set interval and repeat values for the alarm while snoozing.
3. Tap Save to save the alarm. The alarm will go off at the designated time you chose.
4. To delete an alarm, touch and hold your desired alarm, and then tap Delete. You can also tap All and then tap Delete all if you wish to remove every alarm you've set.

Alert settings

You can set the device to vibrate for alarms and timers whether the Sound mode is set to Mute or Vibrate.

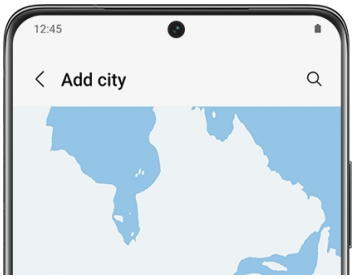
1. Open the Clock app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
2. Tap Vibrate for alarms and timers to enable the feature.



World clock

The World clock lets you keep track of the current time in multiple cities around the globe.

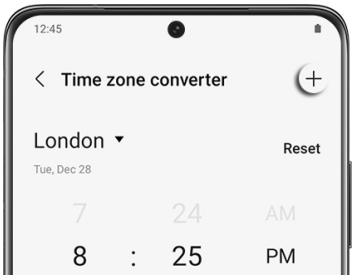
1. Open the Clock app, tap World clock, and then tap Add city (the plus sign).
2. Touch and hold the globe to spin it, and then tap the city you want. Or, you can use the Search function to locate a specific city.
3. When you find your desired city, tap Add.
4. To remove a city, touch and hold it, and tap Delete.



Time zone converter

Set a time in a city on your World clock list to see what the local times would be in the other listed cities.

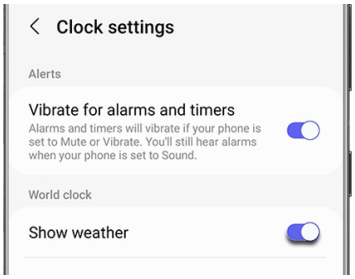
1. From the Clock app, tap the World clock tab.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Time zone converter.
3. Tap the drop-down menu to choose a different city. Or, to register a new city to the list, tap Add city (the plus sign).
4. Swipe the hours, minutes, and period (AM or PM) on the clock to set a time. Local times for the other cities listed are automatically updated.
5. To return the clock to the current time, tap Reset.



Weather settings

Show weather information on your World clock.

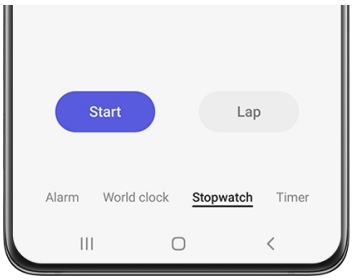
1. From the Clock app, tap the World clock tab.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings. Tap the switch next to Show weather to enable or disable weather information.
3. Tap Temperature to change the temperature from Fahrenheit to Celsius.



Stopwatch

The Stopwatch lets you time events down to a hundredth of a second.

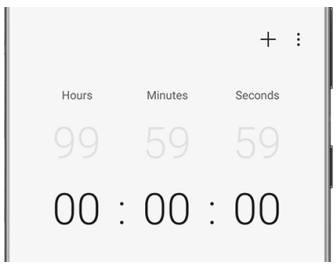
1. From the Clock app, tap the Stopwatch tab.
2. Tap Start to begin timing.
3. To keep track of lap times, tap Lap.
4. Tap Stop to pause timing.
5. To continue timing after pausing the clock, tap Resume.
6. To reset the Stopwatch to zero, tap Reset.



Timer

The countdown timer can be set to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds.

1. Open the Clock app, and then tap the Timer tab.
2. Use the keypad to select the hours, minutes, and seconds to set the timer.

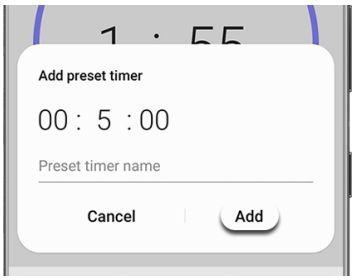


3. Tap Start to begin the timer.
4. To temporarily stop the timer, tap Pause. To continue, tap Resume.
5. To stop and reset the timer, tap Cancel.

Preset timer

You can also name and save preset timers.

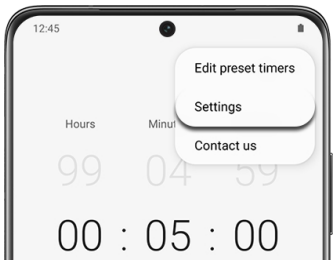
1. Open the Clock app, tap the Timer tab, and then tap Add preset timer (the plus sign).
2. Configure the countdown time and timer name.
3. Tap Add to save the timer.
4. To use a preset timer you created, simply tap its name while in the the Timer tab, and then tap Start.
5. To edit a saved preset timer, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Edit preset timers.



Timer options and general settings

You can customize the Timer and Clock settings to suit your preference.

1. Open the Clock app, and then tap the Timer tab.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.



You can select from the following options under Timer:

- Sound: Choose a preloaded timer sound or add your own.
- Vibration: Enable or disable vibration for the timer.
- Show mini timer: A small timer will appear on your Home screen. You can pause or stop the mini timer as well.

3. You can select from the following options under General:

- Customization Service: Sign in to your Samsung account to customize personal content in supported apps.
- About Clock: View the current software version and check for updates.

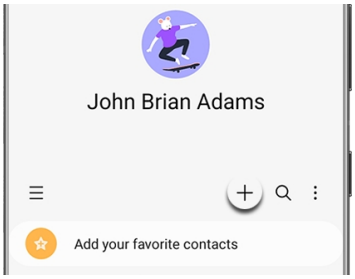
If you have uninstalled the Samsung Clock, you can reinstall it from the Galaxy Store ("https://apps.samsung.com/appquery/appDetail.as?appId=com.sec.android.app.clockpackage&cId=000006271579") . If you need quick access to Clock, you can add it to your Home screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077916/") .

Contacts

Add a new contact

If you meet someone new and get their contact information, it's easy to add them to your phone or tablet.

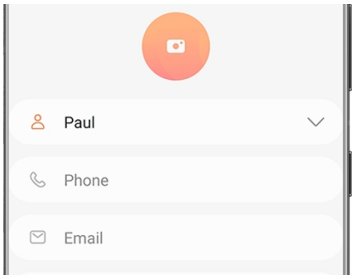
1. Open the Contacts app, and then tap Add (the plus sign).
2. Tap the drop-down menu in the upper right corner to choose where you want to save the contact, such as Phone or Google.
3. Next, fill out their contact information and personal details. You can add multiple numbers and addresses in the Phone and Email fields by tapping + Add.
4. When you're done, tap Save to add them as a Contact.



Edit a contact

Did your friend just get a new job and a new work number? Just follow these steps to edit their contact information.

1. Open the Contacts app, and then tap the contact you want to adjust. Tap Edit. You can change your contact’s information by tapping the desired field.
2. To add additional numbers or email addresses, tap on your desired field and then tap + Add.
3. To delete something, tap Remove (the minus icon) next to it.
4. Tap View more to edit additional options like address, notes, relationship, etc.
5. When you’re done editing, tap Save.



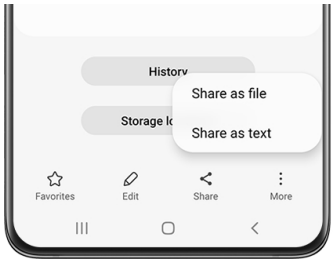
Share contacts

You can import and export your contacts right from the Contacts app! Your contacts will also sync between your

devices if they are signed into the same Samsung Account.

1. Open the Contacts app, and then tap a contact you want to share. Tap Share at the bottom.
2. Select how you'd like to share the contact. You can choose from Share as file or Share as text.

   Note: On some devices, these options may be worded differently.



3. Next, choose your preferred sharing method, such as Quick Share or email, and then follow the necessary prompts. Depending on your sharing method, you may need to select Import on the other device.
4. To share multiple contacts, navigate to the Contacts screen, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap Share contacts.
5. Select your desired contacts, or tap All at the top. Then, tap Share at the bottom. Follow the prompts on the other device to import the contacts.
6. You can also share a contact with another device using a QR code. Tap a contact, then tap More (the three vertical dots) at the bottom, and then tap QR code.
7. Then, using the other device, open the Contacts app. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Scan QR code. Position the device to scan the code.

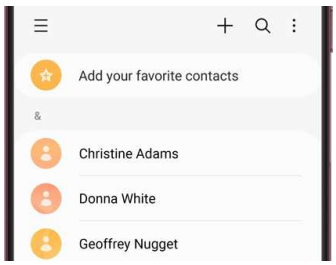
   Note: You can also use a QR app to scan the code.

   If you're having trouble syncing your contacts, you can review our syncing guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001453/") for assistance. You can also use Smart Switch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062998/") to transfer all of your contacts from another device.

Set your favorite contacts

If you're always calling or texting someone, like your best friend, you can set them as a favorite contact.

1. Navigate to Contacts, and then tap Add your favorite contacts at the top.



2. You can search for a contact's name or swipe through the list to find someone. Select your desired contact(s), and then tap Done.
3. Your selected contact(s) will then appear at the top, under Favorites. However, they will still appear in your general contacts list below.

   Note: To add additional favorite contacts, select a contact, and then tap Favorites (the star icon) at the bottom. The icon will turn yellow.

4. You can also reorder your favorite contacts. From the Contacts screen, tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Reorder Favorites, and then use the arrows to drag and drop your contacts into your desired position. You must have at least two favorite contacts to reorder them.

5. If you need to remove a contact from your favorites, just select the desired contact, and then tap Favorites. The icon will turn white.

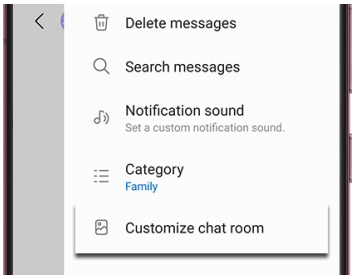
Messages

Message customization

When it comes to giving your device some style, Samsung has you covered. To customize the way your Messages app appears, try changing the theme ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078997/") on your device.

If you want to change your font for Messages, adjust your font settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078941/") .

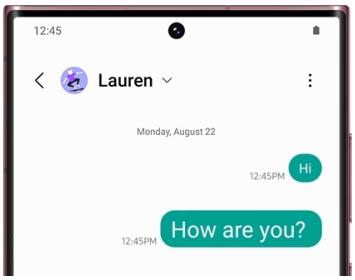
You can also set a custom wallpaper or background color for individual message threads. From the conversation you'd like to customize, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Customize wallpaper or Customize chat room. Tap the Gallery icon to choose an image, or you can tap a color to just change the background color. On some devices, you can also change the bubble opacity and the text contrast.



Change the font size

You want to catch every word in your messages, but the font's a little small. Adjust the font size for individual messages without affecting the general font size setting for your device.

Open a message that you'd like to view from the Messages app, and then use two fingers to pinch in and out on the screen. The font will automatically become larger or smaller. Any changes you make will only affect texts displayed in the Messages app, and the last size you selected will be saved until you change it again.



Create and schedule a message

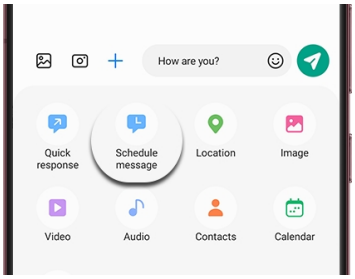
Messages has everything you need to craft that perfect greeting, including options to schedule a message in advance.

1. Open Messages on your device, and then tap Compose in the lower right-hand corner.

2. Select the desired recipient(s), and then tap Enter message. Write your text, and then tap Send.

3. To schedule a message, write the text, and then tap Add (the plus sign). If you don't see the plus sign, tap the arrow on the left side.

4. Then, tap Schedule message. Set the date and time you want your text message delivered. It can be up to a year from the current date.

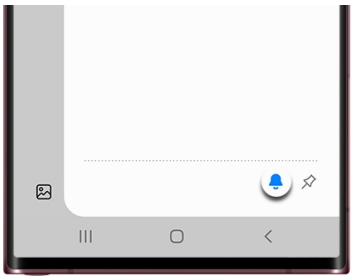


Note: If you exit a message before you send it, the message will be automatically saved as a draft.

Mute or unmute a conversation

By default, you are alerted when you receive a message from a contact. But you can mute any conversation, especially if you're in a meeting and don't want to be disturbed.

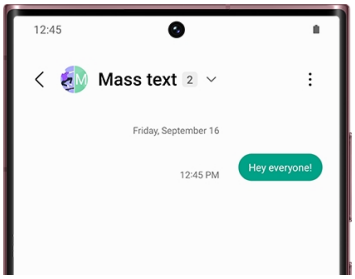
From the Messages app, select a conversation, and tap More options (the three vertical dots). Depending on your carrier, the mute option layout may differ; you might have to tap Mute Conversation or the Bell icon. To unmute, tap Unmute Conversation or the Bell icon again.



Note: The Bell icon will appear blue when the conversation is unmuted and clear when the conversation is muted. You can still view messages when a conversation is muted; you just won't get notifications when texts arrive.

Use group messages

You can create group messages ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00090223/") in the Samsung Messages app if you'd like to chat with several people. Images and videos can be sent in group messages as well, which makes it easier to share information with friends and family at the same time.



Messages app settings to know

Here are some useful tools and settings for the Messages app that you might not have known about. Use them to get the most out of your texts and messages.

- Search: Use the Search icon to find a message thread you are looking for.

- Delete: Touch and hold a message you want to delete, and then select the message(s) you want to remove. Tap Delete located at the bottom, and then tap Delete to confirm.
- Star Messages: Tap and hold a chat bubble that you want to star or favorite, and then tap Star message. To view the starred messages, go the Conversations tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Starred messages.
- Block messages: You can block and delete unwanted messages. When you get a sketchy text, select Block number at the top of the conversation. To view blocked numbers and messages, or to block a number, go to the Conversations tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings. Tap Block numbers and spam.
- Pin a conversation: From a conversation, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap the pin icon at the bottom of the menu. This conversation will now appear above all other unpinned messages.
- Update the app: From the Conversations tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), tap Settings, and then tap About Messages. If an update is available, tap Update.

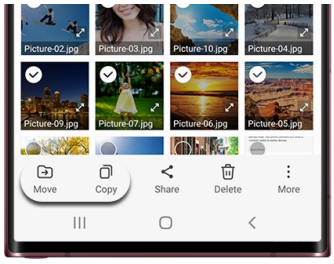
My Files

Use My Files on your device

The My Files app stores every file you have on your phone or tablet. It's like the File Explorer on a PC or Finder on Mac, where you can easily view and move photos, videos, music, documents, and more. You can also remove files from the My Files app if you no longer need them. The Trash feature in My Files should be on by default, but you should make sure it's turned on just in case.

Note: Tablets do not have the Trash feature in My Files, so files can't be restored once they are deleted.

1. Navigate to and open the My Files app. It's usually in the Samsung folder.
2. Select your desired file category, such as Images, Videos, Audio files, Documents, Downloads, Installation files, Compressed, and Favorites.
3. If needed, select any additional folders that contain your desired files (i.e. Screenshots, etc.). Touch and hold the file(s) or folder(s) you want to move.
4. Tap Copy to create a copy of the files in a different storage area. Or, tap Move to completely remove the file and move it to a new location.



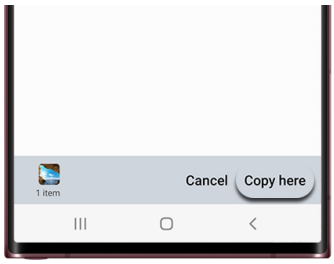
5. Next, navigate to and select your desired destination:
    - Internal storage: Move the file(s) or folder(s) to a different location within the same internal storage.
    - SD card: If you have a microSD card inserted, tap SD card, and then select the destination location. Please be aware that apps cannot be moved to the SD card using My Files. You will need to use another method ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") .
    - Google Drive: If prompted, sign into your Google account to access your Google Drive. You can

transfer files to and from the cloud.

- OneDrive: Log into your Microsoft account and grant permissions for MyFiles to access the OneDrive cloud.
- Network storage: Tap +Add network storage to add and use a server or other network storage location.

6. Once you've found where you want to put the file, tap Move here or tap Copy here.

   Note: You can also create a new folder for your file. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Create folder, and then enter a name for the folder. Tap Create, and then tap that folder if you wish to move your file to it.



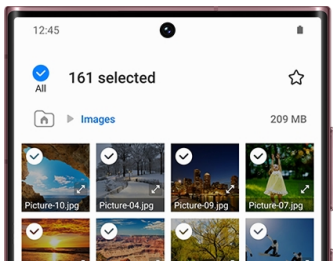
7. To remove a file, navigate back to My Files, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap Settings, and then make sure the switch next to Trash is turned on.
8. Tap Back, and then select your desired file category. If needed, select any additional folders that contain your desired files (i.e. Screenshots, etc.).
9. Touch and hold the file(s) or folder(s) you want to delete.
10. Tap Delete, and then tap Move to Trash to confirm. The file will stay in the Trash for 30 days before being permanently deleted.

Use a microSD card or OTG flash drive

Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards or external storage options that use excessive amounts of power to operate. Encrypted music or other purchases cannot be moved to external storage.

If you're looking to transfer all of your files, you can use a convenient microSD card or flash drive. You can also use the options in Device care to help clear space.

1. First, insert your microSD card or USB OTG flash drive. Navigate to the Samsung folder, and then open My Files.
2. Find the file you want to move, and then touch and hold the file.
3. To move additional files in the same folder, you will need to select All at the top of the screen. Or, you can select multiple files individually.



4. Next, tap Move or Copy at the bottom of the screen, and then navigate back to the My Files home page.
5. Tap SD card or USB Storage - this will only show up if you have a flash device inserted. Then, tap Move

here.

Please note you can only move or copy files this way in the My Files app. You cannot move or copy files to other apps, such as Gallery.

MicroSD cards are not limited only to files. You can even move certain apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") to the SD card!

Internet

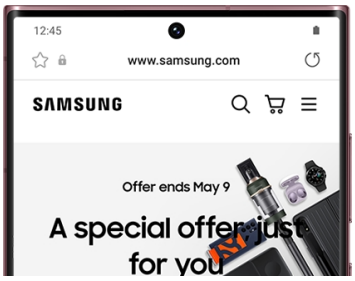
Basic navigation

You can use the two toolbar options at the top and bottom of the page to navigate the app and websites. If the toolbar does not appear, just tap an empty space or swipe up on the screen.

The top toolbar

The following options are available on the top toolbar:

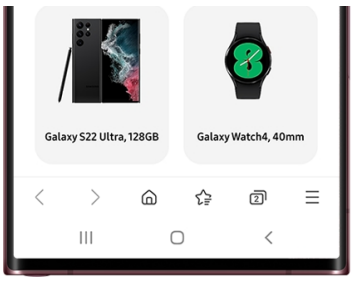
- Bookmark: Add the current web page to your saved bookmarks.
- Address bar: Show the current web page. Tap the bar to search for a different website.
- Reload: Reload the current page.



The bottom toolbar

The following options are available on the bottom toolbar:

- Back: Will take you back to the last page you visited.
- Forward: After using the Back icon, this will take you to the page you were on previously.
- Home: Navigate to your home page.
- Bookmark list: View a list of all the pages that you've bookmarked.
- Tabs: View all the tabs that are open.
- Menu: Use additional options and settings.

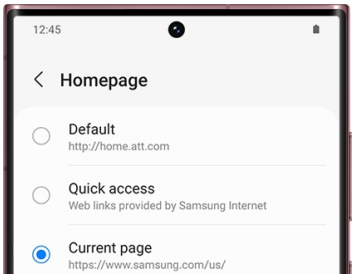


Change your home page

Your home page is the website that loads when you first open Samsung Internet or when you open a new tab. You can set your preferred home page to any website you like.

Navigate to and open the Samsung Internet app, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines). Tap Settings, and then tap Homepage. You can use the following options:

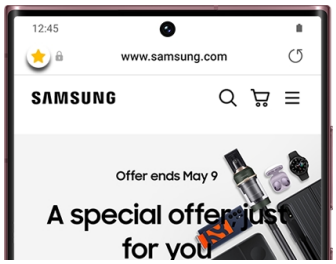
- Default: This will set the home page to Google.
- Quick access: You can use the app's suggested links by selecting Most visited pages, News feed, or None.
- Current page: Set the page you are on as your home page.
- Custom page: You can input your desired web address to use as your home page.



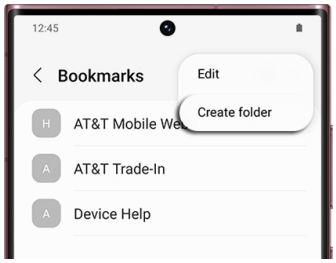
Use bookmarks

Saving a web page to your bookmarks will let you find and open it later. You can also organize your bookmarks if you have a lot of them.

1. Navigate to and open the Samsung Internet app, and then open a web page that you'd like to save to your bookmarks.
2. Tap the bookmark icon (the star in the top right), and then tap the bookmark list icon (the star in the bottom toolbar). You will see all of your bookmarks.



3. To rename a bookmark, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Edit.
4. Select your desired bookmark, tap Edit at the bottom, and then enter a new name for the bookmark. You can also edit the web address. Tap Save to confirm.
5. To create a folder for your bookmarks, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Create folder.

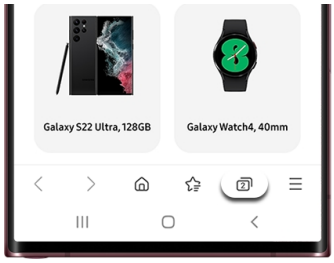


6. Enter a name for the folder, and then tap Create.
7. Next, tap More options (the three vertical dots) again, and then tap Edit.
8. Select the bookmark(s) you'd like to add to the new folder. You can also select All at the top. Tap Move, and then tap the new folder. Tap Select to move the bookmarks into the folder.

Manage your tabs

Tabs allow you to have multiple web pages open at once. This makes it easy to keep track of your favorite or most visited websites.

1. Navigate to and open the Samsung Internet app, and then tap the tabs icon in the bottom toolbar (it looks like a box with a number).
2. Tap New tab to select a new page you'd like to open; the page will open automatically.
3. To view all of your currently opened tabs, tap the tabs icon again.

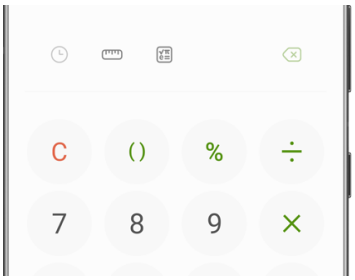


4. To close a tab, tap the close icon (the x) in the top right corner of the tab. If you need to close all of your tabs, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Close all tabs.
5. To reopen a tab you just closed, tap More options (the three vertical dots) again, then tap Reopen closed tab, and then select the tab.
6. To change how the tabs are displayed, reopen all of your tabs, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap View as, and then choose either List, Stack, or Grid. Tap OK to confirm.

Calculator

The Calculator app features both basic and scientific math functions, as well as a unit converter. You can use the Calculator app the same way you'd use a physical calculator. To access the Calculator, swipe up on a Home screen to open the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap Calculator. Along with its basic functions, you can also use the following options:

- History: Tap the History icon (it looks like a clock) to view past calculations you've made.
- Unit converter: Tap the Unit converter icon (it looks like a ruler) to convert different measurements.
- Scientific mode: Tap the Scientific mode icon (it looks like a box with numeric symbols) to display additional function keys.



If you have uninstalled the Samsung Calculator, you can reinstall it from the Galaxy Store ("https://apps.samsung.com/appquery/appDetail.as?appId=com.sec.android.app.popupcalculator&cId=000006170083") . If you need quick access to Calculator, you can add it to your Home screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077916/") .

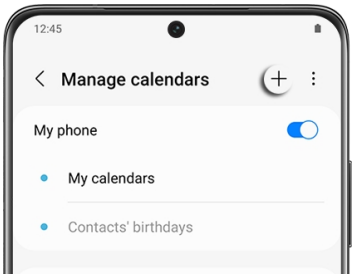
Calendar

The Calendar app can be connected to your various online accounts (like Google or Outlook) to consolidate all your calendars in one place. To find the Calendar app, swipe up on a Home screen to access the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap Calendar.

Add calendars to sync

1. Open the Calendar app, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap Manage calendars.
3. Tap Add (the plus sign), and then select your desired type of account.
4. Enter your account information and follow the prompts.

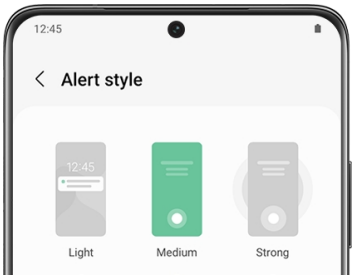
   Note: Accounts may also support email, contacts, and other features.
5. Once the account has been added, you can see it in the menu. Tap the account to see the types of calendars you can display. Some accounts, like a Google account, can display your contact's birthdays, or U.S. holidays.



Calendar alert style

When a Calendar event is happening soon, the app will send an alert on your phone. Alerts can be set to different styles to suit your needs.

1. Open the Calendar app, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap the Settings icon.
3. Swipe to and tap Alert style to select from the following options:



- Light: Receive a notification and hear a short sound.
- Medium: Get a full screen alert and hear a short sound.
- Strong: Get a full screen alert and ring sound that persists until dismissed.

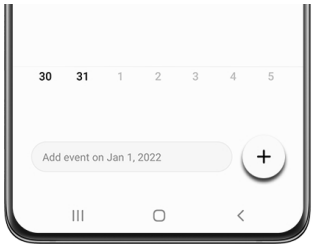
Depending on the alert style selected above, the following sound options will be available:

- Short sound: Choose the alert sound for Light or Medium alert styles.
- Long sound: Choose the alert sound for the Strong alert style.

  Create or delete an event

  Your Calendar can be used to create events. If needed, you can delete the events later on.

  1. Open the Calendar app, and then tap Add event (the plus sign) to create an event.
  2. Enter details for the event, and then tap Save.
  3. To remove the event, navigate back to the Calendar app and then tap the desired event.
  4. Tap the event again in the pop-up window, tap Delete, and then tap Move to move it to the Trash.



If you have uninstalled the Samsung Calendar, you can reinstall it from the Galaxy Store ("https://apps.samsung.com/appquery/appDetail.as?appId=com.samsung.android.calendar&cId=000005979539") . If you need quick access to Calendar, you can add it to your Home screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077916/") .

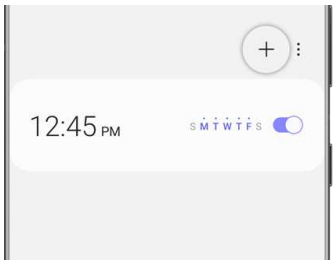
Clock

The Clock app offers features for keeping track of time and setting alarms. To find the Clock app, swipe up on a Home screen to access the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap Clock.

Add or delete an alarm

Use the Alarm tab to set one-time or recurring alarms and choose options for how to be notified. You can also delete alarms.

1. From the Clock app, tap the Alarm tab, and then tap Add alarm (the plus sign).

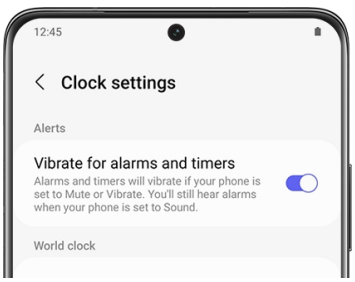


2. Tap the following items to customize an alarm:
    - Time: Set a time for the alarm.
    - Day: Choose the days for this alarm.
    - Alarm name: Enter a name for the alarm.
    - Alarm sound: Choose a sound to play for the alarm and drag the slider to set the volume of the alarm.
    - Vibration: Choose whether the alarm uses vibration alert.
    - Snooze: Allow snoozing. Set interval and repeat values for the alarm while snoozing.
3. Tap Save to save the alarm. The alarm will go off at the designated time you chose.
4. To delete an alarm, touch and hold your desired alarm, and then tap Delete. You can also tap All and then tap Delete all if you wish to remove every alarm you've set.

Alert settings

You can set the device to vibrate for alarms and timers whether the Sound mode is set to Mute or Vibrate.

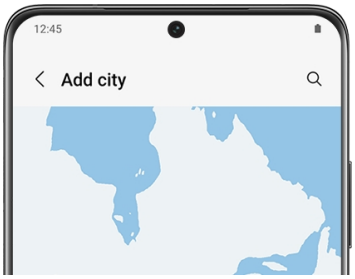
1. Open the Clock app, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
2. Tap Vibrate for alarms and timers to enable the feature.



World clock

The World clock lets you keep track of the current time in multiple cities around the globe.

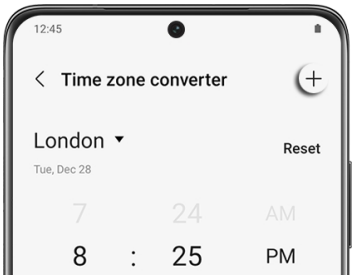
1. Open the Clock app, tap World clock, and then tap Add city (the plus sign).
2. Touch and hold the globe to spin it, and then tap the city you want. Or, you can use the Search function to locate a specific city.
3. When you find your desired city, tap Add.
4. To remove a city, touch and hold it, and tap Delete.



Time zone converter

Set a time in a city on your World clock list to see what the local times would be in the other listed cities.

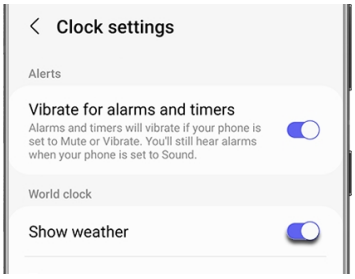
1. From the Clock app, tap the World clock tab.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Time zone converter.
3. Tap the drop-down menu to choose a different city. Or, to register a new city to the list, tap Add city (the plus sign).
4. Swipe the hours, minutes, and period (AM or PM) on the clock to set a time. Local times for the other cities listed are automatically updated.
5. To return the clock to the current time, tap Reset.



Weather settings

Show weather information on your World clock.

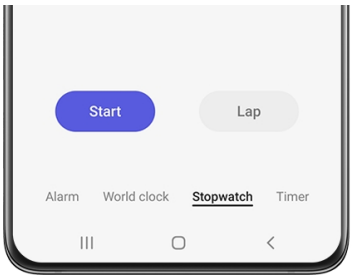
1. From the Clock app, tap the World clock tab.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings. Tap the switch next to Show weather to enable or disable weather information.
3. Tap Temperature to change the temperature from Fahrenheit to Celsius.



Stopwatch

The Stopwatch lets you time events down to a hundredth of a second.

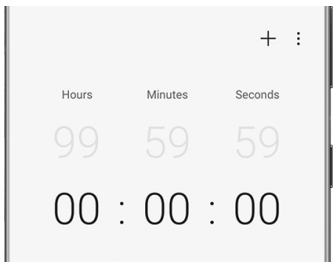
1. From the Clock app, tap the Stopwatch tab.
2. Tap Start to begin timing.
3. To keep track of lap times, tap Lap.
4. Tap Stop to pause timing.
5. To continue timing after pausing the clock, tap Resume.
6. To reset the Stopwatch to zero, tap Reset.



Timer

The countdown timer can be set to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds.

1. Open the Clock app, and then tap the Timer tab.
2. Use the keypad to select the hours, minutes, and seconds to set the timer.



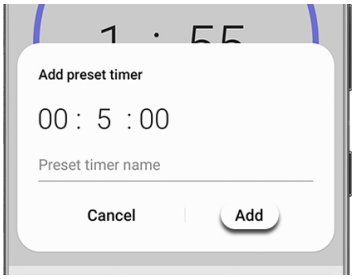
3. Tap Start to begin the timer.
4. To temporarily stop the timer, tap Pause. To continue, tap Resume.
5. To stop and reset the timer, tap Cancel.

Preset timer

You can also name and save preset timers.

1. Open the Clock app, tap the Timer tab, and then tap Add preset timer (the plus sign).

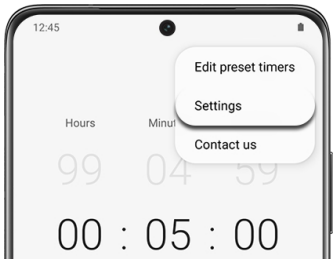
2. Configure the countdown time and timer name.
3. Tap Add to save the timer.
4. To use a preset timer you created, simply tap its name while in the the Timer tab, and then tap Start.
5. To edit a saved preset timer, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Edit preset timers.



Timer options and general settings

You can customize the Timer and Clock settings to suit your preference.

1. Open the Clock app, and then tap the Timer tab.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.



You can select from the following options under Timer:

- Sound: Choose a preloaded timer sound or add your own.
- Vibration: Enable or disable vibration for the timer.
- Show mini timer: A small timer will appear on your Home screen. You can pause or stop the mini timer as well.

3. You can select from the following options under General:

- Customization Service: Sign in to your Samsung account to customize personal content in supported apps.
- About Clock: View the current software version and check for updates.

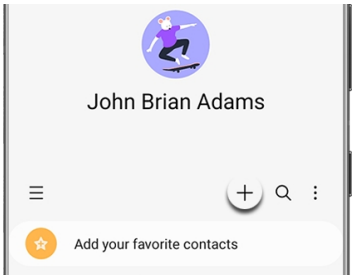
If you have uninstalled the Samsung Clock, you can reinstall it from the Galaxy Store ("https://apps.samsung.com/appquery/appDetail.as?appId=com.sec.android.app.clockpackage&cId=000006271579") . If you need quick access to Clock, you can add it to your Home screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077916/") .

Contacts

Add a new contact

If you meet someone new and get their contact information, it's easy to add them to your phone or tablet.

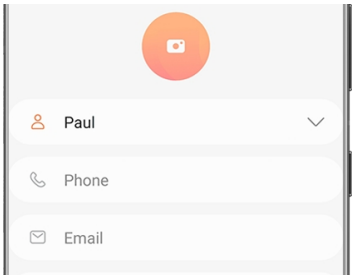
1. Open the Contacts app, and then tap Add (the plus sign).
2. Tap the drop-down menu in the upper right corner to choose where you want to save the contact, such as Phone or Google.
3. Next, fill out their contact information and personal details. You can add multiple numbers and addresses in the Phone and Email fields by tapping + Add.
4. When you're done, tap Save to add them as a Contact.



Edit a contact

Did your friend just get a new job and a new work number? Just follow these steps to edit their contact information.

1. Open the Contacts app, and then tap the contact you want to adjust. Tap Edit. You can change your contact’s information by tapping the desired field.
2. To add additional numbers or email addresses, tap on your desired field and then tap + Add.
3. To delete something, tap Remove (the minus icon) next to it.
4. Tap View more to edit additional options like address, notes, relationship, etc.
5. When you’re done editing, tap Save.



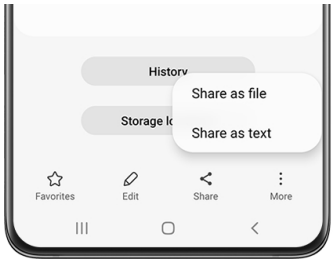
Share contacts

You can import and export your contacts right from the Contacts app! Your contacts will also sync between your devices if they are signed into the same Samsung Account.

1. Open the Contacts app, and then tap a contact you want to share. Tap Share at the bottom.

2. Select how you'd like to share the contact. You can choose from Share as file or Share as text.

   Note: On some devices, these options may be worded differently.



3. Next, choose your preferred sharing method, such as Quick Share or email, and then follow the necessary prompts. Depending on your sharing method, you may need to select Import on the other device.

4. To share multiple contacts, navigate to the Contacts screen, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap Share contacts.

5. Select your desired contacts, or tap All at the top. Then, tap Share at the bottom. Follow the prompts on the other device to import the contacts.

6. You can also share a contact with another device using a QR code. Tap a contact, then tap More (the three vertical dots) at the bottom, and then tap QR code.

7. Then, using the other device, open the Contacts app. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Scan QR code. Position the device to scan the code.

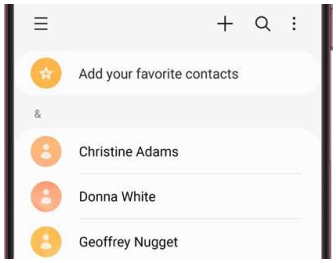
   Note: You can also use a QR app to scan the code.

   If you're having trouble syncing your contacts, you can review our syncing guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001453/") for assistance. You can also use Smart Switch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062998/") to transfer all of your contacts from another device.

Set your favorite contacts

If you're always calling or texting someone, like your best friend, you can set them as a favorite contact.

1. Navigate to Contacts, and then tap Add your favorite contacts at the top.



2. You can search for a contact's name or swipe through the list to find someone. Select your desired contact(s), and then tap Done.

3. Your selected contact(s) will then appear at the top, under Favorites. However, they will still appear in your general contacts list below.

   Note: To add additional favorite contacts, select a contact, and then tap Favorites (the star icon) at the bottom. The icon will turn yellow.

4. You can also reorder your favorite contacts. From the Contacts screen, tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Reorder Favorites, and then use the arrows to drag and drop your contacts into your desired position. You must have at least two favorite contacts to reorder them.

5. If you need to remove a contact from your favorites, just select the desired contact, and then tap Favorites. The icon will turn white.

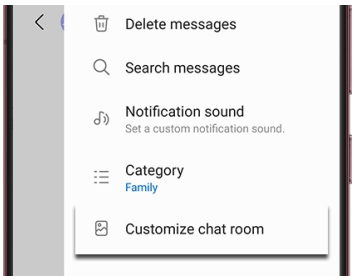
Messages

Message customization

When it comes to giving your device some style, Samsung has you covered. To customize the way your Messages app appears, try changing the theme ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078997/") on your device.

If you want to change your font for Messages, adjust your font settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078941/") .

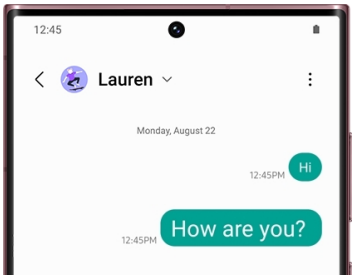
You can also set a custom wallpaper or background color for individual message threads. From the conversation you'd like to customize, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Customize wallpaper or Customize chat room. Tap the Gallery icon to choose an image, or you can tap a color to just change the background color. On some devices, you can also change the bubble opacity and the text contrast.



Change the font size

You want to catch every word in your messages, but the font's a little small. Adjust the font size for individual messages without affecting the general font size setting for your device.

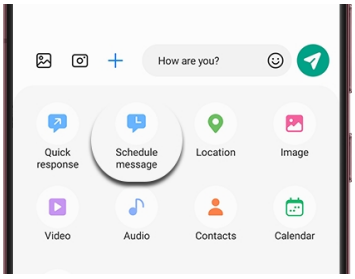
Open a message that you'd like to view from the Messages app, and then use two fingers to pinch in and out on the screen. The font will automatically become larger or smaller. Any changes you make will only affect texts displayed in the Messages app, and the last size you selected will be saved until you change it again.



Create and schedule a message

Messages has everything you need to craft that perfect greeting, including options to schedule a message in advance.

1. Open Messages on your device, and then tap Compose in the lower right-hand corner.
2. Select the desired recipient(s), and then tap Enter message. Write your text, and then tap Send.
3. To schedule a message, write the text, and then tap Add (the plus sign). If you don't see the plus sign, tap the arrow on the left side.
4. Then, tap Schedule message. Set the date and time you want your text message delivered. It can be up to a year from the current date.

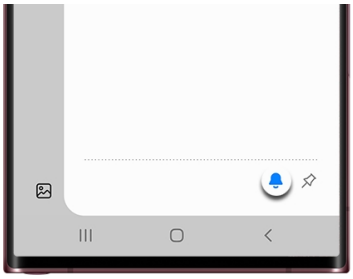


Note: If you exit a message before you send it, the message will be automatically saved as a draft.

Mute or unmute a conversation

By default, you are alerted when you receive a message from a contact. But you can mute any conversation, especially if you're in a meeting and don't want to be disturbed.

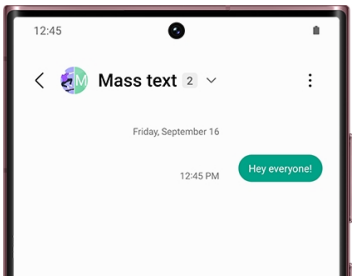
From the Messages app, select a conversation, and tap More options (the three vertical dots). Depending on your carrier, the mute option layout may differ; you might have to tap Mute Conversation or the Bell icon. To unmute, tap Unmute Conversation or the Bell icon again.



Note: The Bell icon will appear blue when the conversation is unmuted and clear when the conversation is muted. You can still view messages when a conversation is muted; you just won't get notifications when texts arrive.

Use group messages

You can create group messages ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00090223/") in the Samsung Messages app if you'd like to chat with several people. Images and videos can be sent in group messages as well, which makes it easier to share information with friends and family at the same time.



Messages app settings to know

Here are some useful tools and settings for the Messages app that you might not have known about. Use them to get the most out of your texts and messages.

- Search: Use the Search icon to find a message thread you are looking for.
- Delete: Touch and hold a message you want to delete, and then select the message(s) you want to remove. Tap Delete located at the bottom, and then tap Delete to confirm.
- Star Messages: Tap and hold a chat bubble that you want to star or favorite, and then tap Star message. To view the starred messages, go the Conversations tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Starred messages.

- Block messages: You can block and delete unwanted messages. When you get a sketchy text, select Block number at the top of the conversation. To view blocked numbers and messages, or to block a number, go to the Conversations tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings. Tap Block numbers and spam.
- Pin a conversation: From a conversation, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap the pin icon at the bottom of the menu. This conversation will now appear above all other unpinned messages.
- Update the app: From the Conversations tab, tap More options (the three vertical dots), tap Settings, and then tap About Messages. If an update is available, tap Update.

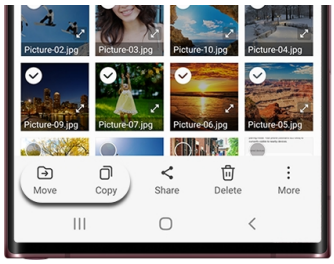
My Files

Use My Files on your device

The My Files app stores every file you have on your phone or tablet. It's like the File Explorer on a PC or Finder on Mac, where you can easily view and move photos, videos, music, documents, and more. You can also remove files from the My Files app if you no longer need them. The Trash feature in My Files should be on by default, but you should make sure it's turned on just in case.

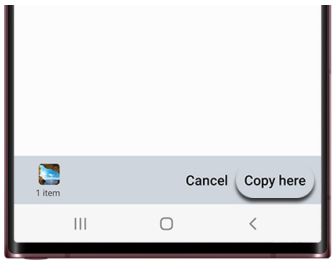
Note: Tablets do not have the Trash feature in My Files, so files can't be restored once they are deleted.

1. Navigate to and open the My Files app. It's usually in the Samsung folder.
2. Select your desired file category, such as Images, Videos, Audio files, Documents, Downloads, Installation files, Compressed, and Favorites.
3. If needed, select any additional folders that contain your desired files (i.e. Screenshots, etc.). Touch and hold the file(s) or folder(s) you want to move.
4. Tap Copy to create a copy of the files in a different storage area. Or, tap Move to completely remove the file and move it to a new location.



5. Next, navigate to and select your desired destination:
    - Internal storage: Move the file(s) or folder(s) to a different location within the same internal storage.
    - SD card: If you have a microSD card inserted, tap SD card, and then select the destination location. Please be aware that apps cannot be moved to the SD card using My Files. You will need to use another method ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") .
    - Google Drive: If prompted, sign into your Google account to access your Google Drive. You can transfer files to and from the cloud.
    - OneDrive: Log into your Microsoft account and grant permissions for MyFiles to access the OneDrive cloud.
    - Network storage: Tap +Add network storage to add and use a server or other network storage location.
6. Once you've found where you want to put the file, tap Move here or tap Copy here.

    Note: You can also create a new folder for your file. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), then tap Create folder, and then enter a name for the folder. Tap Create, and then tap that folder if you wish to move your file to it.



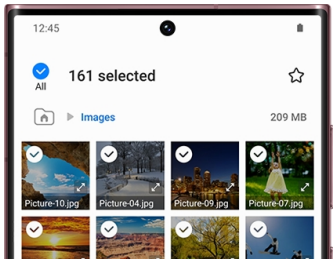
7. To remove a file, navigate back to My Files, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap Settings, and then make sure the switch next to Trash is turned on.
8. Tap Back, and then select your desired file category. If needed, select any additional folders that contain your desired files (i.e. Screenshots, etc.).
9. Touch and hold the file(s) or folder(s) you want to delete.
10. Tap Delete, and then tap Move to Trash to confirm. The file will stay in the Trash for 30 days before being permanently deleted.

Use a microSD card or OTG flash drive

Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards or external storage options that use excessive amounts of power to operate. Encrypted music or other purchases cannot be moved to external storage.

If you're looking to transfer all of your files, you can use a convenient microSD card or flash drive. You can also use the options in Device care to help clear space.

1. First, insert your microSD card or USB OTG flash drive. Navigate to the Samsung folder, and then open My Files.
2. Find the file you want to move, and then touch and hold the file.
3. To move additional files in the same folder, you will need to select All at the top of the screen. Or, you can select multiple files individually.



4. Next, tap Move or Copy at the bottom of the screen, and then navigate back to the My Files home page.
5. Tap SD card or USB Storage - this will only show up if you have a flash device inserted. Then, tap Move here.

   Please note you can only move or copy files this way in the My Files app. You cannot move or copy files to other apps, such as Gallery.

   MicroSD cards are not limited only to files. You can even move certain apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") to the SD card!

Internet

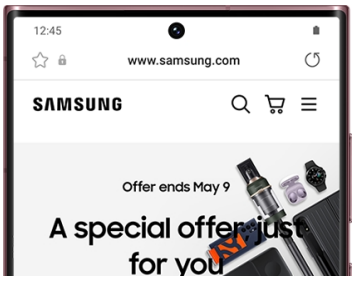
Basic navigation

You can use the two toolbar options at the top and bottom of the page to navigate the app and websites. If the toolbar does not appear, just tap an empty space or swipe up on the screen.

The top toolbar

The following options are available on the top toolbar:

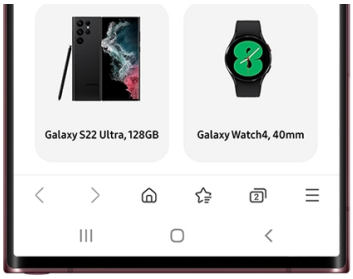
- Bookmark: Add the current web page to your saved bookmarks.
- Address bar: Show the current web page. Tap the bar to search for a different website.
- Reload: Reload the current page.



The bottom toolbar

The following options are available on the bottom toolbar:

- Back: Will take you back to the last page you visited.
- Forward: After using the Back icon, this will take you to the page you were on previously.
- Home: Navigate to your home page.
- Bookmark list: View a list of all the pages that you've bookmarked.
- Tabs: View all the tabs that are open.
- Menu: Use additional options and settings.



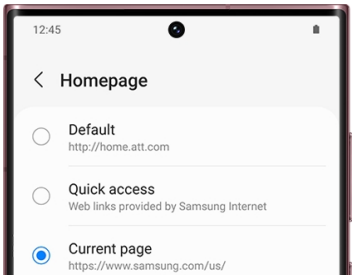
Change your home page

Your home page is the website that loads when you first open Samsung Internet or when you open a new tab. You can set your preferred home page to any website you like.

Navigate to and open the Samsung Internet app, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines). Tap Settings, and

then tap Homepage. You can use the following options:

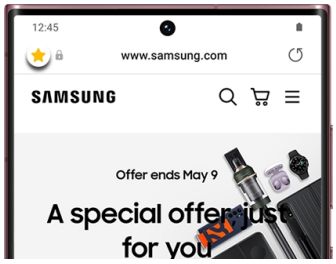
- Default: This will set the home page to Google.
- Quick access: You can use the app's suggested links by selecting Most visited pages, News feed, or None.
- Current page: Set the page you are on as your home page.
- Custom page: You can input your desired web address to use as your home page.



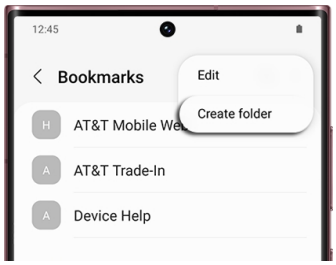
Use bookmarks

Saving a web page to your bookmarks will let you find and open it later. You can also organize your bookmarks if you have a lot of them.

1. Navigate to and open the Samsung Internet app, and then open a web page that you'd like to save to your bookmarks.
2. Tap the bookmark icon (the star in the top right), and then tap the bookmark list icon (the star in the bottom toolbar). You will see all of your bookmarks.



3. To rename a bookmark, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Edit.
4. Select your desired bookmark, tap Edit at the bottom, and then enter a new name for the bookmark. You can also edit the web address. Tap Save to confirm.
5. To create a folder for your bookmarks, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Create folder.

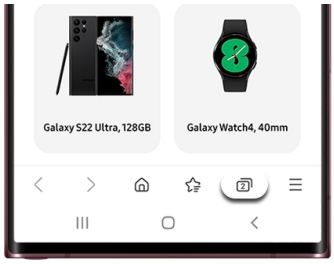


6. Enter a name for the folder, and then tap Create.
7. Next, tap More options (the three vertical dots) again, and then tap Edit.
8. Select the bookmark(s) you'd like to add to the new folder. You can also select All at the top. Tap Move, and then tap the new folder. Tap Select to move the bookmarks into the folder.

Manage your tabs

Tabs allow you to have multiple web pages open at once. This makes it easy to keep track of your favorite or most visited websites.

1. Navigate to and open the Samsung Internet app, and then tap the tabs icon in the bottom toolbar (it looks like a box with a number).
2. Tap New tab to select a new page you'd like to open; the page will open automatically.
3. To view all of your currently opened tabs, tap the tabs icon again.



4. To close a tab, tap the close icon (the x) in the top right corner of the tab. If you need to close all of your tabs, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Close all tabs.
5. To reopen a tab you just closed, tap More options (the three vertical dots) again, then tap Reopen closed tab, and then select the tab.
6. To change how the tabs are displayed, reopen all of your tabs, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Tap View as, and then choose either List, Stack, or Grid. Tap OK to confirm.

Samsung apps

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091463



Galaxy Store

Download apps

There are two app stores available on Galaxy phones or tablets: the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store?hl=en_US") and the Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/global/galaxy/apps/galaxy-store/") .

The Google Play Store can be found on the Apps screen or inside the Google folder. Meanwhile, the Galaxy Store can be found in the Samsung folder or on the Apps screen.

Pick an app store, and browse through the available apps by using the sort and search options. When you find the app you want to download, tap it, and then tap Install.



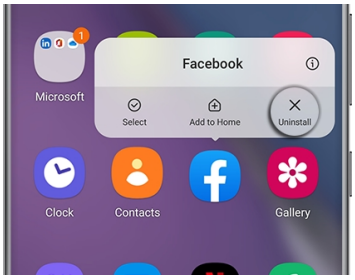
Note: Only apps that are compatible with your device are available for download.

Uninstall apps

If you don't need an app anymore, just get rid of it.

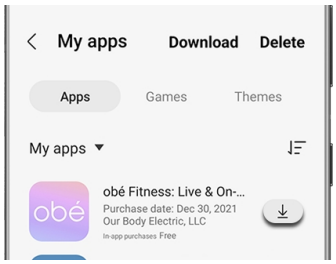
From the Home screen, swipe up or down to access your Apps screen. Touch and hold the app you want to uninstall, and then tap Uninstall.

Note: Some preloaded apps cannot be uninstalled.



Reinstall Galaxy Store apps

1. If you originally installed the app using the Galaxy Store, open the Galaxy Store, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap My apps; from the Apps tab, find the missing app and tap the Download icon.



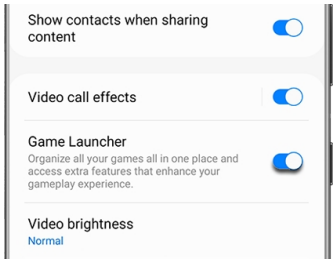
3. If you want to reinstall a purchased theme, tap the Themes tab at the top, and then tap the Download icon.

Note: Galaxy Themes is not available on Galaxy tablets, only phones.

Set up Game Launcher

Before you get too excited and rush into your game, let's set up the Game Launcher. It should be on by default, but you can always double-check just in case.

1. From Settings, tap Advanced features, and then tap the switch next to Game Launcher to turn it on if needed.



2. Next, open the Game Launcher app. It may be on the Apps screen or in the Samsung folder.
3. Review the information about usage data and then tap Allow.
4. If desired, you can check off "Show games in Game Launcher only" to hide your gaming apps in the App screen and make them only appear in Game Launcher. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap Settings. Tap Show games apps, and then tap choose your desired option.
5. Navigate back the main screen in Game Launcher. Tap one of your games to start playing, or explore Game Launcher to see the other options available.

   Note: If Game Launcher is not available in the Settings menu, you must install and launch a game first.

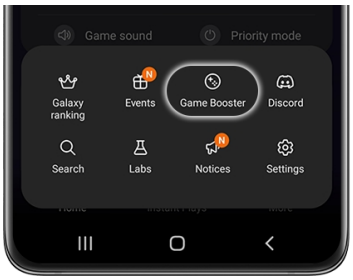
Tune your device's performance

Note: Battery power efficiency may vary by game.

With Game Launcher, you can tune the performance level of your games to save battery power. Maybe you're stuck on a long trip with no charger and need to save your battery. Fine tune your gaming performance with a few quick steps:

1. Open Game Launcher, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).

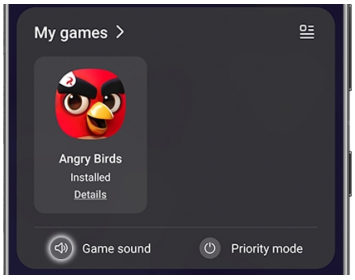
2. Tap Game Booster to access the Game Booster settings.
3. Then, tap Game optimization near the bottom of the screen.
4. From here, you can choose between your desired performance modes: Performance, Standard, or Battery saver.



Change sound settings

Maybe you don't like the music or sounds in that horror game. That's no problem with the Game sound feature. You can easily mute games from Game Launcher instead of fighting with your device's Volume keys.

Navigate to and open Game Launcher. Tap Game sound at the bottom of the My Games section to silence all of your gaming apps. To unmute, tap Game sound again.



Samsung AR Zone

Bixby vision opens up a world of Augmented Reality capabilities on your Galaxy phone. Did you ever wonder how you'd look with a rainbow colored beard? Would you like to have a cartoon version of yourself to send as a sticker in a message?

Just open the Camera app and tap MORE. Tap AR Zone to access all the fun and useful features of AR.



- AR Emoji Camera: Create your own AR Emoji, or use one of a number of fun characters and see it react to your motions and expressions. Capture a photo or video to share with friends.
- AR Doodle: Record fun videos with virtual handwriting or drawings on faces or anywhere else.
- AR Emoji Studio: Create a custom look for your AR Emoji.

- AR Emoji Stickers: Create animated stickers you can use in messages, featuring your own AR Emoji.
- Deco Pic: Fun filters and stickers for adding that extra punch to your photos and videos.
- Picture link: Lets you set an object as an AR marker that can play sounds, show pictures, and more when you point the camera at it.
- Quick Measure: Lets you measure objects and distances without having to find a tape measure.
- 3D Scanner: Only available on the Note10 and S20, the 3D Scanner lets you scan an object and then use the scanned object as a character in your videos.

  Note: Additional third-party apps may be available. Available apps may vary based on software version.

Bixby

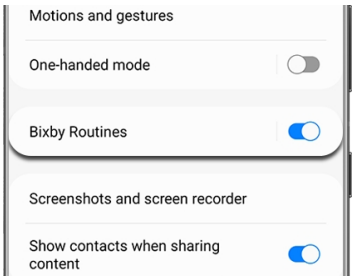
Your very own virtual assistant, Bixby ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/Bixby") is at your service. Whether Bixby's reminding you about an appointment or identifying landmarks, Bixby is always there to help with your everyday needs. Go on, say a command and start getting things done the easy way.

Set up and use Bixby Routines

Access Bixby Routines

There are two different ways to access Bixby Routines on your phone:

1. Navigate to and open Settings, then tap Advanced features, and then tap Bixby Routines.
2. Or, you can open the Quick settings panels by swiping down from the top of the screen using two fingers. Swipe left, and then touch and hold Bixby Routines.
3. To make accessing Bixby Routines easier, you can add an icon to your phone's App screen. While in Bixby Routines, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
4. Tap the switch next to "Show Bixby Routines on Apps screen."

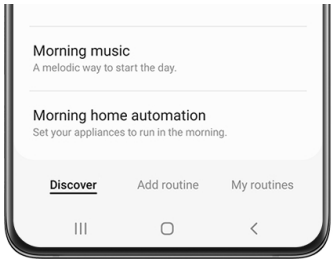


Note: If you do see the Bixby Routines icon in the Quick settings panel, you can easily add it to the panel ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") .

Add common routines

From getting out the door in the morning to getting ready for bed, there's a Bixby Routine for every part of your day. You can activate recommended routines or make your own:

1. Navigate to and open Bixby Routines on your phone, and then tap the Discover tab. You'll see all kinds of routines, from Good morning to Workout.

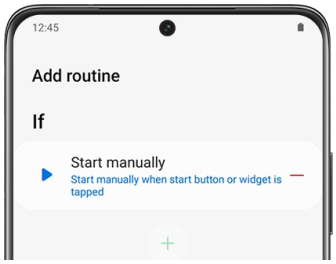


2. Tap a routine to customize it – you can change the conditions and some other basic settings.
3. Tap Edit to customize additional settings to your liking, such as adding more actions.
4. When you're finished, tap Next. You can set a name for your custom routine, as well as an icon and color that will be displayed in My routines. Then, tap Done.

Create a custom routine

Bixby routines are powerful tools that you can use to customize your experience in very specific ways. You can choose from a wide variety of triggers that can perform almost any task on your phone.

1. Navigate to and open Bixby Routines, and then tap the Add routine tab.
2. Tap the picture under If. Tap an item on the list of possible triggers. Each trigger will have additional options and instructions.

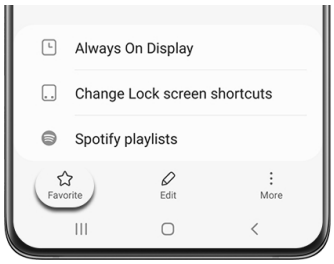


3. Once you've set up the trigger, tap the picture under Then. Tap a category for the action you'd like to perform, and then tap the action you'd like to perform. Many actions will have additional options and settings.
4. By default Bixby routines will stop the action when the trigger ends, and return any changed settings to their previous state. You can disable this by tapping Reverse these actions and then tapping the switch at the top of the screen.
5. When your trigger and action are set up, tap Next. You can set a name for your custom routine, as well as an icon and color that will be displayed in My routines. Then, tap Done.

Favorite routines

If you'd like to set a frequently used routine as a favorite, you can do so with the My routines tab. Your favorites will appear at the top of the screen in My routines, and all routines, including your favorites, will be below.

1. Navigate to and open Bixby Routines, an then tap the My routines tab.
2. Tap a routine and then tap the Favorite icon (the star) at the bottom.



3. Tap Back to see your routine listed under Favorites.
4. You can also check on your completed routines using the History option. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap History. You'll see the start and end times for your recent routines, as well as when they were used.

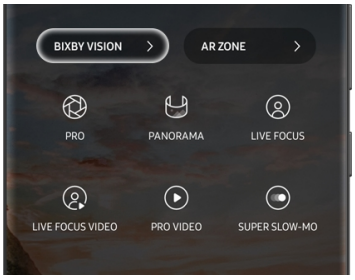
Use Bixby Vision

Access Bixby Vision

Note: When you launch Bixby Vision for the first time, you will be asked to review and accept Terms of Service, Samsung Privacy Policy, and allow permissions.

To help you discover more, Bixby Vision is built into your Camera, Gallery, and Samsung Internet.

- Camera: Bixby suggests information based on what's live in the viewfinder. From the Camera app, tap MORE and then tap BIXBY VISION to use it.
- Gallery: If you've already taken or downloaded a photo, Bixby can analyze what's inside it. From the Gallery app, tap your desired image, and then tap the Bixby Vision icon (it looks like an eye).



- Samsung Internet: Learn more about pictures by having Bixby analyze what you're looking at. From the Internet app, tap on and then hold the image you want to view with Bixby Vision, and then tap Search with Bixby Vision.

Use a lens in Bixby Vision

With Bixby, you can look at the world in a new way. The possibilities are endless.

Just open the Camera app, tap MORE, and then tap BIXBY VISION in the top left corner. If it's your first time using Bixby Vision, agree to the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy. Next, agree to the different permissions, and if desired, tap Add to add a shortcut to your phone's Home screen for easier access.

You can now use Bixby Vision inside your phone's Camera app. The search results will show up right away when Bixby scans an image. Simply scroll through the lenses and tap the one you want to use.



Here are the features available in Bixby Vision:

- Wine: See the bottle's rating or learn more about the vineyard it came from.
- Translate: Automatically translate text from another language in the live preview on your screen. You can tap the T icon at the bottom to see the extracted text. Then, select Translate, Copy, Select all, or Search. Please see the next section in this article for more details.
- Discover: Point the camera at something and see similar things on Pinterest.
- Text: Copy printed text into the clipboard. You can also quickly translate or perform a web search on text that Bixby identifies.

  Additional lenses are available to assist users with low vision. While using Bixby Vision, tap More options (the vertical three dots) and then tap Settings. Tap Accessibility modes and then tap the switch to turn it on. By default all the lenses will be enabled, but you can select which lenses will be available with the switches.
- Scene describer: Point the camera at a scene, then tap Capture. Bixby will speak a description of the scene that it sees.
- Object identifier: Point the camera at an object and Bixby will tell you what it sees.
- Text reader: Point the camera at some text to have it read aloud.
- Color detector: Point the camera at an object, and Bixby will tell you what color it is.

Note: Available lenses may vary depending on your Bixby Vision software version. The QR code lens can be accessed via the Quick settings panel: swipe down from the top of the screen using two fingers, and then swipe to and tap the Scan QR code icon.

Use Bixby Translate

Maybe you're learning a new language, or maybe you came across some text that you can't quite read. Just use the Bixby Translate feature to easily understand what you're looking at.

1. Open the Camera app, then tap MORE, and then tap BIXBY VISION.
2. Swipe to or tap the Translate icon at the bottom of the screen. It looks like the letter A with two arrowed boxes.
3. Next, tap Auto at the top of the screen. Tap the switch next to Auto detect language to allow Bixby Vision to automatically detect the source language. Or, deselect the switch and tap a language in the list.
4. Tap Back to return to Bixby Vision's main interface. Next, tap the target language (on the right side), and then tap your desired language. You can also select a language under Recently translated.
5. Now you're ready to translate; point the camera at the text and Bixby Vision will provide the translation. You can tap Copy all or Save image as well.

Galaxy Wearable

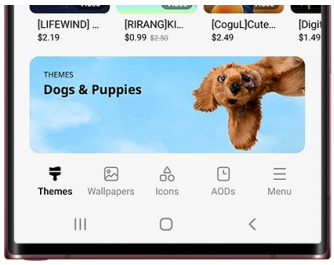
The Galaxy Wearable ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/galaxy-wearable-watch") app lets you connect your Galaxy watch or other wearables to your phone. Streaming music, receiving notifications, and downloading workout information are just a few of the benefits of connecting with Galaxy Wearable.

Customize Galaxy Themes

Download themes

Themes allow you to apply a design of your choice to your device, from wallpapers and icons to default applications such as Phone, Messages, and Calendar. You can express your personality through the various choices!

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. If it's your first time using Themes, read the information, and then tap Continue or Agree.
3. Swipe up to view the available themes and then select the one you want to download.



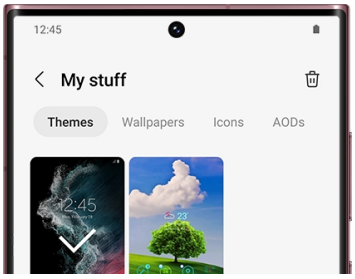
4. Tap Download if it's a free theme, or tap the price (e.g. $0.99) if it's a paid theme.
5. Choose between Select payment method or Use discounts. If needed, enter your payment information.
6. Tap Pay to confirm.

You can also tap Download trial for paid themes if you'd like to test it out first. You can only update a theme if the seller or creator of the theme has released an updated version.

Change your theme

You've had that theme for quite some time. If you want to change your theme and you already have another one downloaded or saved, all you need to do is apply it.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. To view all your themes, tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), then tap My stuff, and then tap Themes.
3. Select your desired theme, view the details, and then tap Apply.
4. If needed, tap Apply one more time to confirm.

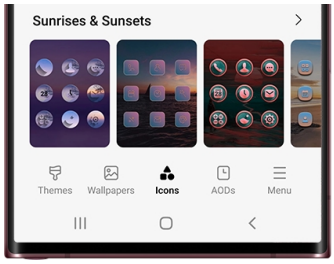


Note: Once you apply a theme, it cannot be undone. You will have to apply the default theme or another theme if you no longer want to use it.

Download icons

Want to show off your passion for your favorite hobby? Try customizing your device by downloading new icons.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Icons, swipe up to view the available icons, and then select the one you want to download.

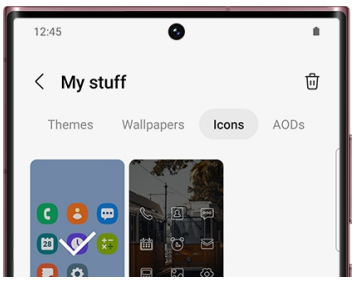


3. Tap Download if it's a free icon set, or tap the price (e.g. $0.99) if it's a paid icon set.
4. Choose between Select payment method or Use discounts. If it's your first time using Themes, read the information, and then tap Continue.
5. Tap Pay to confirm.

Change your icons

Maybe you're a little tired of those icons. If you want to change your icons and already have another set downloaded or saved, just follow these steps to apply it.

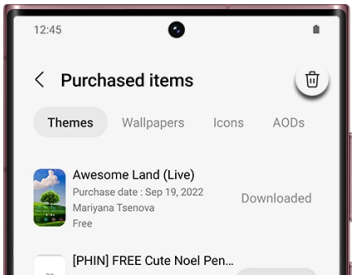
1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area. Tap Themes, and then tap Icons.
2. To view all of your icons, tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), then tap My stuff, and then tap Icons under My stuff.
3. Select your desired icons, and then tap Apply.
4. If needed, tap Apply one more time to confirm.



Delete themes

Oops, you downloaded the wrong theme by mistake. Just delete it; it's no trouble at all.

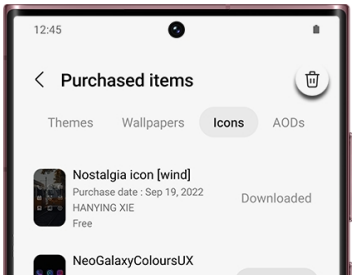
1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap Purchased items.
3. Tap Delete (the trash icon) in the upper right corner and select the theme or themes you'd like to remove.
4. Tap Delete at the bottom to confirm.



Delete icons

If you change your mind, you can delete icons any time you want.

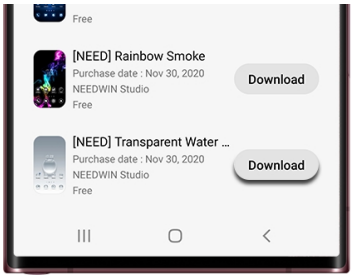
1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Themes, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
3. Tap Purchased items, and then tap Icons.
4. Tap Delete (the trash icon) in the upper right corner and select the icons you'd like to remove. Tap Delete at the bottom to confirm.



Recover purchased themes

No one wants to pay twice for the same thing. If you connect your device to a Samsung account, you can recover purchased items, even if you purchased them on another device.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap Purchased items.
3. Tap Download next to the theme you want to recover on your phone. You can repeat this process as many times as needed.



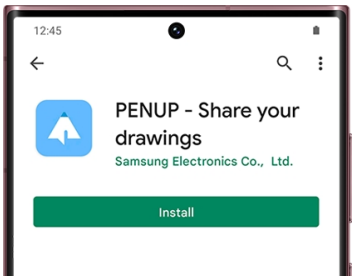
Note: You can recover purchased wallpapers or icons from the same page. Simply use the menu at the top of the screen.

Get started with PENUP

Get the PENUP app

If you don’t already have the PENUP app installed, you can download it from the Galaxy Store ("https://galaxystore.samsung.com/prepost/000002782851?langCd=en") or Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.sec.penup&hl=en_US&gl=US") . Please see the next section for setting up an account with PENUP.

When the app is ready, you can start using coloring tools ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080499/") ! Select from options like Water Color, Calligraphy Brush, Air Brush, and Marker Pen to create your own artwork.

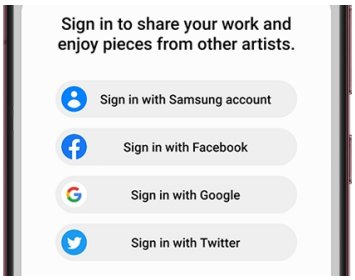


Create or sign into a PENUP account

Technically, you don’t need an account to use PENUP, but then you won’t get to use all of the awesome features. We highly recommend creating an account.

Navigate to and open PENUP. If it's your first time using it, agree to the different permissions. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Sign in. Choose the type of account you want to sign up with, such as your Samsung account.

If needed, enter that account’s login information, and allow the different permissions. Next, enter your desired username and select artists you are interested in. Then, tap Done at the top of the page.



To sign out of your account, tap More options, tap Sign out, and then tap OK.

Samsung Members

When you want instant access to specs, features, support information, and other helpful content, Samsung Members ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-members") is the app you need. In Samsung Members, you'll also find diagnostics along with engaging articles to help you make the most of your Samsung experience.

Secure Folder

Keep your personal information private with Secure Folder ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.knox.securefolder&hl=e n") . It creates a secure, encrypted space on your phone that no one can access without a special PIN. It's all thanks to the overlapping defense and security platform, Samsung Knox.

Samsung Health

If you’re training for a marathon or want to go for a casual run, you can keep track of it with Samsung Health ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-health") . It lets you track your daily activities, meals, and more. Measure your heart rate after a good workout, set goals for yourself, and even speak to a doctor with the virtual consultation feature.

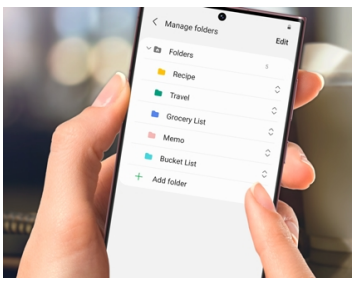
Use Samsung Notes features and settings

Samsung Notes features and settings

If you’ve taken tons of notes on your phone, Samsung Notes may become messy. Don't worry, it has features that will make organizing your notes much easier.

For example, you can place your notes into different categories for simpler navigation. Or, you can search for notes with specific titles or subjects instead of sifting through all of your notes.

Here are some of the most helpful features in Samsung Notes:



- Quick highlight: You can quickly highlight a section of text and select an action. With your S Pen, press and hold a word, and then drag your pen to highlight more text. A list of actions will appear: Cut, Copy, Paste, Dictionary, Show clipboard, and Share.

  Note: This feature is only available on the Note series.

- Zoom in and out: Simply pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

  Note: The amount of Zoom that is supported will vary by device.

- The search function: Use this feature to search for and find the exact note you need. Tap the Search icon, and then enter the words you want to search for.

- Organize your notes: You can use several different features to organize your notes. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Edit. Select your desired notes, and then choose your desired option. You can tap Move to place them in a different folder ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087286/") , tap Share to send them elsewhere, or tap Delete to remove them from your phone.

- Lock your notes: If you want to keep some notes private (like your poetry collection), you can lock them. Open your desired note, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap the Lock icon. Next, follow the on-screen prompts to create a password for your note.

  Note: If you want to change the password, navigate to Samsung Notes' settings, tap Note unlock methods, and then tap Change password. A Samsung account is required to lock notes.

- Sort your notes: You have so many notes, you don't know what's what. To help you figure it out, you can sort them. From the Samsung Notes home screen, tap the Filter icon, and then choose your desired option, such as Date created. You can also change the overall layout of your notes. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap View to change the layout of how the notes are displayed.

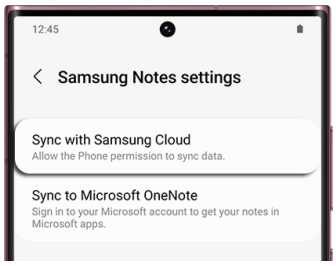
- Action icons: This feature creates icons in your handwritten notes. Just tap the different icons to make calls, send emails, solve equations, and go to websites straight from icons. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines) located at top left, tap the Settings icon, and then tap the switch next to Action icons.

Save your notes

Your notes will be automatically saved in Samsung Notes, but they can also be synchronized with your Samsung account. Or, back up your notes using the different file options available in Samsung Notes. You can also use Samsung Cloud ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060641/") to sync your notes across all of your other Galaxy devices.

1. Open the Samsung Notes app, then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap the Settings icon.

2. Tap Sync with Samsung account, and then allow the permissions.



3. Tap the switch at the top of the page to turn the feature on or off. You can also tap Sync Notes data to choose whether syncing happens through Wi-Fi only or Wi-Fi or mobile data.

4. If you want to save your note as a different type of file, you have plenty of choices. You can save it as a PDF, Microsoft Word file, a PowerPoint file, an image, or a text file. Select the note that you want to back up, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Next, tap Save as file, and then select your desired file

format.

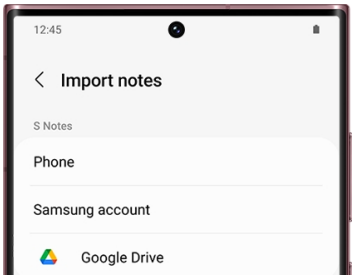
Now that your notes are synchronized with your Samsung account, you can also make them available in Microsoft Office by syncing Samsung Notes with Microsoft OneNote ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088543/") !

Import or export data in Samsung Notes

Maybe you have notes saved in Google Drive that aren't showing up in Samsung Notes. No worries, you can easily import them to your phone, so they show up in the app.

To import data to Samsung Notes, open the app, then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Import notes. Tap the source you want to import from (i.e. Samsung account), and then follow the on-screen prompts.

You can also import and export PDFs ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087285/") in Samsung Notes! You won't be able to edit the PDFs, but you can draw on them or annotate them in the app.

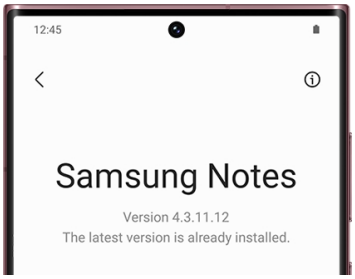


Update Samsung Notes

You should always make sure to keep Samsung Notes updated, in case any new note-taking features are added.

In the app, tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap the Settings icon. Tap About Samsung Notes, and then tap Update if one is available.

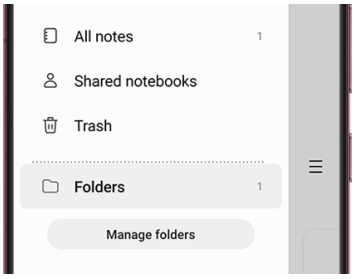
You can enable automatic updates ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080581/") from the Galaxy Store and Google Play Store to keep Samsung Notes always up-to-date.



Manage note styles, templates, and folders

You should keep your notes in Samsung Notes nice and tidy, so you'll always be able to locate what you need. The app comes with several different ways to organize and style ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087286/") your notes.

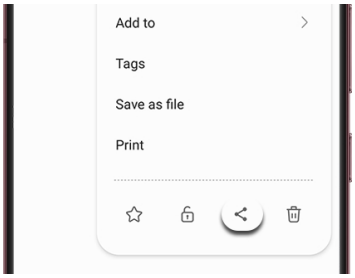
Place all your related notes in the same folder or give them the same template to keep them consistent.



Share your notes

Did you draw a cute picture or write down important meeting details in Samsung Notes? You can send it as different file types to yourself, a friend, or a coworker right from the app. For example, you can email the work notes as a Word doc or PDF!

1. Open the Samsung Notes app, then select your desired note, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots).
2. Tap the Share icon, and then choose your desired file type. You can choose between Samsung Notes file, PDF file, Microsoft Word file, Microsoft PowerPoint file, Image file, and Text file.
3. After you've selected the file type, select your preferred sharing method, such as text message, email, and so on. Next, send the file the way you normally would.



Note: Some files cannot be sent through certain sharing options. Make sure you've selected an appropriate sharing method for the file type.

Use handwriting functions

You can write in Samsung Notes using an S Pen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087583/") ! Just take out your S Pen on a compatible phone and begin creating a note in the app. Your handwriting can also be edited and converted to text. If the S Pen isn't your thing, you can still use the keyboard or even your finger to write notes.



Samsung Pass

Imagine not having to enter your password every time you need to log in. Samsung Pass ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-pass") uses biometric data like your fingerprint or iris to authenticate your identity. No more memorizing all those different IDs and passwords for each site.

Samsung Pay

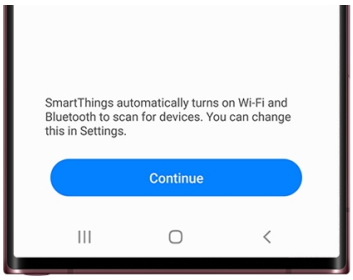
There's a reason Samsung Pay (**"https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-pay" style="font-weight: bold;"**) is the most accepted mobile payment. With it, you can enjoy a streamlined payment process, exclusive deals, and rewards. Samsung Pay also lets you conveniently keep all your cards (including gift and membership) in one place for easy access.

Set up the SmartThings app

If you haven't installed SmartThings yet, download it from the Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") first.

You will need to use your Samsung account to access SmartThings. If you don’t currently have an account, you can create one ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085942/") .

1. When you're ready, navigate to and open SmartThings on your phone.
2. If it's your first time using it, review the information, tap Continue, and then tap Continue again.
3. Next, allow the different permissions.
4. Now that SmartThings is set up, you can start adding devices. To learn about SmartThings' other features, see the other sections.



Navigate SmartThings

SmartThings has various features to help organize devices and improve your overall experience. We know that all of these terms can be a little overwhelming at first, so here’s a breakdown of what they all mean:

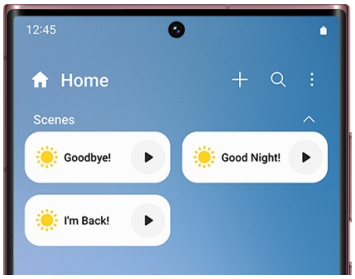
- Device: This is where you can view, control, edit, or delete any devices you’ve added to SmartThings.
- Rooms: Lets you organize your devices into individual rooms so you can better manage the layout of your smart home.
- Scenes: Lets you send different commands to multiple devices simultaneously.

- Routines: Create routines where your devices will automatically activate at a specified time.
- Favorites: Keep your commonly used devices, automations, SmartApps, services, and so on all in one place for easy access.
- Lighting groups: Add multiple lightbulbs or lights to a group so they can all turn on at the same time.
- Life: Access and use different services that will help make your life a little easier, such as SmartThings Find or SmartThings Monitor.
- SmartApps: Use preconfigured routines for a wide range of purposes. For example, you can set up a routine where you'll get alerts when severe weather is in your area.
- Members: Lets you add other people who can view or control your connected devices.
- History: View activity and events that recently occurred, such as when an automation is triggered.
- Notifications: View and adjust notifications for SmartThings and your connected devices.
- Android Auto: Control SmartThings from your car. You can choose up to 6 items to control.
- Companion apps: Connect to other compatible apps, such as Calendar, and use them in conjunction with SmartThings.
- Voice assistant: Choose a voice assistant, such as Bixby, to control your devices.
- Labs: Try out experimental features, such as Galaxy Upscale, Gentle wake-up, Offline Diagnosis, and more!
- Mall: View and purchase Samsung accessories that are compatible with SmartThings!

Customize a Home screen

You can reorganize your location's Home screens, so it's easier to control and keep track of your smart devices and rooms. For example, maybe you aren't really using devices in a certain room but don't want to delete them. In that case, you can just temporarily hide the room from the Home screen.

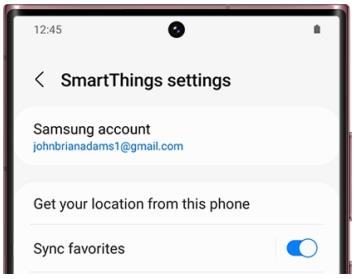
Check out our guide on SmartThings Home screens ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078854/") to learn how to do this and more.



Adjust settings in the app

Besides just your devices' settings, the SmartThings app also has general settings that you can adjust to customize your experience. For instance, you can make Bluetooth turn on automatically whenever you open the app, so your devices will connect instantly. You can also customize your linked services, such as Google, or make your phone undetectable for privacy reasons.

Check out our guide on SmartThings settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078859/") to start changing things to suit your preferences.


12:45
SmartThings settings
Samsung account
johnbrianadams1@gmail.com
Get your location from this phone
Sync favorites

Galaxy Store

Download apps

There are two app stores available on Galaxy phones or tablets: the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store?hl=en_US") and the Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/global/galaxy/apps/galaxy-store/") .

The Google Play Store can be found on the Apps screen or inside the Google folder. Meanwhile, the Galaxy Store can be found in the Samsung folder or on the Apps screen.

Pick an app store, and browse through the available apps by using the sort and search options. When you find the app you want to download, tap it, and then tap Install.



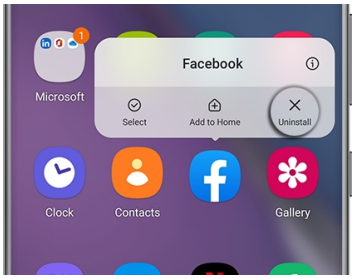
Note: Only apps that are compatible with your device are available for download.

Uninstall apps

If you don't need an app anymore, just get rid of it.

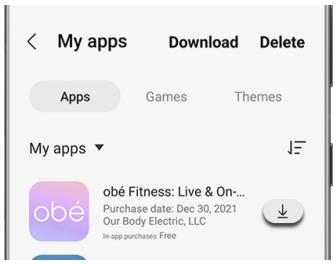
From the Home screen, swipe up or down to access your Apps screen. Touch and hold the app you want to uninstall, and then tap Uninstall.

Note: Some preloaded apps cannot be uninstalled.



Reinstall Galaxy Store apps

1. If you originally installed the app using the Galaxy Store, open the Galaxy Store, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap My apps; from the Apps tab, find the missing app and tap the Download icon.



3. If you want to reinstall a purchased theme, tap the Themes tab at the top, and then tap the Download icon.

Note: Galaxy Themes is not available on Galaxy tablets, only phones.

Samsung AR Zone

Bixby vision opens up a world of Augmented Reality capabilities on your Galaxy phone. Did you ever wonder how you'd look with a rainbow colored beard? Would you like to have a cartoon version of yourself to send as a sticker in a message?

Just open the Camera app and tap MORE. Tap AR Zone to access all the fun and useful features of AR.



- AR Emoji Camera: Create your own AR Emoji, or use one of a number of fun characters and see it react to your motions and expressions. Capture a photo or video to share with friends.
- AR Doodle: Record fun videos with virtual handwriting or drawings on faces or anywhere else.
- AR Emoji Studio: Create a custom look for your AR Emoji.
- AR Emoji Stickers: Create animated stickers you can use in messages, featuring your own AR Emoji.
- Deco Pic: Fun filters and stickers for adding that extra punch to your photos and videos.
- Picture link: Lets you set an object as an AR marker that can play sounds, show pictures, and more when you point the camera at it.
- Quick Measure: Lets you measure objects and distances without having to find a tape measure.
- 3D Scanner: Only available on the Note10 and S20, the 3D Scanner lets you scan an object and then use the scanned object as a character in your videos.

  Note: Additional third-party apps may be available. Available apps may vary based on software version.

Bixby

Your very own virtual assistant, Bixby ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/Bixby") is at your service. Whether Bixby's reminding you about an appointment or identifying landmarks, Bixby is always there to help with your everyday needs. Go on, say a command and start getting things done the easy way.

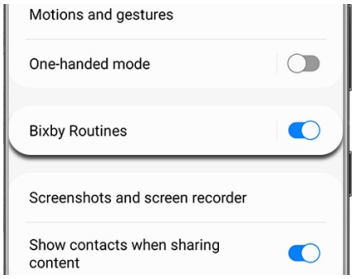


Set up and use Bixby Routines

Access Bixby Routines

There are two different ways to access Bixby Routines on your phone:

1. Navigate to and open Settings, then tap Advanced features, and then tap Bixby Routines.
2. Or, you can open the Quick settings panels by swiping down from the top of the screen using two fingers. Swipe left, and then touch and hold Bixby Routines.
3. To make accessing Bixby Routines easier, you can add an icon to your phone's App screen. While in Bixby Routines, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
4. Tap the switch next to "Show Bixby Routines on Apps screen."

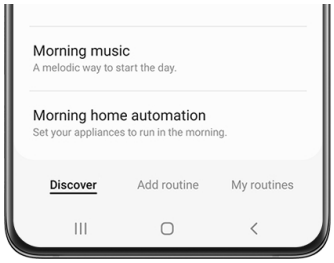


Note: If you do see the Bixby Routines icon in the Quick settings panel, you can easily add it to the panel ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062651/") .

Add common routines

From getting out the door in the morning to getting ready for bed, there’s a Bixby Routine for every part of your day. You can activate recommended routines or make your own:

1. Navigate to and open Bixby Routines on your phone, and then tap the Discover tab. You’ll see all kinds of routines, from Good morning to Workout.

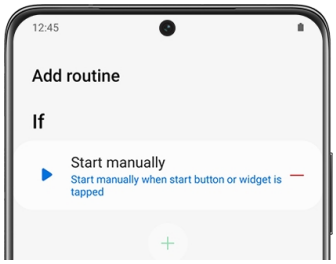


2. Tap a routine to customize it – you can change the conditions and some other basic settings.
3. Tap Edit to customize additional settings to your liking, such as adding more actions.
4. When you're finished, tap Next. You can set a name for your custom routine, as well as an icon and color that will be displayed in My routines. Then, tap Done.

Create a custom routine

Bixby routines are powerful tools that you can use to customize your experience in very specific ways. You can choose from a wide variety of triggers that can perform almost any task on your phone.

1. Navigate to and open Bixby Routines, and then tap the Add routine tab.
2. Tap the picture under If. Tap an item on the list of possible triggers. Each trigger will have additional options and instructions.

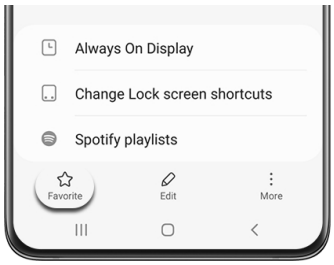


3. Once you've set up the trigger, tap the picture under Then. Tap a category for the action you'd like to perform, and then tap the action you'd like to perform. Many actions will have additional options and settings.
4. By default Bixby routines will stop the action when the trigger ends, and return any changed settings to their previous state. You can disable this by tapping Reverse these actions and then tapping the switch at the top of the screen.
5. When your trigger and action are set up, tap Next. You can set a name for your custom routine, as well as an icon and color that will be displayed in My routines. Then, tap Done.

Favorite routines

If you'd like to set a frequently used routine as a favorite, you can do so with the My routines tab. Your favorites will appear at the top of the screen in My routines, and all routines, including your favorites, will be below.

1. Navigate to and open Bixby Routines, an then tap the My routines tab.
2. Tap a routine and then tap the Favorite icon (the star) at the bottom.



3. Tap Back to see your routine listed under Favorites.
4. You can also check on your completed routines using the History option. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap History. You'll see the start and end times for your recent routines, as well as when they were used.

Galaxy Wearable

The Galaxy Wearable ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/galaxy-wearable-watch") app lets you connect your Galaxy watch or other wearables to your phone. Streaming music, receiving notifications, and downloading workout information are just a few of the benefits of connecting with Galaxy Wearable.

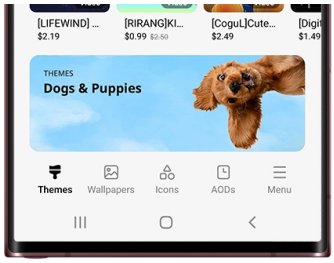


Customize Galaxy Themes

Download themes

Themes allow you to apply a design of your choice to your device, from wallpapers and icons to default applications such as Phone, Messages, and Calendar. You can express your personality through the various choices!

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. If it's your first time using Themes, read the information, and then tap Continue or Agree.
3. Swipe up to view the available themes and then select the one you want to download.



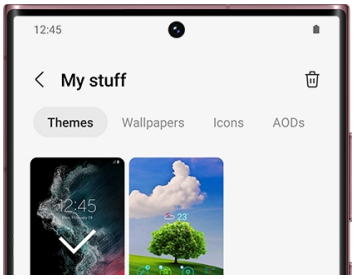
4. Tap Download if it's a free theme, or tap the price (e.g. $0.99) if it's a paid theme.
5. Choose between Select payment method or Use discounts. If needed, enter your payment information.
6. Tap Pay to confirm.

You can also tap Download trial for paid themes if you'd like to test it out first. You can only update a theme if the seller or creator of the theme has released an updated version.

Change your theme

You've had that theme for quite some time. If you want to change your theme and you already have another one downloaded or saved, all you need to do is apply it.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. To view all your themes, tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), then tap My stuff, and then tap Themes.
3. Select your desired theme, view the details, and then tap Apply.
4. If needed, tap Apply one more time to confirm.

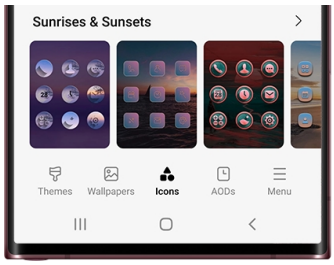


Note: Once you apply a theme, it cannot be undone. You will have to apply the default theme or another theme if you no longer want to use it.

Download icons

Want to show off your passion for your favorite hobby? Try customizing your device by downloading new icons.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Icons, swipe up to view the available icons, and then select the one you want to download.

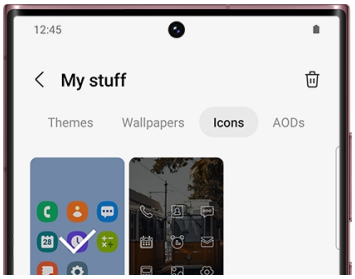


3. Tap Download if it's a free icon set, or tap the price (e.g. $0.99) if it's a paid icon set.
4. Choose between Select payment method or Use discounts. If it's your first time using Themes, read the information, and then tap Continue.
5. Tap Pay to confirm.

Change your icons

Maybe you're a little tired of those icons. If you want to change your icons and already have another set downloaded or saved, just follow these steps to apply it.

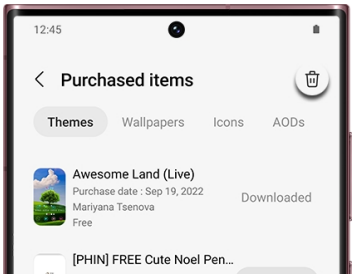
1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area. Tap Themes, and then tap Icons.
2. To view all of your icons, tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), then tap My stuff, and then tap Icons under My stuff.
3. Select your desired icons, and then tap Apply.
4. If needed, tap Apply one more time to confirm.



Delete themes

Oops, you downloaded the wrong theme by mistake. Just delete it; it's no trouble at all.

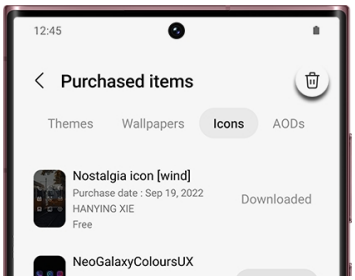
1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap Purchased items.
3. Tap Delete (the trash icon) in the upper right corner and select the theme or themes you'd like to remove.
4. Tap Delete at the bottom to confirm.



Delete icons

If you change your mind, you can delete icons any time you want.

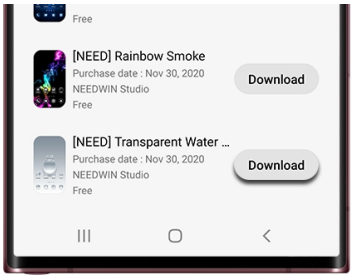
1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Themes, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
3. Tap Purchased items, and then tap Icons.
4. Tap Delete (the trash icon) in the upper right corner and select the icons you'd like to remove. Tap Delete at the bottom to confirm.



Recover purchased themes

No one wants to pay twice for the same thing. If you connect your device to a Samsung account, you can recover purchased items, even if you purchased them on another device.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold an empty area, and then tap Themes.
2. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap Purchased items.
3. Tap Download next to the theme you want to recover on your phone. You can repeat this process as many times as needed.



Note: You can recover purchased wallpapers or icons from the same page. Simply use the menu at the top of the screen.

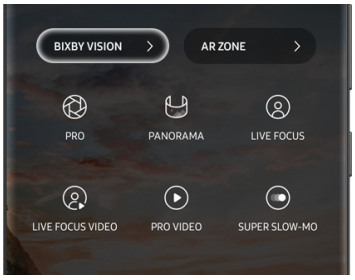
Use Bixby Vision

Access Bixby Vision

Note: When you launch Bixby Vision for the first time, you will be asked to review and accept Terms of Service, Samsung Privacy Policy, and allow permissions.

To help you discover more, Bixby Vision is built into your Camera, Gallery, and Samsung Internet.

- Camera: Bixby suggests information based on what's live in the viewfinder. From the Camera app, tap MORE and then tap BIXBY VISION to use it.
- Gallery: If you've already taken or downloaded a photo, Bixby can analyze what's inside it. From the Gallery app, tap your desired image, and then tap the Bixby Vision icon (it looks like an eye).



- Samsung Internet: Learn more about pictures by having Bixby analyze what you're looking at. From the Internet app, tap on and then hold the image you want to view with Bixby Vision, and then tap Search with Bixby Vision.

Use a lens in Bixby Vision

With Bixby, you can look at the world in a new way. The possibilities are endless.

Just open the Camera app, tap MORE, and then tap BIXBY VISION in the top left corner. If it's your first time using Bixby Vision, agree to the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy. Next, agree to the different permissions, and if desired, tap Add to add a shortcut to your phone's Home screen for easier access.

You can now use Bixby Vision inside your phone's Camera app. The search results will show up right away when Bixby scans an image. Simply scroll through the lenses and tap the one you want to use.



Here are the features available in Bixby Vision:

- Wine: See the bottle's rating or learn more about the vineyard it came from.
- Translate: Automatically translate text from another language in the live preview on your screen. You can tap the T icon at the bottom to see the extracted text. Then, select Translate, Copy, Select all, or Search. Please see the next section in this article for more details.
- Discover: Point the camera at something and see similar things on Pinterest.

- Text: Copy printed text into the clipboard. You can also quickly translate or perform a web search on text that Bixby identifies.

  Additional lenses are available to assist users with low vision. While using Bixby Vision, tap More options (the vertical three dots) and then tap Settings. Tap Accessibility modes and then tap the switch to turn it on. By default all the lenses will be enabled, but you can select which lenses will be available with the switches.

- Scene describer: Point the camera at a scene, then tap Capture. Bixby will speak a description of the scene that it sees.
- Object identifier: Point the camera at an object and Bixby will tell you what it sees.
- Text reader: Point the camera at some text to have it read aloud.
- Color detector: Point the camera at an object, and Bixby will tell you what color it is.

Note: Available lenses may vary depending on your Bixby Vision software version. The QR code lens can be accessed via the Quick settings panel: swipe down from the top of the screen using two fingers, and then swipe to and tap the Scan QR code icon.

Use Bixby Translate

Maybe you’re learning a new language, or maybe you came across some text that you can’t quite read. Just use the Bixby Translate feature to easily understand what you’re looking at.

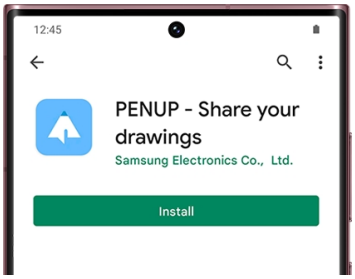
1. Open the Camera app, then tap MORE, and then tap BIXBY VISION.
2. Swipe to or tap the Translate icon at the bottom of the screen. It looks like the letter A with two arrowed boxes.
3. Next, tap Auto at the top of the screen. Tap the switch next to Auto detect language to allow Bixby Vision to automatically detect the source language. Or, deselect the switch and tap a language in the list.
4. Tap Back to return to Bixby Vision's main interface. Next, tap the target language (on the right side), and then tap your desired language. You can also select a language under Recently translated.
5. Now you’re ready to translate; point the camera at the text and Bixby Vision will provide the translation. You can tap Copy all or Save image as well.

Get started with PENUP

Get the PENUP app

If you don’t already have the PENUP app installed, you can download it from the Galaxy Store ("https://galaxystore.samsung.com/prepost/000002782851?langCd=en") or Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.sec.penup&hl=en_US&gl=US") . Please see the next section for setting up an account with PENUP.

When the app is ready, you can start using coloring tools ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080499/") ! Select from options like Water Color, Calligraphy Brush, Air Brush, and Marker Pen to create your own artwork.

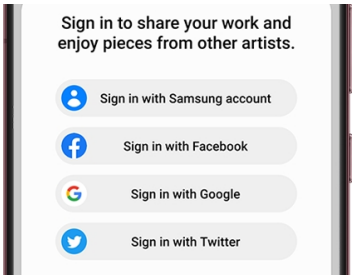


Create or sign into a PENUP account

Technically, you don’t need an account to use PENUP, but then you won’t get to use all of the awesome features. We highly recommend creating an account.

Navigate to and open PENUP. If it's your first time using it, agree to the different permissions. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Sign in. Choose the type of account you want to sign up with, such as your Samsung account.

If needed, enter that account’s login information, and allow the different permissions. Next, enter your desired username and select artists you are interested in. Then, tap Done at the top of the page.



To sign out of your account, tap More options, tap Sign out, and then tap OK.

Samsung Members

When you want instant access to specs, features, support information, and other helpful content, Samsung Members ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-members") is the app you need. In Samsung Members, you'll also find diagnostics along with engaging articles to help you make the most of your Samsung experience.



Secure Folder

Keep your personal information private with Secure Folder ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.knox.securefolder&hl=e n") . It creates a secure, encrypted space on your phone that no one can access without a special PIN. It's all thanks to the overlapping defense and security platform, Samsung Knox.



Samsung Health

If you’re training for a marathon or want to go for a casual run, you can keep track of it with Samsung Health ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-health") . It lets you track your daily activities, meals, and more. Measure your heart rate after a good workout, set goals for yourself, and even speak to a doctor with the virtual consultation feature.



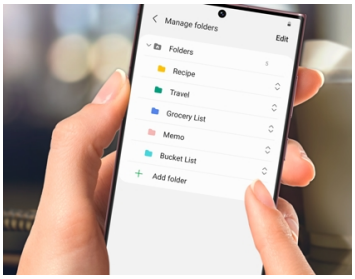
Use Samsung Notes features and settings

Samsung Notes features and settings

If you've taken tons of notes on your phone, Samsung Notes may become messy. Don't worry, it has features that will make organizing your notes much easier.

For example, you can place your notes into different categories for simpler navigation. Or, you can search for notes with specific titles or subjects instead of sifting through all of your notes.

Here are some of the most helpful features in Samsung Notes:



- Quick highlight: You can quickly highlight a section of text and select an action. With your S Pen, press and hold a word, and then drag your pen to highlight more text. A list of actions will appear: Cut, Copy, Paste, Dictionary, Show clipboard, and Share.

  Note: This feature is only available on the Note series.

- Zoom in and out: Simply pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

  Note: The amount of Zoom that is supported will vary by device.

- The search function: Use this feature to search for and find the exact note you need. Tap the Search icon, and then enter the words you want to search for.

- Organize your notes: You can use several different features to organize your notes. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Edit. Select your desired notes, and then choose your desired option. You can tap Move to place them in a different folder ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087286/") , tap Share to send them elsewhere, or tap Delete to remove them from your phone.

- Lock your notes: If you want to keep some notes private (like your poetry collection), you can lock them. Open your desired note, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap the Lock icon. Next, follow the on-screen prompts to create a password for your note.

  Note: If you want to change the password, navigate to Samsung Notes' settings, tap Note unlock methods, and then tap Change password. A Samsung account is required to lock notes.

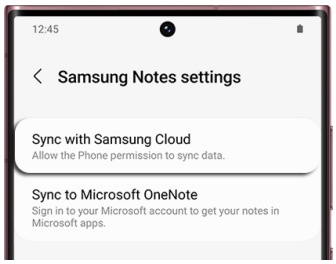
- Sort your notes: You have so many notes, you don't know what's what. To help you figure it out, you can sort them. From the Samsung Notes home screen, tap the Filter icon, and then choose your desired option, such as Date created. You can also change the overall layout of your notes. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap View to change the layout of how the notes are displayed.

- Action icons: This feature creates icons in your handwritten notes. Just tap the different icons to make calls, send emails, solve equations, and go to websites straight from icons. Tap Menu (the three horizontal lines) located at top left, tap the Settings icon, and then tap the switch next to Action icons.

Save your notes

Your notes will be automatically saved in Samsung Notes, but they can also be synchronized with your Samsung account. Or, back up your notes using the different file options available in Samsung Notes. You can also use Samsung Cloud ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060641/") to sync your notes across all of your other Galaxy devices.

1. Open the Samsung Notes app, then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap the Settings icon.
2. Tap Sync with Samsung account, and then allow the permissions.



3. Tap the switch at the top of the page to turn the feature on or off. You can also tap Sync Notes data to choose whether syncing happens through Wi-Fi only or Wi-Fi or mobile data.
4. If you want to save your note as a different type of file, you have plenty of choices. You can save it as a PDF, Microsoft Word file, a PowerPoint file, an image, or a text file. Select the note that you want to back up, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots). Next, tap Save as file, and then select your desired file format.

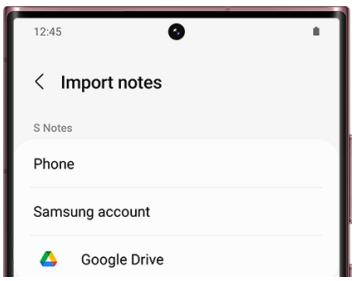
   Now that your notes are synchronized with your Samsung account, you can also make them available in Microsoft Office by syncing Samsung Notes with Microsoft OneNote ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088543/") !

Import or export data in Samsung Notes

Maybe you have notes saved in Google Drive that aren't showing up in Samsung Notes. No worries, you can easily import them to your phone, so they show up in the app.

To import data to Samsung Notes, open the app, then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Import notes. Tap the source you want to import from (i.e. Samsung account), and then follow the on-screen prompts.

You can also import and export PDFs ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087285/") in Samsung Notes! You won't be able to edit the PDFs, but you can draw on them or annotate them in the app.

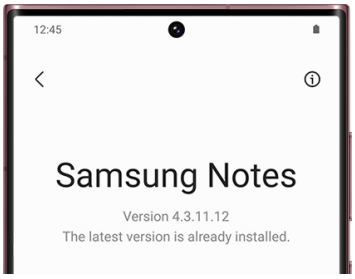


Update Samsung Notes

You should always make sure to keep Samsung Notes updated, in case any new note-taking features are added.

In the app, tap Menu (the three horizontal lines), and then tap the Settings icon. Tap About Samsung Notes, and then tap Update if one is available.

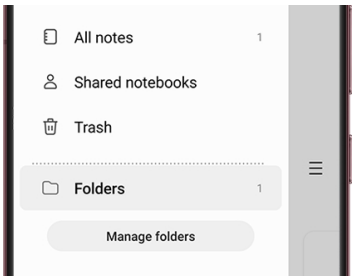
You can enable automatic updates ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080581/") from the Galaxy Store and Google Play Store to keep Samsung Notes always up-to-date.



Manage note styles, templates, and folders

You should keep your notes in Samsung Notes nice and tidy, so you'll always be able to locate what you need. The app comes with several different ways to organize and style ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087286/") your notes.

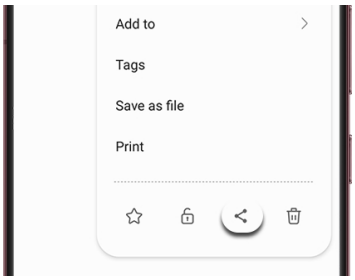
Place all your related notes in the same folder or give them the same template to keep them consistent.



Share your notes

Did you draw a cute picture or write down important meeting details in Samsung Notes? You can send it as different file types to yourself, a friend, or a coworker right from the app. For example, you can email the work notes as a Word doc or PDF!

1. Open the Samsung Notes app, then select your desired note, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots).
2. Tap the Share icon, and then choose your desired file type. You can choose between Samsung Notes file, PDF file, Microsoft Word file, Microsoft PowerPoint file, Image file, and Text file.
3. After you've selected the file type, select your preferred sharing method, such as text message, email, and so on. Next, send the file the way you normally would.



Note: Some files cannot be sent through certain sharing options. Make sure you've selected an appropriate sharing method for the file type.

Use handwriting functions

You can write in Samsung Notes using an S Pen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087583/") ! Just take out your S Pen on a compatible phone and begin creating a note in the app. Your handwriting can also be edited and converted to text. If the S Pen isn't your thing, you can still use the keyboard or even your finger to write notes.



Samsung Pass

Imagine not having to enter your password every time you need to log in. Samsung Pass ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-pass") uses biometric data like your fingerprint or iris to authenticate your identity. No more memorizing all those different IDs and passwords for each site.



Samsung Pay

There's a reason Samsung Pay (**"https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-pay" style="font-weight: bold;"**) is the most accepted mobile payment. With it, you can enjoy a streamlined payment process, exclusive deals, and rewards. Samsung Pay also lets you conveniently keep all your cards (including gift and membership) in one place for easy access.

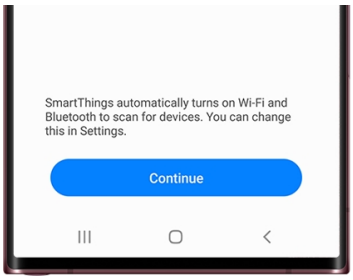


Set up the SmartThings app

If you haven't installed SmartThings yet, download it from the Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") first.

You will need to use your Samsung account to access SmartThings. If you don’t currently have an account, you can create one ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085942/") .

1. When you're ready, navigate to and open SmartThings on your phone.
2. If it's your first time using it, review the information, tap Continue, and then tap Continue again.
3. Next, allow the different permissions.
4. Now that SmartThings is set up, you can start adding devices. To learn about SmartThings' other features, see the other sections.



Navigate SmartThings

SmartThings has various features to help organize devices and improve your overall experience. We know that all of these terms can be a little overwhelming at first, so here’s a breakdown of what they all mean:

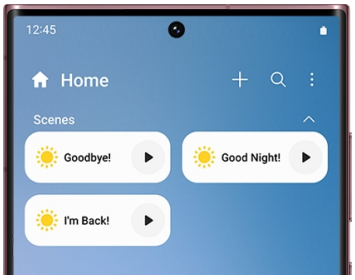
- Device: This is where you can view, control, edit, or delete any devices you’ve added to SmartThings.
- Rooms: Lets you organize your devices into individual rooms so you can better manage the layout of your smart home.
- Scenes: Lets you send different commands to multiple devices simultaneously.
- Routines: Create routines where your devices will automatically activate at a specified time.
- Favorites: Keep your commonly used devices, automations, SmartApps, services, and so on all in one place for easy access.
- Lighting groups: Add multiple lightbulbs or lights to a group so they can all turn on at the same time.
- Life: Access and use different services that will help make your life a little easier, such as SmartThings Find or SmartThings Monitor.
- SmartApps: Use preconfigured routines for a wide range of purposes. For example, you can set up a routine where you'll get alerts when severe weather is in your area.
- Members: Lets you add other people who can view or control your connected devices.
- History: View activity and events that recently occurred, such as when an automation is triggered.
- Notifications: View and adjust notifications for SmartThings and your connected devices.
- Android Auto: Control SmartThings from your car. You can choose up to 6 items to control.

- Companion apps: Connect to other compatible apps, such as Calendar, and use them in conjunction with SmartThings.
- Voice assistant: Choose a voice assistant, such as Bixby, to control your devices.
- Labs: Try out experimental features, such as Galaxy Upscale, Gentle wake-up, Offline Diagnosis, and more!
- Mall: View and purchase Samsung accessories that are compatible with SmartThings!

Customize a Home screen

You can reorganize your location's Home screens, so it's easier to control and keep track of your smart devices and rooms. For example, maybe you aren't really using devices in a certain room but don't want to delete them. In that case, you can just temporarily hide the room from the Home screen.

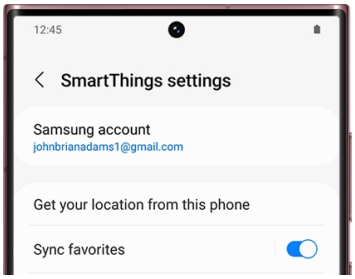
Check out our guide on SmartThings Home screens ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078854/") to learn how to do this and more.



Adjust settings in the app

Besides just your devices' settings, the SmartThings app also has general settings that you can adjust to customize your experience. For instance, you can make Bluetooth turn on automatically whenever you open the app, so your devices will connect instantly. You can also customize your linked services, such as Google, or make your phone undetectable for privacy reasons.

Check out our guide on SmartThings settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078859/") to start changing things to suit your preferences.



Use Samsung Global Goals on your Galaxy device

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00092002



Global Goals is a worldwide effort to improve our planet and daily lives by 2030. Global Goals focuses on 17 main goals, including No Poverty, Quality Education, and Climate Action, that you can donate to when using the Samsung Global Goals app. To do so, simply watch in-app ads to generate revenue. Or, you can use your own funds to support the projects you're passionate about. Once you've donated, the app will send regular updates about your chosen goal to keep you informed!

What is the Samsung Global Goals app?

Samsung Global Goals ("https://www.samsung.com/us/apps/samsung-global-goals/") is your pathway to creating a sustainable world through 17 Global Goals. You can donate to these goals using your own funds or by watching in-app ads on your device.

Note: Global Goals is not operated by Samsung. To learn more about the organization, the Global Goals, and other ways you can contribute, visit the Global Goals website ("https://www.globalgoals.org/") .

The Samsung Global Goals app may come pre-installed on your phone or tablet. To find it, swipe up or down to open the Apps screen, and then tap the Samsung folder. If the app isn't in the Samsung folder, it can be downloaded from the Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.sree") or Galaxy Store ("https://galaxystore.samsung.com/prepost/000004263306") .

You can also turn on Enhanced ads if you'd like to earn and donate even more. To find this option, navigate to and open the Samsung Global Goals app, then tap the Updates tab, and then tap Settings. Tap Enhanced ads, and then tap the switch to turn it on. Tap the switch again to turn off Enhanced ads.



Start donating with Samsung Global Goals

There are two ways to earn funds and donate with the Samsung Global Goals app: by watching ads to raise funds, and by donating using your own funds. The app also offers articles, podcasts, and videos that focus on the 17 main

goals of the Global Goals effort.

1. Navigate to and open the Samsung Global Goals app. Allow the permissions if prompted.
2. The app will display several wallpaper options that you can add to your Lock screen. Tap the screen, and then select Turn on Lock screen wallpapers if you'd like to set them as your wallpapers. Then, tap Agree and continue.
3. The following tabs will be available at the bottom of the screen:



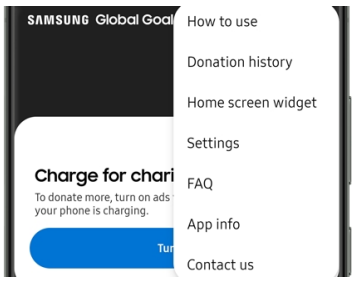
- Updates: Read articles, listen to podcasts, and watch videos that are focused on a variety of topics. These include global warming, sustainability, animal extinctions, and gender equality, among others.
- Goals: Learn more about the 17 main goals included in Samsung Global Goals. Tap a goal to review articles, watch videos, and gather more information about your preferred goal.
- Donate: Start donating to Samsung Global Goals! You'll see your current accrued amount under Earned by you; tap Donate directly under this to begin donating right away. You'll be taken to a pop-up screen with additional options, where you'll be able to donate using your own money, or challenge your friends to match a donation. Then, you can choose the goal you'd like to donate to.
- Friends: Sign in to your Google account to start donation challenges with your friends. Swipe up to review how the challenges work, and then tap New matching challenge to get started.
- Subscribe: You can support the United Nations Development Programme's Global Goals projects by subscribing to it. Swipe to the bottom of the screen and then tap Subscribe. Select a monthly donation amount, and then select one of the 17 main goals to donate to.

Additional Samsung Global Goals options

If you need to check your donation history, adjust preferences and settings, or would like to see a Global Goals widget on your Home screen, you can use the app's additional options.

Navigate to and open the Samsung Global Goals app, and then tap the Updates tab. Tap More options (the three vertical dots) to use the following:

- How to use: Learn about using Global Goals through quick options like using wallpapers, charging your device, and watching in-app ads. Swipe to an option and then select it to begin.
- Donation history: View your Global Goals donation history. If you haven't made any donations yet, you can tap Donate to get started.



- Home screen widget: Add a stylish Global Goals widget to your Home screen. You can use the widget to donate.
- Settings: Configure your preferences for Lock screen wallpapers, Sound effects, Ad personalization, Collected data, and your Samsung or Google accounts.
- FAQ: Check out frequently asked questions about Samsung Global Goals.
- App info: View information about the Samsung Global Goals app, such as the installed version, Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Policy.
- Contact us: Contact Samsung using options like chat, remote support, or the Samsung Members app.

Use Samsung Global Goals on your Galaxy watch

Note: The following steps may differ depending on your Galaxy watch model.

The Samsung Global Goals app can be used on your Galaxy watch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/watches/") as well. You can even set your watch face to a Global Goals wallpaper.

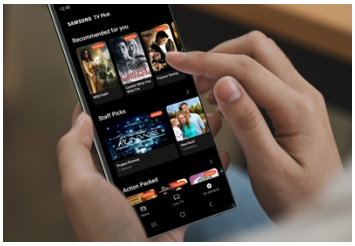
1. Navigate to and open the Samsung Global Goals app on your Galaxy watch, and then swipe up to view the 17 goals.



2. To begin donating, select your preferred goal, and then swipe up. Tap Donate, and then use your phone to continue the donation process.
3. Or, tap Open on phone to view more information about your selected goal.
4. You can also change your watch face to one of the Global Goals' wallpapers! Navigate to your watch's Home screen, and then touch and hold it. Swipe to and tap Add watch face.
5. Next, swipe left and select one of the available Samsung Global Goals watch faces. Tap it again to set it.
6. Now, you can use your watch face to donate! Simply tap the watch face and follow the prompts.

Watch Samsung TV Plus on Galaxy phones and tablets

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087682



Samsung TV Plus ("https://www.samsung.com/us/televisions-home-theater/tvs/tvplus/?cid=com-mktg-pub-gst r-100620-112812") is Samsung's free, ad-supported streaming service. You can find news, sports, movies, music, kids and family entertainment, and more! With a Samsung phone ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/phones/all-phones/") or tablet ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/tablets/all-tablets/") , you can watch anywhere, anytime.

Important: Samsung TV Plus mobile is only available in the USA.

Compatible devices

You can install Samsung TV Plus on Galaxy devices with Android 8.0 and higher:

- Galaxy S7 series, S8 Series, S9 Series, S10 Series, S20 Series, S21 Series, S22 Series, S23 series, S24 series
- Galaxy Note8 series, Note9 Series, Note10 series, and Note20 series
- Galaxy Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3, Z Fold4, Z Fold 5, Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, Z Flip3, Z Flip 4and Z Flip5
- Galaxy A3, Galaxy A5, Galaxy A5 (2017), Galaxy A6, Galaxy A6+, Galaxy A7 (2017 and 2018), Galaxy A8, Galaxy A8 (2018), Galaxy A8+ (2018), Galaxy A8s, Galaxy A9 (2018), Galaxy A9 Pro, Galaxy A9 Star, Galaxy A01, Galaxy A02s, Galaxy A10, Galaxy A10e, Galaxy A10s, Galaxy A11, Galaxy A12 5G, A15 5G, Galaxy A20, Galaxy A20e, Galaxy A20s, Galaxy A21, Galaxy A21s, Galaxy A23 5G, A25 5G, Galaxy A30, Galaxy A30s, Galaxy A31, Galaxy A32 5G, Galaxy A40, Galaxy A41, Galaxy A42 5G, Galaxy A50, Galaxy A51, Galaxy A51 5G, Galaxy A52 5G, Galaxy A70, Galaxy A71, Galaxy A71 5G, Galaxy A80, and Galaxy A90 5G
- Galaxy XCover6 Pro
- Galaxy J2 Core, Galaxy J3 (2017 and 2018), Galaxy J3 Pop Galaxy J4 Galaxy J4 Core Galaxy J4+ Galaxy J5 (2017) Galaxy J6 Galaxy J6+ Galaxy J7, and Galaxy J7 (2017)
- Galaxy Tab S7+, Tab A7, Galaxy Tab A 8.0, Galaxy Tab A 8.0 (2019), Galaxy Tab A 8.4 (2020), Galaxy Tab 8.4, Galaxy Tab A 10.1, Galaxy Tab A 10.1 (2019), Galaxy Tab A, Galaxy Tab A S Pen (2019), Galaxy Tab S4, Galaxy Tab S5e, Galaxy Tab S6, Galaxy Tab S6 Lite, Galaxy Tab S7, Galaxy Tab S7 Plus, Galaxy Tab S8, Galaxy Tab S9, Galaxy Tab A9+, Galaxy Tab Active Pro, and Galaxy Tab Active 2
- For a complete list of compatible mobile devices, including tablets, please check out the Samsung TV Plus app page ("https://galaxystore.samsung.com/detail/com.samsung.android.tvplus?session_id=W_a0dcb3ebd2a8b6edcf7584f617d873cb") in the Galaxy Store.

  Samsung TV Plus is also available on many of our TVs. You can find more information about the TV version

of Samsung TV Plus at our Samsung TV Plus page ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") .

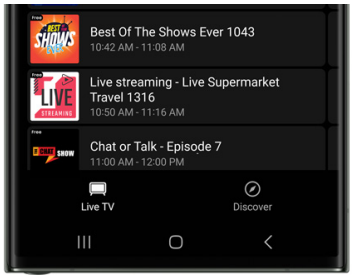
Using Samsung TV Plus

Samsung TV plus features hundreds of free live TV channels spanning multiple genres like news, entertainment, sports, and more so there's always something for everyone. You'll also have access to a huge variety of on demand shows and movies.

Live TV tab

Tap Live TV to open the tab. You can swipe through the channels or categories to see everything that is currently playing.

If you'd prefer to see a larger range of upcoming shows, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings. Tap Live program guide, and then tap Timeline to see the schedule for the next 5 hours. If you see an upcoming show you don't want to miss, tap it, and then tap Set reminder to be notified when it airs.

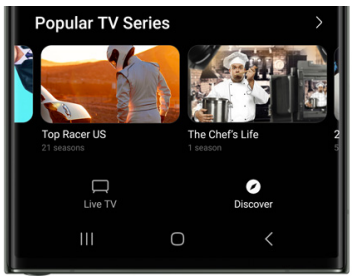


If you find that there's a channel you keep watching, tap the Star icon to set it as a favorite, and it will appear near the top of your channel list.

Discover tab

Tap Discover to find suggestions for on demand movies and TV shows. You'll see suggestions for new and trending content. You can browse the collections if you'd like to find something in a specific category.

You'll also see suggestions for new and popular live TV channels.



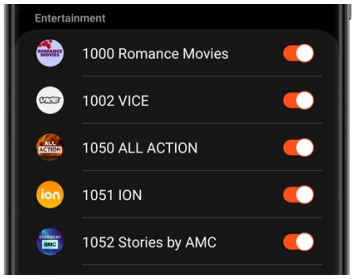
Manage your channels

You can edit channels in Samsung TV Plus so you only see your favorites. For a full list of all available channels on Samsung TV Plus, download our channel lineup ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") .

Note: Local news may not be available.

Customize your available channels

1. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
2. Tap Channels to see a list of all the available channels.
3. Tap the switch next to the channel you do not want to see.

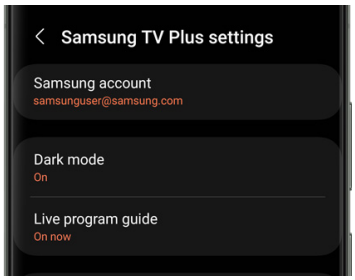


TV Plus Settings

Samsung TV Plus has plenty of options to help you customize your watching experience.

To open TV Plus Settings, tap More options (the three vertical dots) and then tap Settings.

You will be able to manage TV Plus with the following options:



- Samsung account: Sign in to your Samsung account for the best TV Plus experience.
- Dark mode: Samsung TV Plus will follow your device settings, but you can also change the theme if desired.
- Live program guide: You can view the programs that are currently airing or see a schedule for the next 5 hours.
- Channels: Manage the channels that are available in the Live TV tab. Tap the switch(es) to enable or disable the channels.
- Favorite channels: If you've set any channels as your favorites, you'll be able to manage them from here.
- Edit watch reminders: If you've set a reminder, you can remove it here.
- Delete recently watched channel history: Clear your watch history.
- Play videos on Wi-Fi only: Prevent TV Plus from using mobile data.
- Video quality: Select Auto, High, or Low, and then tap Done.
- Picture-in-picture: You can continue watching TV Plus while using other apps. Tap the switch(es) next to your desired app(s).

Privacy options

- Privacy Notice: View the Samsung TV Plus U.S. Privacy Notice.
- Notifications: Enable or disable notifications from TV Plus. To manage the types of notifications, tap Notification categories.
- Watch recommendations: Choose from Emails, Notifications, or Emails and Notifications to receive content recommendations. If you do not want recommendations, choose None.
- Breaking news notifications: Get notified when breaking news reports are available.
- Do Not Sell or Share My Personal Information: Visit Samsung’s Privacy website if you'd like to manage your personal information.
- Customization Service: When enabled, you'll receive recommendations based on your device usage.
- Leave Samsung TV Plus: Erase your Samsung TV Plus data.

Ads options

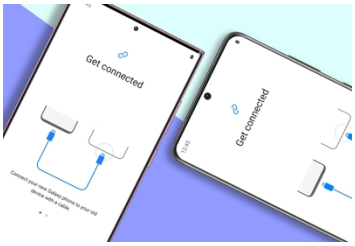
- Ads Privacy Settings: Select your desired privacy settings. You can tap Privacy notice for more details.
- Ads Privacy Notice: View the Ads Privacy Notice.

Other options

- About Samsung TV Plus: View the current version of Samsung TV Plus, the Terms of Service, and Open source licenses.
- Contact us: Send feedback about Samsung TV Plus through Samsung Members.

Transfer content with Samsung Smart Switch

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062998



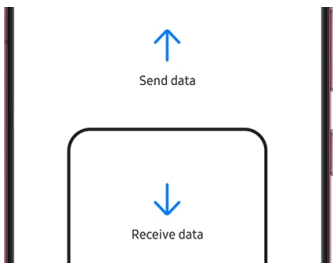
So, you got a brand new Galaxy phone and it's awesome. But what's not so awesome is missing all your old photos, videos, and contacts. Well, your worries are over because Samsung Smart Switch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") lets you seamlessly transfer all your content from your old phone to your new Galaxy phone. Smart Switch will transfer data from most Android or iOS phones, and even some older Windows and Blackberry devices. USB cables ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/?accessories_type=Memory +Cards,Adapters&category_names=Phones") and external storage devices (microSD or USB flash drive) ("https://www.samsung.com/us/memory-storage/") are available on our website.

Note: Smart Switch lets you transfer content from old phones to Galaxy devices only. For example, you cannot transfer content to an iOS device. The supported items ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00047089/") may change depending on the connected device.

Wireless transfer from an Android phone

A wireless transfer is the preferred way to copy your data to a new phone. It's fast and lets you keep the phones plugged into their chargers during the transfer.

1. First, make sure the Smart Switch ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") app is installed on both phones, and plug them into their chargers.
2. When you're ready, place the phones within 4 inches of each other.
3. Launch Smart Switch on both phones. Open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.
4. On the old phone, tap Send data, and then tap Wireless.

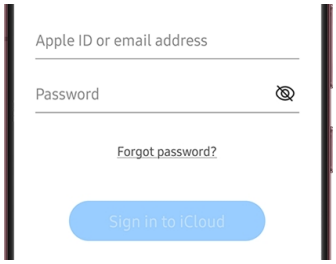


5. On your new phone, tap Receive data, tap Galaxy/Android, and then tap Wireless.
6. Next, complete the connection by tapping Allow on the old phone. On your new phone, choose the content you want to move, and then tap Transfer. Once the transfer is complete, tap Close on the new phone and you're good to go.

Import content from iCloud

You have lots of valuable data saved on your old iOS phone but transferring it seems like a logistical nightmare. No worries, Smart Switch makes transferring through iCloud ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00061001/") a breeze.

1. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.
2. Tap Receive data on the new phone, and then tap iPhone/iPad.
3. Tap Get data from iCloud instead at the bottom of the screen.
4. Enter your Apple ID and password, and then tap Sign in to iCloud.



5. Enter the verification code, and then tap OK.
6. Select the data you want to transfer, and then tap Transfer. When the transfer is finished, tap Next, tap Next again, and then tap Done.

   Note: iTunes music and videos cannot be transferred from iCloud. Unencrypted iTunes music can be transferred to your phone by simply copying the M4A files from a PC with your iTunes library. You can also transfer your music files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086603/") directly from a PC.

Connect devices with a USB cable

Note: If you use Smart Switch via a USB OTG connection, make sure your devices are at least 20% charged to ensure a safe data transfer. The transfer may take a while, depending on the volume of multimedia data. It is recommended to fully charge your devices before beginning the transfer.

Wired transfer is best for people who don't have a lot of data on their old phone. This is because wired transfer doesn't allow you to keep your phones connected to a charger during the transfer. If you have a lot of data or years' worth of text messages to transfer, we recommend performing a wireless transfer instead.

1. Connect the phones with the old phone's USB cable. Most cables will require you to use a USB-OTG adapter. If you have an iPhone ("https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=blW1lsN-VjA") with a Lightning to USB-C ("https://www.apple.com/shop/product/MM0A3AM/A/usb-c-to-lightning-cable-1-m" target="_

blank") or an Android with a USB-C to USB-C ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/usb-c-to-usb-c-cable-bla ck-ep-da705bbegus/#benefits-") cable you won't need an adapter; it will plug right into your new Galaxy.

2. Launch Smart Switch on both phones. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

3. On the old phone, tap Send data, and then tap Cable.

4. On the new phone, tap Receive data, select the type of device you're transferring from (i.e. Galaxy/Android), and then tap Cable. Smart Switch will begin scanning the old phone for transferrable content.

5. After the scan, select the data you want transferred to the new phone. An estimate of the transfer time will be displayed. If the transfer will take more than an hour, you may want to use a wireless transfer so both phones can be charged during the transfer.

   Note: You can view the other sections in this article to learn about wireless transfers.

6. When you are ready to start, tap Transfer.

7. When finished, tap Done on the new phone, and tap Close on the old phone.

   Note: A USB-OTG adapter is provided in-box with the Galaxy S10+, S10, S10e, Note10+, Note10+ 5G, and Z Flip. Newer phone models do not come with this adapter.

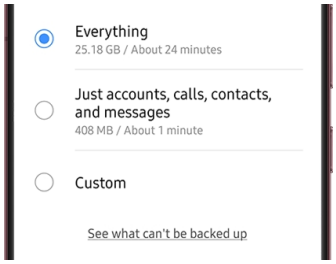
Use a microSD card or USB flash drive

If you have a large enough capacity microSD card or USB OTG flash drive, you can use Smart Switch to transfer your data and back up your old device to the external storage. Before you begin, insert the microSD card ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") or USB OTG storage device into the old phone.

1. Launch Smart Switch on the old phone. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.

2. Tap the SD card icon in the upper right corner, and then tap SD card under Back up to.

3. Select what you want to back up. If there's not enough space on your external storage, you may need to deselect some items, but you can come back later to transfer anything that won't fit.



4. You can choose between Everything; Just accounts, calls, contacts, and messages; or Custom. Tap Next. If a popup message appears, select the appropriate option.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions. They will be very different depending on what option you chose. When it's complete, tap Done, and then remove the external storage device.

6. Next, insert the external storage into the new Galaxy phone, and then launch Smart Switch.
7. Tap the SD card icon, and then tap Restore. Select what you want to restore, and then tap Restore again.
8. When it's complete, tap Next, and then tap Done. You can repeat this process as many times as needed.

Note: If you connect your device to an external hard drive via an OTG cable, you can use file explorer apps (such as My Files) to copy data from the device to the external hard drive. External hard drives must be formatted as FAT or exFAT to be recognized by Galaxy devices. Some external hard drive devices require an external power supply.

Copy your data from a Windows phone

You can also use Smart Switch to transfer your data from a Windows phone.

1. On the new Galaxy phone, open Settings, search for Smart Switch, and then tap Bring data from old device. Tap Bring data from old device again.
   Note: Alternatively, you can navigate to the Samsung folder on the Apps screen, and open Smart Switch from there.
2. On the new Galaxy phone, tap Receive data, and then tap Windows Phone.



3. Next, you will see the steps to download the Smart Switch software onto your old device. Follow the on-screen prompts to continue.

   Note: If your Location service is not enabled, you will be prompted to turn it on.
4. Once you've installed and opened Smart Switch, tap Connect on the old phone, and then select the network.
5. Enter the password shown on your new Galaxy phone. Your data will now be transferred.

Google apps

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091482

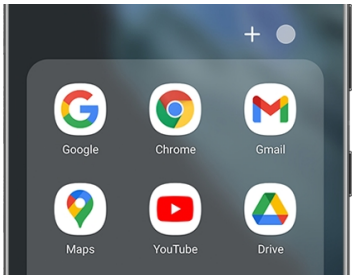


Use Google apps

The following Google apps may be preloaded on your device. If they aren't on your device, you can download them from the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps") .

To find your Google apps, swipe up on a Home screen to open the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap the Google folder.

- Chrome ("http://support.google.com/chrome") : Browse the internet with the Chrome browser and bring your open tabs, bookmarks, and address bar data from your computer to your mobile device.
- Drive ("http://support.google.com/drive") : Open, view, rename, and share files saved to your Google Drive cloud account.
- Meet ("http://support.google.com/duo") : Make video calls with friends and family.
- Gmail ("http://support.google.com/mail") : Send and receive email with Google's web-based email service.



- Google ("http://support.google.com/websearch") : Find content online using a search engine that learns your interests. You can turn on your personalized feed to receive customized content as well.
- Google Pay ("http://support.google.com/pay") : Make purchases with your Android phone at participating stores and in mobile apps.
- Google TV ("http://play.google.com/store/movies") : Watch movies and TV shows purchased from Google Play using the Google TV app. You can also view videos saved on your device.
- Maps ("http://support.google.com/maps") : Get directions and other location-based information. You must enable location services to use Google Maps.
- Photos ("http://support.google.com/photos") : Store and back up your photos and videos automatically to your Google Account with Google Photos.

- Messages ("https://support.google.com/messages") : Google's text messaging app supports chat features that let you send higher quality pictures, videos, and text over Wi-Fi.
- YouTube ("http://support.google.com/youtube") : Watch and upload YouTube videos right from your device.

PlayStore

Download apps

There are two app stores available on Galaxy phones or tablets: the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store?hl=en_US") and the Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/global/galaxy/apps/galaxy-store/") .

The Google Play Store can be found on the Apps screen or inside the Google folder. Meanwhile, the Galaxy Store can be found in the Samsung folder or on the Apps screen.

Pick an app store, and browse through the available apps by using the sort and search options. When you find the app you want to download, tap it, and then tap Install.

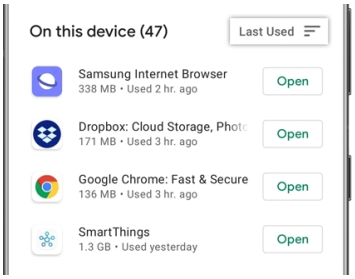


Note: Only apps that are compatible with your device are available for download.

See which apps you've used recently

You can tap the Recents button on the Navigation bar to see your most recently used apps and any apps that are currently running in the background. But, what if you want to know how long it's been since you've even opened an app?

1. Open the Play Store, and tap your profile picture.
2. Tap Manage apps & device, and then tap Manage.
3. Make sure you are on the Installed tab at the top of the screen, and then tap the Sort by icon next to Apps & games; depending on the filter you last used, the Sort by icon may have a different name (i.e. Recently updated, Size, etc.).
4. Tap Most used to see the apps you use the most often, or tap Least used to see the apps you use least often.

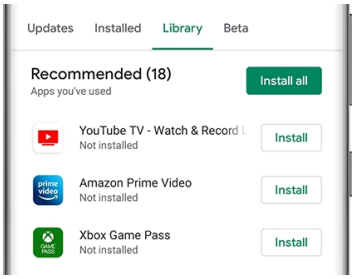


Reinstall paid apps and themes

If you've already purchased an app or a theme, you don't have to purchase it again. Simply reinstall it using the same account you purchased it with.

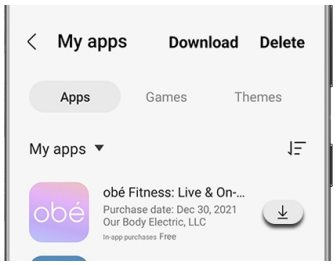
Reinstall Play Store apps

1. If you made a purchase using the Play Store, open the Play Store, and tap your profile picture.
2. Tap Manage apps & device, and then tap Manage.
3. Tap the Installed drop-down menu and select Not installed. Then, select the app you want, and then tap Install.



Reinstall Galaxy Store apps

1. If you originally installed the app using the Galaxy Store, open the Galaxy Store, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap My apps; from the Apps tab, find the missing app and tap the Download icon.



3. If you want to reinstall a purchased theme, tap the Themes tab at the top, and then tap the Download icon.

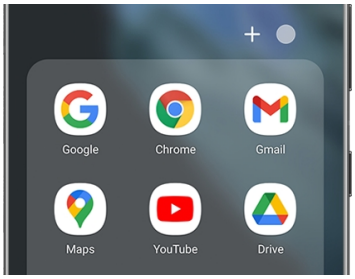
Note: Galaxy Themes is not available on Galaxy tablets, only phones.

Use Google apps

The following Google apps may be preloaded on your device. If they aren't on your device, you can download them from the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps") .

To find your Google apps, swipe up on a Home screen to open the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap the Google folder.

- Chrome ("http://support.google.com/chrome") : Browse the internet with the Chrome browser and bring your open tabs, bookmarks, and address bar data from your computer to your mobile device.
- Drive ("http://support.google.com/drive") : Open, view, rename, and share files saved to your Google Drive cloud account.
- Meet ("http://support.google.com/duo") : Make video calls with friends and family.
- Gmail ("http://support.google.com/mail") : Send and receive email with Google's web-based email service.



- Google ("http://support.google.com/websearch") : Find content online using a search engine that learns your interests. You can turn on your personalized feed to receive customized content as well.
- Google Pay ("http://support.google.com/pay") : Make purchases with your Android phone at participating stores and in mobile apps.
- Google TV ("http://play.google.com/store/movies") : Watch movies and TV shows purchased from Google Play using the Google TV app. You can also view videos saved on your device.
- Maps ("http://support.google.com/maps") : Get directions and other location-based information. You must enable location services to use Google Maps.
- Photos ("http://support.google.com/photos") : Store and back up your photos and videos automatically to your Google Account with Google Photos.
- Messages ("https://support.google.com/messages") : Google's text messaging app supports chat features that let you send higher quality pictures, videos, and text over Wi-Fi.
- YouTube ("http://support.google.com/youtube") : Watch and upload YouTube videos right from your device.

PlayStore

Download apps

There are two app stores available on Galaxy phones or tablets: the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store?hl=en_US") and the Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/global/galaxy/apps/galaxy-store/") .

The Google Play Store can be found on the Apps screen or inside the Google folder. Meanwhile, the Galaxy Store can be found in the Samsung folder or on the Apps screen.

Pick an app store, and browse through the available apps by using the sort and search options. When you find the app you want to download, tap it, and then tap Install.

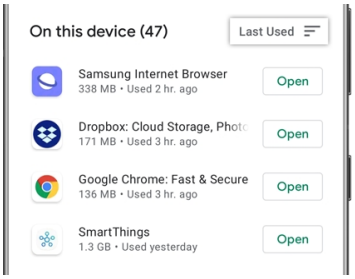


Note: Only apps that are compatible with your device are available for download.

See which apps you've used recently

You can tap the Recents button on the Navigation bar to see your most recently used apps and any apps that are currently running in the background. But, what if you want to know how long it's been since you've even opened an app?

1. Open the Play Store, and tap your profile picture.
2. Tap Manage apps & device, and then tap Manage.
3. Make sure you are on the Installed tab at the top of the screen, and then tap the Sort by icon next to Apps & games; depending on the filter you last used, the Sort by icon may have a different name (i.e. Recently updated, Size, etc.).
4. Tap Most used to see the apps you use the most often, or tap Least used to see the apps you use least often.

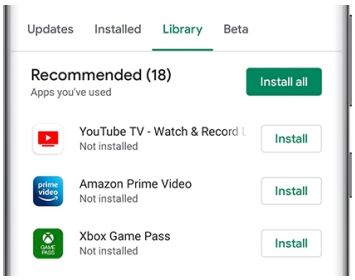


Reinstall paid apps and themes

If you've already purchased an app or a theme, you don't have to purchase it again. Simply reinstall it using the same account you purchased it with.

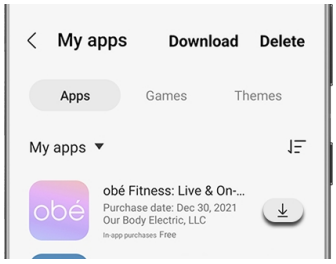
Reinstall Play Store apps

1. If you made a purchase using the Play Store, open the Play Store, and tap your profile picture.
2. Tap Manage apps & device, and then tap Manage.
3. Tap the Installed drop-down menu and select Not installed. Then, select the app you want, and then tap Install.



Reinstall Galaxy Store apps

1. If you originally installed the app using the Galaxy Store, open the Galaxy Store, and then tap Menu (the three horizontal lines).
2. Tap My apps; from the Apps tab, find the missing app and tap the Download icon.



3. If you want to reinstall a purchased theme, tap the Themes tab at the top, and then tap the Download icon.

Note: Galaxy Themes is not available on Galaxy tablets, only phones.

Microsoft apps

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091483



Use Microsoft apps

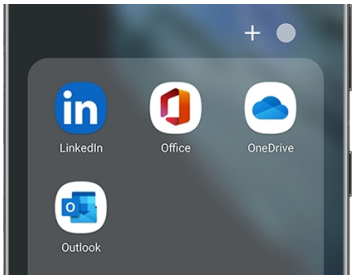
The following Microsoft apps may be preloaded on your device. If they aren't on your device, you can download them from the Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/us/apps/galaxy-store/") or the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps") .

To find your Microsoft apps, swipe up on a Home screen to open the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap the Microsoft folder.

- Outlook ("http://support.office.com/en-us/article/outlook-for-ios-and-android-help-cd84214e-a5 ac-4e95-9ea3-e07f78d0cde6") : Access email, calendar, contacts, tasks, and more in Outlook. The app can also sync your content from Microsoft 365, Gmail, Yahoo! Mail, and more.

  Note: You will need to add an Outlook account to your phone to use this feature.

- LinkedIn ("https://www.linkedin.com/help/linkedin?lang=en") : Connect and network with other professionals around the world. You can create a profile, search for career opportunities, and view updates from companies.



- Office ("https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoft-365/microsoft-office?ocid=oo_support_mix_m arvel_ups_support_smcuhfoffice&rtc=1") : Enjoy Word, Excel, and PowerPoint apps on your mobile device with the Microsoft Office mobile app. Microsoft Office will help you format and present documents to colleagues, family, and friends.

- OneDrive ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060519/") : Store and share photos, videos, documents, and more in your free online OneDrive account. OneDrive is accessible from your personal computer, tablet, or phone.

- Link to Windows ("https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/topic/connect-on-a-new-level-with-link-to-window s-bb7a82b6-7bcd-be1d-ccc8-dddb909bc07b") : You can transfer content between your PC and phone with Link to Windows and the Your Phone ("https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/p/your-phone/9nmpj99vjbwv?activetab=pivot:overviewta b") app. Plus, you can use your mobile apps on your PC.

Use Microsoft apps

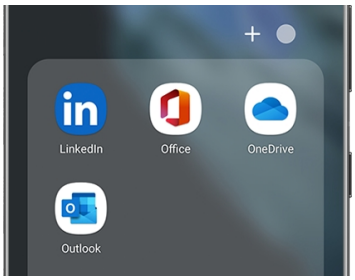
The following Microsoft apps may be preloaded on your device. If they aren't on your device, you can download them from the Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/us/apps/galaxy-store/") or the Google Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/apps") .

To find your Microsoft apps, swipe up on a Home screen to open the Apps screen, and then navigate to and tap the Microsoft folder.

- Outlook ("http://support.office.com/en-us/article/outlook-for-ios-and-android-help-cd84214e-a5 ac-4e95-9ea3-e07f78d0cde6") : Access email, calendar, contacts, tasks, and more in Outlook. The app can also sync your content from Microsoft 365, Gmail, Yahoo! Mail, and more.

  Note: You will need to add an Outlook account to your phone to use this feature.

- LinkedIn ("https://www.linkedin.com/help/linkedin?lang=en") : Connect and network with other professionals around the world. You can create a profile, search for career opportunities, and view updates from companies.



- Office ("https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoft-365/microsoft-office?ocid=oo_support_mix_marvel_ups_support_smcuhfoffice&rtc=1") : Enjoy Word, Excel, and PowerPoint apps on your mobile device with the Microsoft Office mobile app. Microsoft Office will help you format and present documents to colleagues, family, and friends.

- OneDrive ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060519/") : Store and share photos, videos, documents, and more in your free online OneDrive account. OneDrive is accessible from your personal computer, tablet, or phone.

- Link to Windows ("https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/topic/connect-on-a-new-level-with-link-to-window s-bb7a82b6-7bcd-be1d-ccc8-dddb909bc07b") : You can transfer content between your PC and phone with Link to Windows and the Your Phone ("https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/p/your-phone/9nmpj99vjbwv?activetab=pivot:overviewta b") app. Plus, you can use your mobile apps on your PC.

Connections

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091484

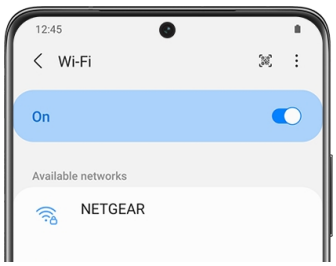


Wi-Fi

Connect your device to a Wi-Fi network to access the internet without using your mobile data.

Connect to a network

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, and then tap the switch to turn on WiFi. When the switch is on, your phone will automatically start scanning for available Wi-Fi networks.
   Note: Tap the QR code icon to connect to a Wi-Fi network by using your device's camera to scan a QR code.



3. Select a network, and then enter a password if required.
4. If the Wi-Fi network you want is not listed after the scan, you can still connect to it by entering the information manually. Swipe to the bottom of the list, and tap + Add network.

   Note: If necessary, ask the Wi-Fi network administrator for the name and password before you begin.
5. Enter the necessary information about the Wi-Fi network, and then tap Save. If you are unsure about what to enter, you can get network information from your router, ISP, or network admin.

   You can enter the following information:

   - Network name: Type the exact name of the network.
   - Security: Select a security option from the list, and enter the password if required.
   - Advanced: Adjust other advanced options, such as IP and Proxy settings.

   Advanced Wi-Fi settings

You can configure connections to various types of Wi-Fi networks and hotspots, manage saved networks, and look up your device's network addresses.

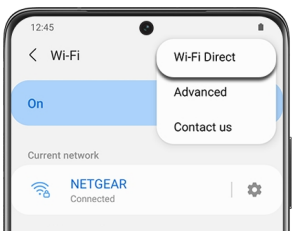
Note: Certain options may vary by carrier.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, and then tap the switch to turn on Wi-Fi.
3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Advanced. Use the switches to enable or disable the following options:
    - Switch to mobile data: When enabled, your device will switch to mobile data whenever the Wi-Fi connection is unstable. When the Wi-Fi signal is strong, it will switch back to Wi-Fi.
    - Turn on Wi-Fi automatically: Turn on Wi-Fi in frequently used locations.
    - Detect suspicious networks: Get notified when suspicious activity is detected on the current Wi-Fi network.
    - Show network quality info: Display network information (such as speed and stability) in the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
    - Wi-Fi power saving mode: Enable Wi-Fi traffic analysis to reduce battery usage.
    - Network notification or Wi-Fi notifications: Receive notifications when open networks are detected.
    - Show Wi-Fi pop-up: Alert me that Wi-Fi is available when opening apps.
    - Manage networks: View saved Wi-Fi networks and configure whether to auto reconnect to or forget individual networks.
    - Wi-Fi control history: View apps that have recently turned your Wi-Fi on or off.
    - Hotspot 2.0: Connect automatically to Wi-Fi networks that support Hotspot 2.0.
    - Install network certificates: Install authentication certificates.

    Wi-Fi Direct

    Wi-Fi Direct uses Wi-Fi to share data between devices. You can disconnect your device from a Wi-Fi Direct device if needed.

    1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections.
    2. Tap Wi-Fi, and then tap the switch to turn on Wi-Fi.
    3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Wi-Fi Direct.

    4. Select a device, and then follow the prompts to connect.
    5. To disconnect from a Wi-Fi Direct device, navigate back to Wi-Fi Direct and then select the

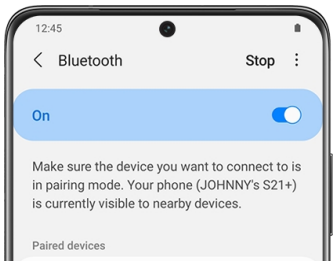
device again.

Bluetooth

You can pair your device to other Bluetooth-enabled devices ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087102/") , like Bluetooth headphones or a Bluetooth-enabled vehicle infotainment system. Once a pairing is created, the devices will remember each other and can exchange information without you entering the passkey again. You can rename a paired device to make it easier to recognize, or unpair from a device if you no longer want to use it.

Connect to a Bluetooth device

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Bluetooth, and then tap the switch to turn on Bluetooth.



3. Your phone will begin scanning, and the other device should be placed in pairing mode. It may be necessary to tap Scan when the other device is ready so your phone will be able to find it.
4. Tap a device and follow the prompts to connect.

   Note: When sharing a file, tap the Bluetooth icon to use this feature.
5. To rename a paired device, tap the Settings icon (the gear) next to the device name, and then tap Rename.
6. Enter a new name, and then tap Rename.
7. To unpair from a device, tap the Settings icon next to the device name, and then tap Unpair.

   Note: When you unpair from a Bluetooth device, the two devices no longer recognize each other, and you will need to pair the device again in order to connect to it.

   Advanced options

   Additional Bluetooth features are available in the Advanced menu. Keep in mind that certain options may vary by carrier.

   1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections, and then tap Bluetooth.
   2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Advanced to use the following options:

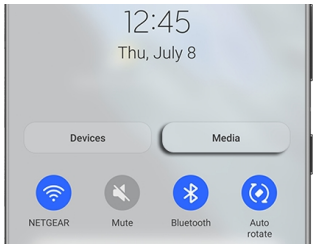
      - Sync with Samsung Cloud: Sync you paired devices with your Samsung account.
      - Music Share: Let friends play music on your Bluetooth speaker or headphones.
      - Ringtone sync: Use your phone's set ringtone when you receive calls through a connected Bluetooth device.

- Bluetooth pairing requests: If you have blocked some Bluetooth devices from pairing, they will be listed here.
- Bluetooth scan history: View apps that have scanned for Bluetooth devices while the screen is off.

Dual audio

You can play audio from your device to two connected Bluetooth audio devices.

1. First, connect the Bluetooth audio device(s) to your device.
2. Swipe down from the top of the screen using two fingers, and then tap Media.
3. Under Audio output, tap the checkmark next to each audio device to play audio on them. Up to two devices can be selected.

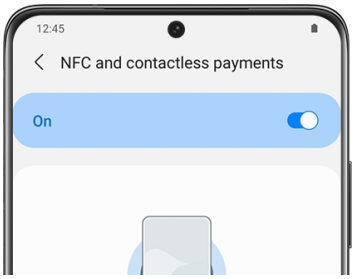


NFC and payment

With NFC technology, you can make payments by using a payment app and touching your phone to a compatible credit card reader.

Note: NFC technology is used with Samsung Pay ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00045081/") . Turn on this feature to see how easy and secure it is to use your device to make payments.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections.
2. Tap NFC and contactless payments, and then tap the switch to turn on this feature.
3. Tap Contactless payments to select your default payment app.



- To use another payment app, tap an available app to choose it.
- To use a payment app that is open, tap Pay with currently open app.
- To set another payment service as the default, tap the Others tab, and then tap the service you prefer.

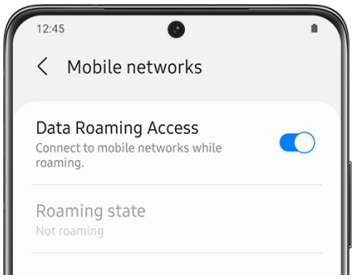
Mobile networks

Configure your device's ability to connect to mobile networks and use mobile data. These features can also help you manage connection settings that may affect your monthly bill.

Note: Certain options may vary by carrier.

Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections, and then tap Mobile networks. The following options will be available:

- Mobile data: Enable mobile data usage.
- International data roaming: Change voice, text, and data roaming settings for international roaming.
- Allow 2G service: Permit the use of 2G service in areas with limited cellular coverage.



- Data roaming: Choose whether to allow your device to connect to mobile data while traveling outside your carrier's network area.
- Data roaming access: Configure access to mobile networks while roaming.
- Roaming or Roaming state: Enable or disable data while roaming on other mobile networks.
- Signal strength: View mobile signal strength.
- Enhanced Calling: Enable enhanced communication using LTE data.
- Network mode: Select which network modes your mobile device can use.
- System select: Change the CDMA roaming mode, if applicable for your carrier.
- Access Point Names: Choose or add APNs, which have the network settings your device needs to connect to your provider.
- Network operators: Choose available and preferred networks.
- Mobile network diagnostics: Collect diagnostic and usage data for troubleshooting.
- Network extenders: Scan for cells that can extend your network connection.

Data usage

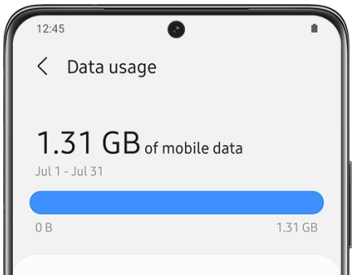
You can check your current mobile and Wi-Fi data usage, as well as customize data warnings and limits.

Turn on Data saver

The Data saver feature helps you reduce your data consumption by preventing selected apps from sending or

receiving data in the background. You can turn it on through your phone's Data usage settings.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Data usage to view your current usage.
3. Tap the switch to turn on Data saver.
4. To allow some apps to have unrestricted data usage, tap Allowed to use data while Data saver is on, and then tap the switch next to each app to specify restrictions.



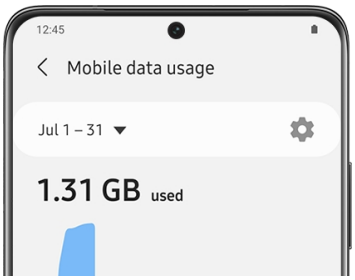
Monitor mobile data

Note: Use these features to keep an eye on your estimated data usage. Certain options may vary by carrier.

You can customize your mobile data access by setting limits and restrictions.

Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections, and then tap Data usage. The following options are available:

- Mobile data: Use mobile data from your plan.
- International data roaming: Enable mobile data services while roaming internationally.
- Mobile data only apps: Set apps to always use mobile data, even when your device is connected to Wi-Fi.



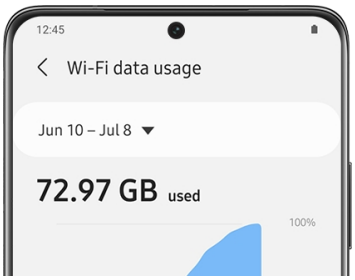
- Alert me about data usage: Enable alerts for when your mobile data usage reaches the amount you chose.
- Mobile data usage: View data usage over mobile connections for a designated period of time. You can view total usage as well as usage by app.
- Billing cycle and data warning: Change the monthly date to align with your carrier’s billing date.

Monitor Wi-Fi data

You can restrict Wi-Fi data access by customizing usage limits and networks. Or, monitor your data usage when roaming off outside of your carrier’s network.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections.
2. Tap Data usage, and then tap Wi-Fi data usage to view data usage over Wi-Fi for a designated period of

time. You can view total usage as well as usage by app.



SIM card manager

Using the eSIM

An eSIM is an embedded version of the physical SIM card on the phone. The eSIM provides connection to your carrier's network, however instead of inserting a card, you will activate it with your carrier account information. You can also use the eSIM alongside a physical SIM to add a second phone number or carrier to your phone.

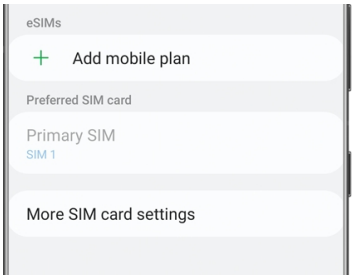
Manage your SIM and eSIM

1. Open Settings and then tap Connections.
2. Tap SIM card manager.

   From here you can tap the switch next to your physical SIM, or activated eSIM to enable or disable their connections. You can also tap Primary SIM to change the default connection for making calls, sending texts, and using data.

   To start using the eSIM, you will need to follow your carrier's instructions.

   - T-Mobile activation ("https://www.t-mobile.com/support/devices/t-mobile-esim")
   - Verizon activation ("https://www.verizon.com/support/knowledge-base-240165/")
   - AT&T activation ("https://www.att.com/help/wireless/esim-get-started/")



Note: Some carriers may not yet support the eSIM capabilities of your Galaxy phone. Contact your carrier if you have any questions about their plans to support eSIM.

Insert the SIM card

If you are upgrading to a new phone or changing carriers, you'll need to install your SIM card to activate service. Your carrier may require additional steps to get your service started, so get in touch with them to make sure your account is ready for the new phone.

Note: If you are changing carriers you may need to have your phone SIM unlocked. Please contact your original carrier for details on their unlocking policies and procedures.

1. Power off your phone and then insert the ejector tool that came with your phone into the hole on the SIM card tray.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.

2. Next, you will want to push the tool until the tray pops out.

3. Carefully line up your SIM card with the smaller cutout on the tray.

4. Verify the card is flush with the tray, and then insert the SIM tray back into the slot on your phone.

5. Now, power on your phone and you’re good to go! If you are prompted for an unlock code, contact the phone's original carrier.



If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

Remove the SIM card

If you ever need to take out your SIM card for any reason, just reverse the steps we mentioned earlier.

1. First, insert the ejector tool into the hole on the SIM card tray, and then push it until the tray pops out.

2. Remove the SIM card from the tray, and then insert the SIM tray back into the slot.



If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary.

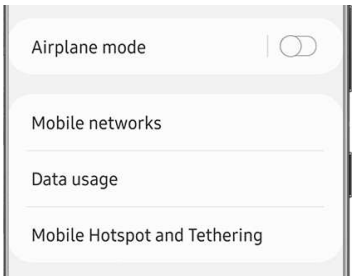
Other connections

Important: The use of mobile devices on an aircraft or a ship may be subject to federal and local guidelines and restrictions. Airplane mode will disable all network connectivity. Ultra-wideband (UWB) is not permitted aboard aircraft or ships and can be turned off by use of Airplane mode. Check with appropriate authorities and always follow crew instructions regarding when and how you may use your device.

Your phone includes additional connection options such as Airplane mode and Mobile hotspot. To navigate to these additional features, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections. The following options will be available:

- Airplane mode: Airplane mode turns off all network connections including calling, texting, mobile data,

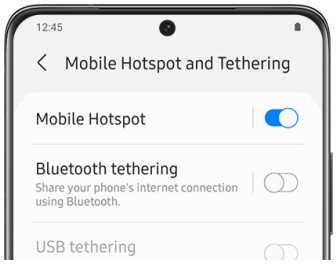
Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth. While Airplane mode is enabled, you can turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth in Settings or from the Quick settings panel. Tap the switch next to Airplane mode to turn it on.



- Tethering: You can use tethering to share your device's internet connection with another device. Keep in mind that certain options may vary by carrier. To use this feature, tap Mobile Hotspot and Tethering. Select from Mobile Hotspot, Bluetooth tethering, USB tethering, or Ethernet tethering.
- Virtual Private Networks: A Virtual Private Network (VPN) allows you to connect to a privately secured network from your device. You will need the connection information from your VPN administrator. To use this feature, tap More connection settings. Tap VPN, then tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Add VPN profile. Enter the VPN network information provided by your network administrator, and tap Save.
- Private DNS: You can configure your device to connect to a private DNS host. To use this feature, tap More connection settings, and then tap Private DNS. Select one of the available options to configure a private DNS connection, and then tap Save.
- Ethernet: If a wireless network connection is not available, you can use an Ethernet cable to connect your device to a local network. To use this feature, tap More connection settings, and then tap Ethernet. Follow the prompts to finish connecting.

  Note: You will need an adapter (not included) to connect an Ethernet cable to your device.
- Mobile hotspot: A Mobile hotspot ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00079036/") uses your data plan to create a Wi-Fi network that can be used by multiple devices. Tap Mobile Hotspot and Tethering, tap Mobile hotspot, and then tap the switch to turn it on. On the devices you want to connect, activate the Wi-Fi connection and select your device's Mobile hotspot. Then, enter the Mobile hotspot password to connect. Connected devices are listed under the Connected devices heading.

  Note: Tap the QR code icon to connect another device to your Mobile hotspot by scanning a QR code instead of entering a password.



- Nearby device scanning: Easily set up connections to other available devices ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") by turning on Nearby device scanning. This feature sends you a notification when there are available devices to connect to. To use this, tap More connection settings. Tap the switch next to Nearby device scanning to turn on the feature.
- Connect to a printer: Connect your device to a printer ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085562/") on the same Wi-Fi network to easily print documents and images from your device. To use a printer, tap More connection settings. Tap Printing, and then tap Default print service. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Add printer. If your printer requires a plugin, tap Download plugin and follow the prompts to add a print service.

Note: Not all apps support printing.

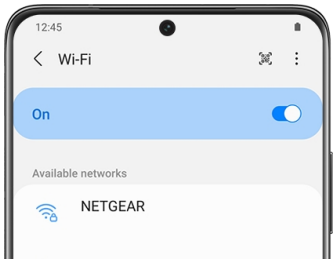
- Network unlock: View your device’s network lock status and check if your device is eligible to be unlocked ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078492/") for use on another mobile network. Keep in mind that certain options may vary by carrier. To use this feature, tap More connection settings. Tap Network unlock to select from Network lock status, Permanent unlock, and Temporary unlock.

Wi-Fi

Connect your device to a Wi-Fi network to access the internet without using your mobile data.

Connect to a network

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, and then tap the switch to turn on WiFi. When the switch is on, your phone will automatically start scanning for available Wi-Fi networks.
   Note: Tap the QR code icon to connect to a Wi-Fi network by using your device's camera to scan a QR code.



3. Select a network, and then enter a password if required.
4. If the Wi-Fi network you want is not listed after the scan, you can still connect to it by entering the information manually. Swipe to the bottom of the list, and tap + Add network.

   Note: If necessary, ask the Wi-Fi network administrator for the name and password before you begin.
5. Enter the necessary information about the Wi-Fi network, and then tap Save. If you are unsure about what to enter, you can get network information from your router, ISP, or network admin.

   You can enter the following information:

   - Network name: Type the exact name of the network.
   - Security: Select a security option from the list, and enter the password if required.
   - Advanced: Adjust other advanced options, such as IP and Proxy settings.

   Advanced Wi-Fi settings

   You can configure connections to various types of Wi-Fi networks and hotspots, manage saved networks, and look up your device's network addresses.

   Note: Certain options may vary by carrier.

   1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
   2. Tap Wi-Fi, and then tap the switch to turn on Wi-Fi.
   3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Advanced. Use the switches to enable or disable the following options:

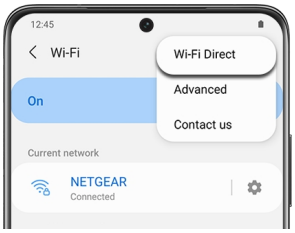
      - Switch to mobile data: When enabled, your device will switch to mobile data whenever the Wi-Fi connection is unstable. When the Wi-Fi signal is strong, it will switch back to Wi-Fi.

- Turn on Wi-Fi automatically: Turn on Wi-Fi in frequently used locations.
- Detect suspicious networks: Get notified when suspicious activity is detected on the current Wi-Fi network.
- Show network quality info: Display network information (such as speed and stability) in the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
- Wi-Fi power saving mode: Enable Wi-Fi traffic analysis to reduce battery usage.
- Network notification or Wi-Fi notifications: Receive notifications when open networks are detected.
- Show Wi-Fi pop-up: Alert me that Wi-Fi is available when opening apps.
- Manage networks: View saved Wi-Fi networks and configure whether to auto reconnect to or forget individual networks.
- Wi-Fi control history: View apps that have recently turned your Wi-Fi on or off.
- Hotspot 2.0: Connect automatically to Wi-Fi networks that support Hotspot 2.0.
- Install network certificates: Install authentication certificates.

Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct uses Wi-Fi to share data between devices. You can disconnect your device from a Wi-Fi Direct device if needed.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, and then tap the switch to turn on Wi-Fi.
3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Wi-Fi Direct.



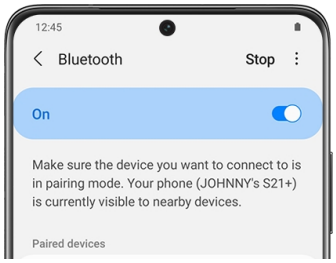
4. Select a device, and then follow the prompts to connect.
5. To disconnect from a Wi-Fi Direct device, navigate back to Wi-Fi Direct and then select the device again.

Bluetooth

You can pair your device to other Bluetooth-enabled devices ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087102/") , like Bluetooth headphones or a Bluetooth-enabled vehicle infotainment system. Once a pairing is created, the devices will remember each other and can exchange information without you entering the passkey again. You can rename a paired device to make it easier to recognize, or unpair from a device if you no longer want to use it.

Connect to a Bluetooth device

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Bluetooth, and then tap the switch to turn on Bluetooth.



3. Your phone will begin scanning, and the other device should be placed in pairing mode. It may be necessary to tap Scan when the other device is ready so your phone will be able to find it.
4. Tap a device and follow the prompts to connect.

   Note: When sharing a file, tap the Bluetooth icon to use this feature.
5. To rename a paired device, tap the Settings icon (the gear) next to the device name, and then tap Rename.
6. Enter a new name, and then tap Rename.
7. To unpair from a device, tap the Settings icon next to the device name, and then tap Unpair.

   Note: When you unpair from a Bluetooth device, the two devices no longer recognize each other, and you will need to pair the device again in order to connect to it.

   Advanced options

   Additional Bluetooth features are available in the Advanced menu. Keep in mind that certain options may vary by carrier.

   1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections, and then tap Bluetooth.
   2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Advanced to use the following options:

      - Sync with Samsung Cloud: Sync you paired devices with your Samsung account.
      - Music Share: Let friends play music on your Bluetooth speaker or headphones.
      - Ringtone sync: Use your phone's set ringtone when you receive calls through a connected Bluetooth device.
      - Bluetooth pairing requests: If you have blocked some Bluetooth devices from pairing, they

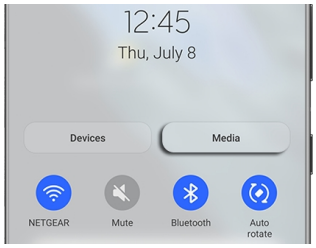
will be listed here.

- Bluetooth scan history: View apps that have scanned for Bluetooth devices while the screen is off.

Dual audio

You can play audio from your device to two connected Bluetooth audio devices.

1. First, connect the Bluetooth audio device(s) to your device.
2. Swipe down from the top of the screen using two fingers, and then tap Media.
3. Under Audio output, tap the checkmark next to each audio device to play audio on them. Up to two devices can be selected.

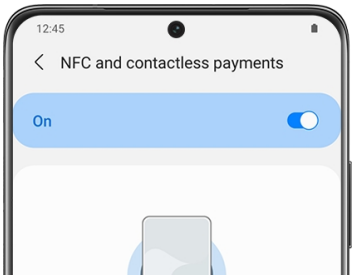


NFC and payment

With NFC technology, you can make payments by using a payment app and touching your phone to a compatible credit card reader.

Note: NFC technology is used with Samsung Pay ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00045081/") . Turn on this feature to see how easy and secure it is to use your device to make payments.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections.
2. Tap NFC and contactless payments, and then tap the switch to turn on this feature.
3. Tap Contactless payments to select your default payment app.



- To use another payment app, tap an available app to choose it.
- To use a payment app that is open, tap Pay with currently open app.
- To set another payment service as the default, tap the Others tab, and then tap the service you prefer.

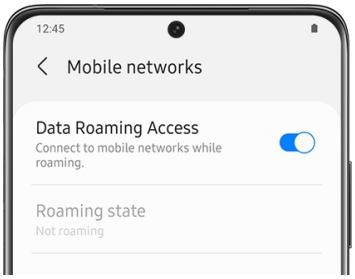
Mobile networks

Configure your device's ability to connect to mobile networks and use mobile data. These features can also help you manage connection settings that may affect your monthly bill.

Note: Certain options may vary by carrier.

Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections, and then tap Mobile networks. The following options will be available:

- Mobile data: Enable mobile data usage.
- International data roaming: Change voice, text, and data roaming settings for international roaming.
- Allow 2G service: Permit the use of 2G service in areas with limited cellular coverage.



- Data roaming: Choose whether to allow your device to connect to mobile data while traveling outside your carrier's network area.
- Data roaming access: Configure access to mobile networks while roaming.
- Roaming or Roaming state: Enable or disable data while roaming on other mobile networks.
- Signal strength: View mobile signal strength.
- Enhanced Calling: Enable enhanced communication using LTE data.
- Network mode: Select which network modes your mobile device can use.
- System select: Change the CDMA roaming mode, if applicable for your carrier.
- Access Point Names: Choose or add APNs, which have the network settings your device needs to connect to your provider.
- Network operators: Choose available and preferred networks.
- Mobile network diagnostics: Collect diagnostic and usage data for troubleshooting.
- Network extenders: Scan for cells that can extend your network connection.

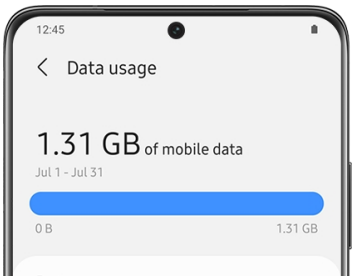
Data usage

You can check your current mobile and Wi-Fi data usage, as well as customize data warnings and limits.

Turn on Data saver

The Data saver feature helps you reduce your data consumption by preventing selected apps from sending or receiving data in the background. You can turn it on through your phone's Data usage settings.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections.
2. Tap Data usage to view your current usage.
3. Tap the switch to turn on Data saver.
4. To allow some apps to have unrestricted data usage, tap Allowed to use data while Data saver is on, and then tap the switch next to each app to specify restrictions.



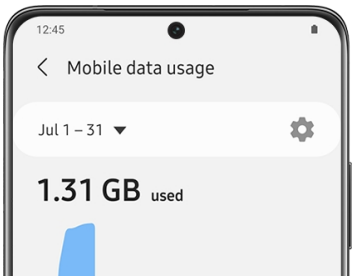
Monitor mobile data

Note: Use these features to keep an eye on your estimated data usage. Certain options may vary by carrier.

You can customize your mobile data access by setting limits and restrictions.

Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. From there, tap Connections, and then tap Data usage. The following options are available:

- Mobile data: Use mobile data from your plan.
- International data roaming: Enable mobile data services while roaming internationally.
- Mobile data only apps: Set apps to always use mobile data, even when your device is connected to Wi-Fi.



- Alert me about data usage: Enable alerts for when your mobile data usage reaches the amount you chose.
- Mobile data usage: View data usage over mobile connections for a designated period of time. You can view total usage as well as usage by app.

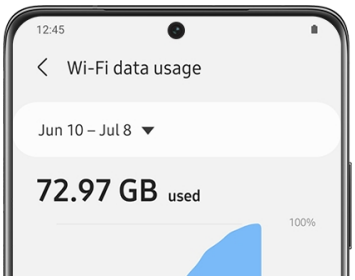
- Billing cycle and data warning: Change the monthly date to align with your carrier's billing date.

Monitor Wi-Fi data

You can restrict Wi-Fi data access by customizing usage limits and networks. Or, monitor your data usage when roaming off outside of your carrier's network.

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections.

2. Tap Data usage, and then tap Wi-Fi data usage to view data usage over Wi-Fi for a designated period of time. You can view total usage as well as usage by app.



SIM cards for your Galaxy phone or tablet

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00079039



SIM cards give you access to your wireless service provider's mobile data network so you can make calls, send messages, and more. They are a vital part of your Galaxy phone or tablet - otherwise, you wouldn't be able to do anything! It's important to know how to insert and remove a SIM card just in case you ever need to change it for a new one.

Note: Available screens and settings may vary by wireless service provider, software version, and device model. SIM cards are provided by your carrier or the retailer where you purchased the device.

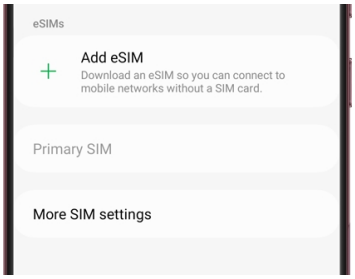
Use the eSIM

An eSIM is an embedded version of the physical SIM card on the device. The eSIM provides connection to your carrier's network, however instead of inserting a card, you will activate it with your carrier account information. You can also use the eSIM alongside a physical SIM to add a second phone number or carrier to your device.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Connections.
2. Tap SIM manager. From here, you can tap the switch next to your physical SIM or activated eSIM to enable or disable their connections. You can also tap Primary SIM to change the default connection for making calls, sending texts, and using data.

   To start using the eSIM, you will need to follow your carrier's instructions:

   - T-Mobile activation ("https://www.t-mobile.com/support/devices/t-mobile-esim")
   - Verizon activation ("https://www.verizon.com/support/knowledge-base-240165/")
   - AT&T activation ("https://www.att.com/help/wireless/esim-get-started/")
   - Xfinity activation ("https://www.xfinity.com/learn/mobile-service/esim")
   - US Cellular activation ("https://www.uscellular.com/support/faq/esim")
   - Visible activation ("https://www.visible.com/esim")
   - Google Fi activation ("https://guidebooks.google.com/fi/getstarted/setupesim?hl=en")



Note: Some carriers may not yet support the eSIM capabilities of your Galaxy device. Contact your carrier if you have any questions about their plans to support eSIM.

eSIM Activation Options:

Carrier Discovery Server

1. Existing eSIM profile is found. Tap Add.
2. eSIM profile is downloaded.
3. Restart device to apply eSIM profile.

Carrier Push Notification

1. eSIM ready Notification appears. Tap the notification and then tap Add.
2. eSIM profile is downloaded.
3. eSIM profile added to device. Restart to apply.

Add an eSIM Options:

Carrier QR Code

1. Navigate to and open Settings, then tap Connections, then tap SIM manager and finally tap Add eSIM.
2. Tap Scan QR code from service provider, then Scan QR code from carrier.
3. Restart device to apply eSIM profile.

Carrier Discovery Server

1. Navigate to and open Settings, then tap Connections, then tap SIM manager and finally tap Add eSIM.
2. Device searches for carrier plan. Once found eSIM profile will download.

   Note: You may need to select your carrier depending on software version and device.
3. Restart device to apply eSIM profile.

Insert the SIM card

Note: If you are changing carriers, you may need to have your device SIM unlocked. Please contact your original carrier for details on their unlocking policies and procedures.

If you are upgrading to a new device or changing carriers, you'll need to install your SIM card to activate service. Your carrier may require additional steps to get your service started, so get in touch with them to make sure your account is ready for the new phone.

1. Power off your device and then insert the ejector tool that came with your device into the hole on the SIM card tray.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.



2. Next, you will want to push the tool until the tray pops out.
3. Carefully line up your SIM card with the smaller cutout on the tray.
4. Verify the card is flush with the tray, and then insert the SIM tray back into the slot on your device.
5. Now, power on your device and you're good to go! If you are prompted for an unlock code, contact the phone's original carrier.

If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

Remove the SIM card

If you ever need to take out your SIM card for any reason, just reverse the steps we mentioned earlier.

1. First, insert the ejector tool into the hole on the SIM card tray, and then push it until the tray pops out.
2. Remove the SIM card from the tray, and then insert the SIM tray back into the slot.

   If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary.



Insert and remove the SIM card on the XCover6 Pro

Note: The XCover6 Pro includes dual SIM card functionality.

Changing out the SIM card on your XCover6 Pro is different from inserting and removing it on other phone models.

1. Remove the phone's back cover, and then remove the battery by lifting it up from the bottom.
2. Next, insert the SIM card in its designated slot.

   Note: You can also insert a memory card above the SIM card slot if desired.



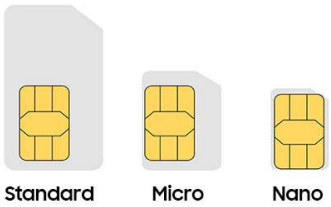
3. Then, replace the battery by sliding it into its slot. Replace the back cover and make sure it snaps into place.
4. To remove the SIM card, first remove the phone's back cover and then the battery.
5. Remove the SIM card from its slot. Then, replace the battery and the back cover.

SIM card sizes

Important: Some carriers may provide all three SIM cards. Be sure to remove the one you need from the pre-scored plastic before inserting it into your phone.

Learn the differences between SIM card sizes below.

- Standard SIM: The largest SIM size, sometimes called mini-SIM and found in older phones.
- Micro-SIM: A medium sized SIM card, popular in previous models.
- Nano-SIM: The smallest SIM size and used by most new phones.



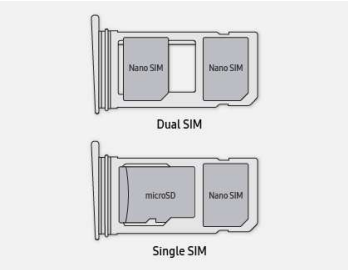
Dual SIM compatibility

Dual SIM features ("https://www.samsung.com/us/smartphones/dual-sim-psim-esim-phones/") are made available on the device by either a physical SIM and eSIM (Hybrid eSIM) or two physical SIM cards (Dual Physical SIM).

The following Hybrid eSIM devices support dual SIM features.

- Galaxy XCover6 Pro
- Galaxy S24 Series
- Galaxy S23 Series
- Galaxy S22 Series
- Galaxy S21 Series

- Galaxy S20 Series
- Galaxy Note 20 Series
- Galaxy Z Fold5, Z Fold4, Z Fold 3, and Z Fold2
- Galaxy Z Flip5, Z Flip4, Z Flip3, and Z Flip 5G
- Galaxy A54 5G, A25 5G, A15 5G
- Galaxy Tab S9 series



The following Unlocked Dual Physical SIM devices support dual SIM features.

Note: Carrier devices do not support these features. Only devices unlocked by Samsung can support dual physical SIM.

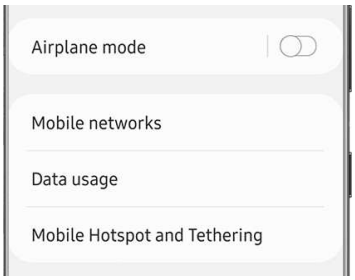
- Galaxy S20 FE, and S21 FE
- Galaxy A14 5G, A15 5G, and A25 5G
- Galaxy A03, A13 LTE, A13 5G, and A53 5G
- Galaxy A02, A12, A32, A42, and A52

Other connections

Important: The use of mobile devices on an aircraft or a ship may be subject to federal and local guidelines and restrictions. Airplane mode will disable all network connectivity. Ultra-wideband (UWB) is not permitted aboard aircraft or ships and can be turned off by use of Airplane mode. Check with appropriate authorities and always follow crew instructions regarding when and how you may use your device.

Your phone includes additional connection options such as Airplane mode and Mobile hotspot. To navigate to these additional features, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the Settings icon. Tap Connections. The following options will be available:

- Airplane mode: Airplane mode turns off all network connections including calling, texting, mobile data, Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth. While Airplane mode is enabled, you can turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth in Settings or from the Quick settings panel. Tap the switch next to Airplane mode to turn it on.



- Tethering: You can use tethering to share your device's internet connection with another device. Keep in mind that certain options may vary by carrier. To use this feature, tap Mobile Hotspot and Tethering. Select from Mobile Hotspot, Bluetooth tethering, USB tethering, or Ethernet tethering.
- Virtual Private Networks: A Virtual Private Network (VPN) allows you to connect to a privately secured network from your device. You will need the connection information from your VPN administrator. To use this feature, tap More connection settings. Tap VPN, then tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Add VPN profile. Enter the VPN network information provided by your network administrator, and tap Save.
- Private DNS: You can configure your device to connect to a private DNS host. To use this feature, tap More connection settings, and then tap Private DNS. Select one of the available options to configure a private DNS connection, and then tap Save.
- Ethernet: If a wireless network connection is not available, you can use an Ethernet cable to connect your device to a local network. To use this feature, tap More connection settings, and then tap Ethernet. Follow the prompts to finish connecting.

  Note: You will need an adapter (not included) to connect an Ethernet cable to your device.
- Mobile hotspot: A Mobile hotspot ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00079036/") uses your data plan to create a Wi-Fi network that can be used by multiple devices. Tap Mobile Hotspot and Tethering, tap Mobile hotspot, and then tap the switch to turn it on. On the devices you want to connect, activate the Wi-Fi connection and select your device's Mobile hotspot. Then, enter the Mobile hotspot password to connect. Connected devices are listed under the Connected devices heading.

  Note: Tap the QR code icon to connect another device to your Mobile hotspot by scanning a QR code instead of entering a password.



- Nearby device scanning: Easily set up connections to other available devices ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") by turning on Nearby device scanning. This feature sends you a notification when there are available devices to connect to. To use this, tap More connection settings. Tap the switch next to Nearby device scanning to turn on the feature.

- Connect to a printer: Connect your device to a printer ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085562/") on the same Wi-Fi network to easily print documents and images from your device. To use a printer, tap More connection settings. Tap Printing, and then tap Default print service. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Add printer. If your printer requires a plugin, tap Download plugin and follow the prompts to add a print service.

  Note: Not all apps support printing.

- Network unlock: View your device's network lock status and check if your device is eligible to be unlocked ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078492/") for use on another mobile network. Keep in mind that certain options may vary by carrier. To use this feature, tap More connection settings. Tap Network unlock to select from Network lock status, Permanent unlock, and Temporary unlock.

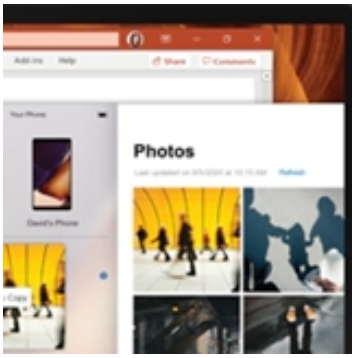
How to use Samsung Apps Continuity on Galaxy devices

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00090662

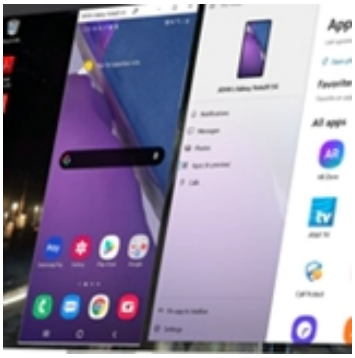
Between phones and tablets to Windows



Calls & messages on PC ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087322/") : Use Link to Windows to respond to calls and messages on your PC.



Share & transfer files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087324/") : Use Link to Windows to send files from your Galaxy phone to your Windows PC.



Screen Mirror to PC ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087325/") : Use Link to Windows to mirror your Galaxy phone's screen on your PC.

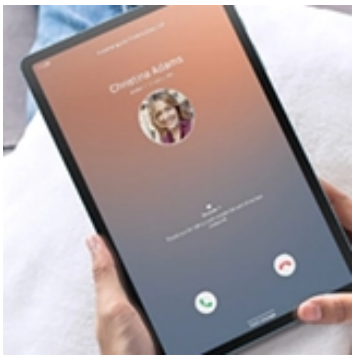


Copy & paste ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088545/") : Copy information on a Galaxy phone, and then paste it on a different Galaxy device.



Extend your PC screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088544/") : Use your Galaxy tablet ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/tablets/all-tablets/") as an extended screen for your PC.

Between phones and tablets to Wearables

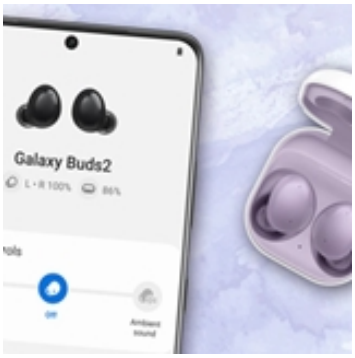


Calls & messages on tablets ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00083152/") : Make and receive calls on your tablet using the Call & text on other devices feature.

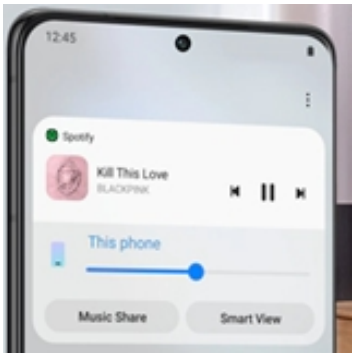


Switch between paired devices ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080621/") : With Auto

switch, you can easily switch between paired devices.

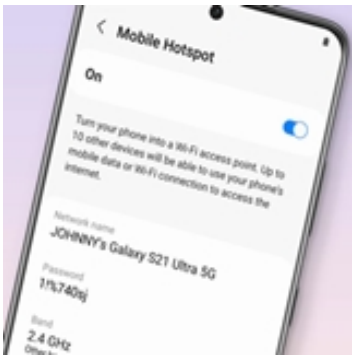


Connect Galaxy Buds ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00086702/") : Connect to your phone, tablet, watch, TV, and more to enjoy uninterrupted sound.

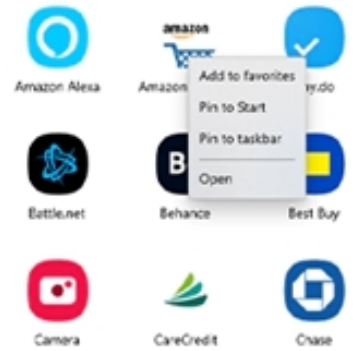


Control media & devices ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00084723/") : Media output and Device control panels let you swap between controlling music or your connected devices.

App continuity between multiple devices



Mobile Hotspot ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00079036/") : Activate a mobile hotspot on your phone or tablet to let other devices connect to the internet



Android apps on Windows ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080621/") : Link to Windows allows full interaction with Android apps on a PC.



Video calls ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00084942/") : See your friends and family face to face using video calls on your Galaxy phone, tablet, or PC.



Share files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") : Easily share files directly to other compatible phones with Nearby Share on your Galaxy phone.

Security

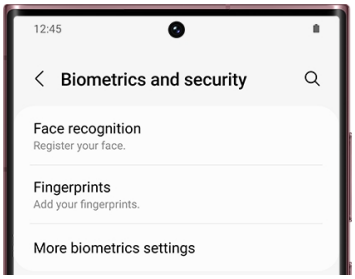
https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091485



Change the security features

Whether you want to use face recognition to sign in to your phone, update your phone's software, or set up Samsung Pass, you can find everything you need in the Biometrics and security menu. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Biometrics and security. The following options will be available:

- Face recognition: You can unlock your phone and verify yourself when using apps with face recognition. Tap Face recognition ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062630/") , then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to register your unique face.
- Fingerprints: You can unlock your phone and verify yourself when using apps with your fingerprints. Tap Fingerprints ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00082563/") , then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to register your fingerprint. You can add additional fingerprints to your phone as well.



- More biometric settings: You can turn on the option for Show unlock transition effect when unlocking your phone, or check the security patch version.
- Google Play Protect: Google Play Protect regularly checks your apps and phone for harmful or concerning behavior. You can manually scan for threats by tapping Google Play Protect, and then tapping Scan. You'll see recently scanned apps from this screen as well.
- Security update: This option lets you access different update settings for your phone. You can check for software updates ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077582/") , view your software update history, view Smart updates, and use the Software Upgrade Assistant.
- Google Play system update: Check for available Google Play system updates for your phone. Tap Google Play system update, and then tap Download & install. Your phone may need to restart to finish installing. If prompted, tap Restart now.
- Find My Mobile: Find My Mobile helps you locate your missing Galaxy device ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080182/") , such as a phone, tablet, watch, or earbuds. You can use the Find My Mobile website ("https://findmymobile.samsung.com/") to locate and

remotely lock or unlock your device, or you can select from the available options in this menu. These options include Remote unlock, Send last location, and Offline finding.

- Samsung Pass: Samsung Pass ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062705/") will keep your apps and accounts secure by authenticating your identity with biometric data. Samsung Pass will remember your login information for apps and websites as well.
- Secure Folder: If you need to store private or sensitive information, such as files and photos, you can use Secure Folder ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00081123/") . This folder will stay locked so only you can access it.
- Secure Wi-Fi: You can use Secure Wi-Fi ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00089784/") when connecting to public or unsecured networks. Tap Secure Wi-Fi, then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.
- Private Share: If you're concerned about sending personal information, you can use Private Share ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") to protect your messages and files. Only the people you choose will be allowed to see your information. Tap Private Share, then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.
- Samsung Blockchain Keystore: You can store private keys and virtual assets in Samsung Blockchain ("https://www.samsung.com/global/galaxy/apps/samsung-blockchain/") Keystore and Wallet. Tap Samsung Blockchain Keystore, then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up. You can create a new Wallet or connect a Wallet you've used previously.
- Install unknown apps: This menu lets you install unknown apps if desired. Keep in mind that installing apps from this menu may put your phone and data at risk. It is recommended to install apps from the Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/games?hl=en&gl=US") and Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/us/apps/galaxy-store/") .
- Encrypt or decrypt SD card: Encrypting your SD card ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") will protect your data, since an encrypted SD card can only be read on the device that was used to encrypt it. Tap Encrypt or decrypt SD card, and then enter your security credentials if you have a screen lock set up. Review the information, and then tap Encrypt SD card. To decrypt the SD card, tap Decrypt SD card.

  Note: This setting may not appear unless you have a SD card inserted in your phone.
- Other security settings: Manage your preferences for additional security settings, such as password visibility, administrative apps, and credentials.

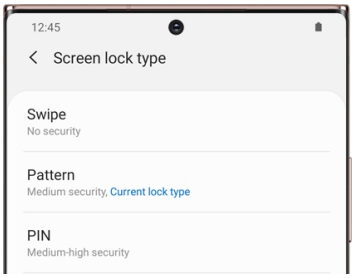
Set up a Lock screen and security

Set up a basic phone lock screen

To ensure your phone's security, you can set up a phone lock to use a password, PIN, or Pattern. That way, even if someone gets their hands on your phone, they won't be able to access it.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Lock screen. Then, tap Screen lock type and select your desired type of lock. Follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.

Here are the basic Screen lock types:



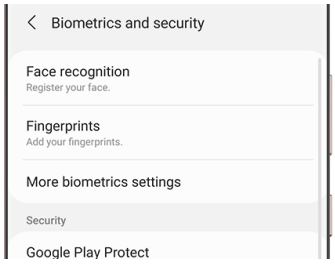
- Swipe: Swipe the screen to unlock it.
- Pattern: Create a pattern that you draw on the screen to unlock.
- PIN: Select a PIN to unlock the screen.
- Password: Create a password for unlocking the screen.
- None: No screen lock.

Set up Biometric security phone lock

Note: The Iris Scan and Intelligent Scan features are only available on S8/S8+, S9/S9+, Note8, and Note9.

You can also set up Biometric security so you can unlock your phone with your face, your fingerprints, or even your eyes!

1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Biometrics and security.
2. Then, select your desired type of phone lock, such as fingerprints, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.



   Here is a basic rundown of the available biometric options:

   - Fingerprints: Use fingerprint recognition ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00082563/") to unlock the screen.
   - Face recognition: Use facial recognition ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062630/") to unlock your phone.
   - Iris: Use iris recognition to unlock the screen. Only available on select phones.
   - Intelligent Scan: Use face and iris recognition together for better accuracy and security. Only available on select phones.

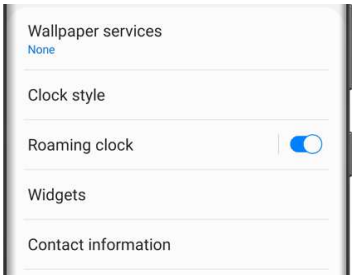
3. Once you've set up a biometric security feature, make sure that you have it set on your Lock screen. For example, you need to have Fingerprint unlock activated if you want to unlock your phone with your fingerprints.
4. From the Biometrics and security page, just tap your desired biometric feature, and make sure the appropriate switch (i.e. Fingerprint unlock, Face unlock) is turned on.

Lock screen display settings

Not only does the Lock screen display time and notifications, it also lets you access apps and features without

unlocking your Galaxy phone. With certain settings, you can get quick access to the camera, your schedules, alarms, and even contact information right from the Lock screen.

From Settings, tap Lock screen. Use the following settings to customize your Lock screen's appearance:



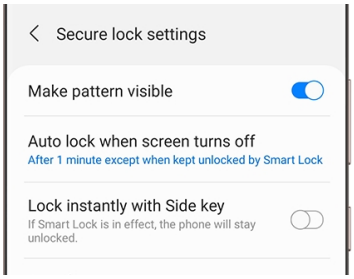
- Wallpaper services: Set up a Dynamic Lock screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00084210/") or Samsung Global Goals to get alternating wallpapers with special themes.
- Clock style: Set the style and color for the clock on the Lock screen and Always On Display.
- Roaming clock: You can set your home time zone. Your home time zones and local time zones will be displayed when you are roaming.
- Widgets: You can set the Lock screen and the Always On Display feature to display things like Music controller, Today's schedule, your Next Alarm, and Digital Wellbeing.
- Contact information: You can add your contact information and it will be displayed on the Lock screen.
- Notifications: Adjust the style and settings for notifications that appear on your Lock screen.
- Shortcuts: Select apps to open from the Lock screen.

Secure phone lock settings

For extra protection, you can set up secure lock settings, such as an automatic screen lock when your phone is idle. However, these settings won't show up until after you've already made a Lock screen.

From Settings, tap Lock screen, and then tap Secure lock settings. Enter your current lock screen credentials. Then, turn your desired Secure lock settings on or off by tapping the switch.

- Make pattern visible: Choose whether or not the pattern appears on the screen when you draw it. This option will only appear if you have a pattern set as your Lock screen.



- Auto lock when screen turns off: Set a time limit for when your phone will lock, such as 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 1 minute, or 5 minutes.
- Lock instantly with Side key: Set your phone to lock instantly when you press the Side key.
- Auto factory reset: After 15 incorrect attempts to unlock your phone, it will be reset to factory default settings, and all data will be erased, including files and downloaded apps.
- Lock network and security: Keep network and security-related functions locked while your phone is

locked, making it easier to locate and protect if it's lost or stolen.

- Show Lockdown option: Display a Power button option that turns off Smart Lock, biometrics unlock, and notifications on the Lock screen.

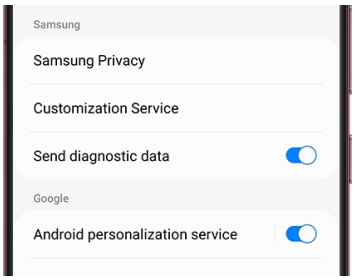
Samsung privacy settings

Samsung privacy settings

Your device comes with several privacy settings to help keep your personal data secure. In the Samsung privacy section, you can dictate app permissions as well as customize the advertising content you see in your apps.

To get to the Privacy section, navigate to Settings, and then tap Privacy. The following settings are available in the Samsung section:

- Samsung Privacy: Review Samsung's privacy guidelines for additional information.
- Customization Service: Allows you to personalize the content you receive in your apps, such as ads and marketing. You can also manage your personal data, erase your personal data, and disable customization services on other devices.
- Send diagnostic data: Allow Samsung to collect diagnostic data from your device to improve its services.



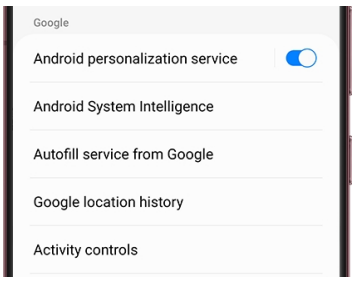
You can also access the Permission manager from the Privacy screen to configure your desired permissions for the camera and microphone, as well as other services. Tap Permission manager, and then tap Camera or Microphone. Next, select an app to change the permissions. Choose your desired option, such as Allow or Don't Allow.

Note: Depending on the service you choose, the options may also say "Allowed only while using the app" or "Ask every time."

Google privacy settings

Google offers additional privacy settings as well. From this section, you can enable location services, ads, and personalized recommendations on your device. To find this section, navigate to Settings, and then tap Privacy. The following settings will be available in the Google section:

- Android personalization service: Turn this on to receive personalized content based on your app usage.

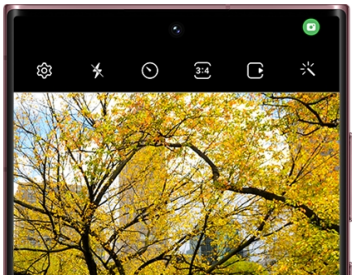


- Android System Intelligence: View suggestions based on the content you look at. Your device will store this data for future use as well. You can also clear your device's learned data.
- Autofill service from Google: Allows you to automatically fill in certain information when browsing websites, such as passwords, addresses, and credit card information. You can edit your information at any time if you receive a new credit card, or if you prefer not to use Autofill.
- Google location history: Enable this to save your device's location. Google will then suggest personalized maps when you're traveling.
- Activity controls: Your device will save your website and app activity to provide you with faster searching.
- Ads: Reset your advertising ID or disable apps from using your ID.
- Usage & diagnostics: Allow Google to collect diagnostic data from your device to improve its services.

Check which apps are using the camera or microphone

When an app is using either the camera or microphone, you'll see a small green dot in the top right corner of your device's screen.

Maybe you have multiple apps opened and you're unsure which one is accessing the camera or microphone. There is a simple way to check this; when the green dot is on the screen, swipe down from the top to open the Notification panel, and then tap the green dot. You'll see a pop-up notification with the app's icon, as well as information about the camera or microphone. Then, you can find and close the app if you need to.



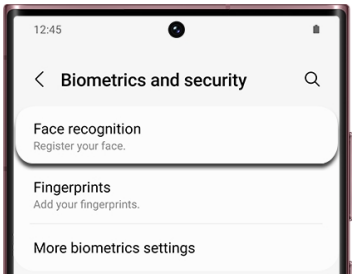
Use Facial recognition security

Set up Facial recognition

Note: To use Face recognition, you need to set a PIN, Pattern, or Password first.

Your face is unique to you, which makes it one of the best security features in your arsenal.

1. From Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Face recognition.
2. Tap Continue. If you don't already have a secure screen lock, you will need to set one up.
3. Hold the phone 8-20 inches away and position your face inside the circle. Hold the position until the progress bar reaches 100%. You may be prompted to remove your glasses to finish the process.
4. When you're done, adjust your desired settings, and then tap Done.



You can now unlock your phone by just looking at it! However, if you've set up a lock screen with Face recognition, your screen may request a PIN, Pattern, or Password under the following conditions:

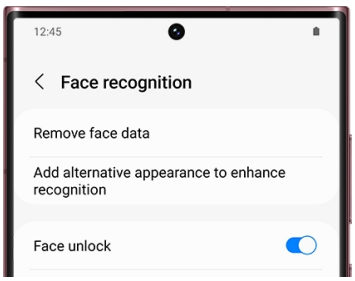
- At least once every 24 hours.
- If 4 hours have passed without using the device.
- If the device has been restarted.

  Note: These additional checks are to help keep your phone secure.

Facial recognition options

Once your face is registered to your device, you can use additional security options and settings. To access these options, navigate to Settings, and then tap Biometrics and security. Tap Face recognition, and then enter your security credentials. The following will be available:

- Remove face data: Delete the current face recognition data that is stored.
- Add alternative appearance to enhance recognition: This is useful if you change your hairstyle, facial hair, or make up.
- Face unlock: Unlocks your device when your face is recognized.
- Stay on Lock screen until swipe: Remain on the Lock screen until you swipe even if you already used Face recognition.



- Faster recognition: This will improve the recognition speed but also reduces security, increasing the possibility of a video or image being incorrectly recognized as your face.
- Require open eyes: For added security, the device will only recognize your face when your eyes are open.
- Brighten screen: Increase screen brightness temporarily so your face can be recognized in the dark.

Tips for Facial recognition

Show your face and your device unlocks: it doesn't get much easier than that. If you are having some difficulty, here are some facial recognition tips.

- Glasses, hats, masks, makeup, bangs, and beards can affect the recognition process. Adding an alternative look can help the device recognize you in different situations.
- Make sure you are in a well-lit area and the camera lens is clean.

- For best results, make sure your image is not blurry.
- Face recognition is less secure than Pattern, PIN, Iris, or Fingerprint.
- Keep in mind your device can be unlocked by someone that looks similar to you (such as a twin).
- If you are having trouble unlocking your device, you can use Find My Mobile and other methods ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001570/") to remotely unlock it.

  If you are having difficulty unlocking with Face recognition, try the face registration again. Remove the current face data by opening Settings, and then tapping Biometrics and security. Tap Face recognition and then enter your credentials. You can now tap Remove face data to clear the facial recognition data so that you can have a fresh start.

Set up and use the fingerprint sensor

Find the fingerprint scanner's location

Note: The A10e, A01, and A02 do not have fingerprint scanners.

Depending on which Galaxy phone or tablet you have, the fingerprint scanner may be in a different location. Make sure you know the location before you start registering your prints.

Phones with an in-display fingerprint reader:

- S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra (Ultrasonic sensor)
- S21 5G, S21+ 5G, and S21 Ultra 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- S20 5G, S20+ 5G, and S20 Ultra 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- S10, S10+, and S10 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- Note20 5G and Note20 Ultra 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- Note10, Note10+, and Note10+ 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- A50, A51, A53, A71, A42 5G, and A52 5G (Optical sensor)

Phones with a fingerprint reader on the back:

- A11, A20, and A21
- S8, S8+, S9, and S9+
- Note8 and Note9

  Tablets with an in-display fingerprint reader:

  - Tab S5e, S6, S7, and S8

Other locations for the fingerprint scanner:

- The Z Fold's and Z Fold2's scanners are located below the Side key. The Z Fold4 and Z Fold3's scanner is on the Side key itself.
- The Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, Z Flip3, and the Z Flip4's scanners are located on the Side key.
- S10e has the scanner on the Power key.

- The A23 5G, A32, A13 5G, A13, A12 and A03s fingerprint scanners are located on the Side key.

Phones with a fingerprint scanner on the Home key:

- S7 and S7 edge
- S6 and S6 edge

  Tablets with a fingerprint scanner on the Home key:

  - Tab S2 and S3

Set up and use fingerprint security

It's time to set up fingerprint security and register your prints. The steps will be almost exactly the same, no matter what device you have. The only difference will be where the fingerprint sensor is located.

1. Navigate to Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Fingerprints.
2. Enter your lock screen credentials. If you do not have a screen lock set up, you may be prompted to create one at this point. When you're ready, read the information, and then tap Continue.
3. Use the on-screen prompts to register your fingerprint. When registering your fingerprint, make sure to fully cover the fingerprint sensor with your finger to prevent strong light from entering the fingerprint sensor. When you're finished, tap Done.
4. Next, make sure that the switch next to Fingerprint unlock is turned on.

   Note: If the fingerprint sensor on your device is located on the Side key or below the Side key, you can disable the "Fingerprint always on" option to prevent accidental unlocks.
5. To unlock your device using your finger, tap the screen or press the Power key or Side key. Then, place the registered finger on the fingerprint scanner, wherever it's located. The device will automatically unlock if it recognizes your fingerprint.

Once your fingerprint data is registered, review the security options and settings:

- Rename a fingerprint: Tap the desired fingerprint, enter the new name, and then tap Save.
- Remove fingerprint data: Tap your desired fingerprint, and then tap Remove.
- Add fingerprint: Add additional fingerprints to your tablet.
- Check added fingerprints: Test your registered fingerprints to see if the tablet recognizes them.
- Fingerprint unlock: Unlocks your tablet when your fingerprint is recognized.
- Show an icon when screen if off: Choose when a fingerprint icon appears on your screen. You can choose between Always on Display, Tap to show, and Never.
- Fingerprint always on: You can scan your fingerprint even when the screen is off.
- Show animation when unlocking: Show an unlock animation when scanning your fingerprint.
- About unlocking with biometrics: View information about unlocking your device using biometrics.
- About fingerprints: View tips for unlocking your device.

Keep in mind that when your device has restarted or if your device has not been used for more than 24 hours, you'll need to use your PIN, password, or pattern instead of your fingerprint.

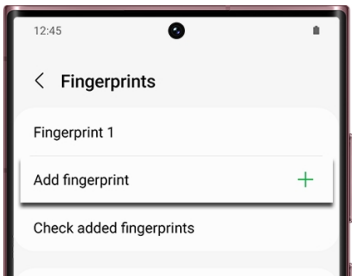
Note: Some devices may come with a pre-installed plastic screen protector designed to work with the in-screen

sensor. Installing another screen protector may affect fingerprint recognition.

Add additional fingerprints

It may be more natural to use a different fingerprint to unlock your device if you're holding it in another hand, or in another orientation. Thankfully, you can add multiple fingerprints so you can unlock your device however you hold it.

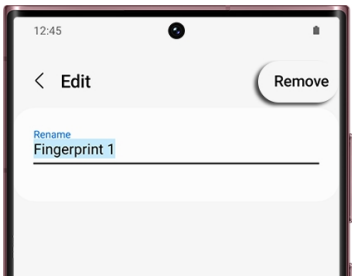
1. From Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Fingerprints.
2. Enter your secure screen lock credentials and then tap Add fingerprint.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts to add the fingerprint, and then tap Done.



Remove a fingerprint from your device

Although their fingerprint sensors are in different places, removing a fingerprint is exactly the same on all devices with Android 9.0 or higher.

1. From Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Fingerprints.
2. Next, enter your security credentials and then tap the fingerprint you want to delete (e.g., Fingerprint 1).
3. Tap Remove and then tap Remove again to confirm.



Note: Removing all registered fingerprints will turn off the Fingerprint unlock feature by default.

Trouble unlocking device with fingerprint

If you are having trouble unlocking your device because the fingerprint sensor isn't recognizing your prints, try entering your regular PIN, password, or pattern. If that still does not work, you can try remotely unlocking your device using the Find My Mobile feature or another method. Please read our guide on Unable to unlock Samsung phone or tablet's screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001570/") to learn more.

Set up and use Samsung Pass

Set up Samsung Pass

Note: You must be signed into your Samsung account to use Samsung Pass.

Do you want to sign in by having your phone scan your fingerprints? You can register your fingerprint data when setting up Samsung Pass. On certain device models, you will also be able to scan your iris to authenticate your identity.

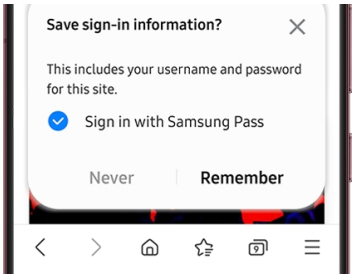
1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Samsung Pass.
2. Tap Continue, and then sign in with your Samsung account credentials.
3. Tap Continue to begin setting up your biometric data. Select Pattern, PIN, or Password, and then follow the prompts.
   Note: If your device includes an iris scanner, there will also be an option to use iris identification.
4. Next, you will need to register your fingerprint. Follow the on screen prompts, and then tap Done.
5. You can now sign in to Samsung Pass using your biometric data.

If you experience issues when setting up Samsung Pass, receive errors, or see a temporarily not available message, you can try switching your network connection. Or, turn off Wi-Fi and only use Mobile data.

Use Samsung Pass

Now you can start using Samsung Pass to sign in to websites and apps.

Open Samsung Internet and navigate to your favorite website where you will need to sign into your account. After signing into your account, Samsung Pass will ask if you want to save the account information. Tap Remember. The next time you sign into the website, all you have to do is scan your biometrics instead of filling in the account information.

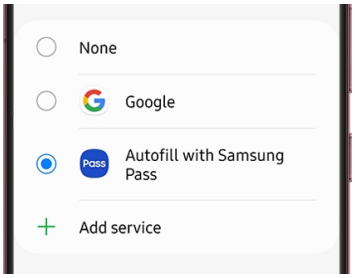


Note: Samsung Pass only works with Samsung Internet and other supported apps.

Turn Autofill on and off

If you have Samsung Pass set up, you'll be prompted to use your biometric data when you log into one of your accounts. Here's how to use the Autofill service:

1. Navigate to and open Settings, then tap General management, and then tap Passwords and autofill.
2. Tap Autofill with Samsung Pass, and then make sure Autofill with Samsung Pass is selected.
3. You may also select Google; however, we highly recommend using Samsung Pass as it is powered by Samsung Knox, a defense-grade mobile security platform.

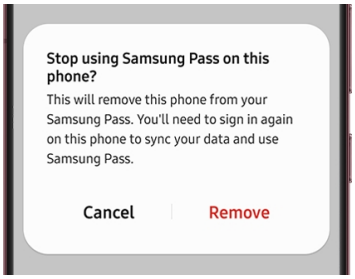


Note: To turn this service off, follow these same steps but tap None instead.

Turn Samsung Pass off

You don’t want to use Samsung Pass anymore? No problem, you can turn it off whenever you want. For security reasons, Samsung Pass will be reset to its default settings and all related data (including biometrics data) will be deleted.

1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Samsung Pass.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
3. Tap See all devices using Samsung Pass, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots) next to the device you'd like to remove.
4. Tap Remove on the pop-up and all Samsung Pass data will be removed from that device, and Samsung Pass will be reset.



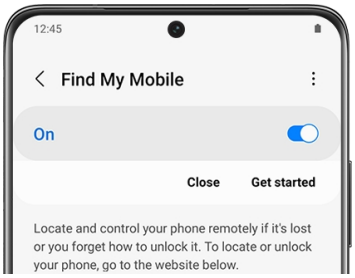
Find My Mobile

Turn on Remote controls and Remote unlock on your phone

Before you can access your phone from your computer or the Find My Mobile website ("https://findmymobile.samsung.com/") , the Remote controls feature on your phone must be on.

From your phone, navigate to Settings. Search for and select Find My Mobile, and then tap Find My Mobile again. Tap the switch at the top of the page. Adding a Samsung account to your phone will turn this feature on automatically, but it's always good to double-check.

You can also turn on Remote unlock from the same screen. This feature will let you unlock your phone using the Find My Mobile website if you ever forget your password. Just tap the switch next to Remote unlock, and then use the on-screen instructions to finish.

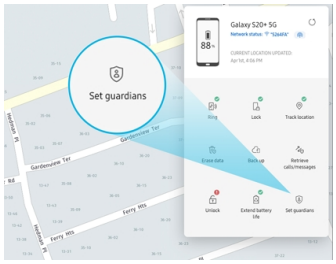


Set a Guardian for your device

Find My Mobile will allow you to set a Guardian, or a specific person, who can access your device if there's an emergency. A Guardian will be able to locate your device for you, enable Emergency mode, and monitor the device's battery life.

1. To set up a Guardian, first navigate to the Find My Mobile website ("https://findmymobile.samsung.com/") .

2. Select Sign in, and then enter your Samsung account credentials. Select SIGN IN. It needs to be the same Samsung account associated with the phone or tablet.
3. You'll see a map with your device's location. To search for a different device, select it from the list on the left side.
4. Select Set guardians on the right. Confirm and agree to the Guardian mode information.



5. Select + Add new guardian, and enter their Samsung account information.
6. Select Verify to make sure the information is correct, and then choose Always or Custom to set the Guardian's access. If you choose Custom, you can determine the start and end date for their access.
7. You can edit a Guardian by selecting Set Guardian, and then selecting Edit Guardian.
8. To remove a Guardian from your account, select Set Guardian, and then select Remove Guardian.

Find My Mobile requirements for your phone or tablet

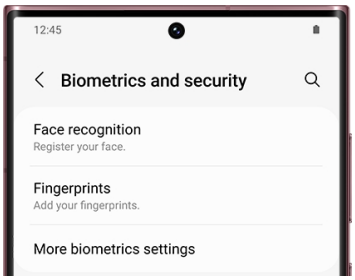
In order to use Find My Mobile, these conditions must be met:

- The phone or tablet must be turned on.
- The device must be connected to a stable network connection.
- A Samsung account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") must be added to your device.
- Remote controls must be enabled on the device. This feature will be turned on by default when you add a Samsung account to your device.
- Remote unlock must be activated in order to use the Find My Mobile unlock feature.

Change the security features

Whether you want to use face recognition to sign in to your phone, update your phone's software, or set up Samsung Pass, you can find everything you need in the Biometrics and security menu. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Biometrics and security. The following options will be available:

- Face recognition: You can unlock your phone and verify yourself when using apps with face recognition. Tap Face recognition ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062630/") , then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to register your unique face.
- Fingerprints: You can unlock your phone and verify yourself when using apps with your fingerprints. Tap Fingerprints ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00082563/") , then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to register your fingerprint. You can add additional fingerprints to your phone as well.



- More biometric settings: You can turn on the option for Show unlock transition effect when unlocking your phone, or check the security patch version.
- Google Play Protect: Google Play Protect regularly checks your apps and phone for harmful or concerning behavior. You can manually scan for threats by tapping Google Play Protect, and then tapping Scan. You'll see recently scanned apps from this screen as well.
- Security update: This option lets you access different update settings for your phone. You can check for software updates ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00077582/") , view your software update history, view Smart updates, and use the Software Upgrade Assistant.
- Google Play system update: Check for available Google Play system updates for your phone. Tap Google Play system update, and then tap Download & install. Your phone may need to restart to finish installing. If prompted, tap Restart now.
- Find My Mobile: Find My Mobile helps you locate your missing Galaxy device ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00080182/") , such as a phone, tablet, watch, or earbuds. You can use the Find My Mobile website ("https://findmymobile.samsung.com/") to locate and remotely lock or unlock your device, or you can select from the available options in this menu. These options include Remote unlock, Send last location, and Offline finding.
- Samsung Pass: Samsung Pass ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062705/") will keep your apps and accounts secure by authenticating your identity with biometric data. Samsung Pass will remember your login information for apps and websites as well.
- Secure Folder: If you need to store private or sensitive information, such as files and photos, you can use Secure Folder ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00081123/") . This folder will stay locked so only you can access it.
- Secure Wi-Fi: You can use Secure Wi-Fi ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00089784/") when connecting to public or unsecured networks. Tap Secure Wi-Fi, then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.

- Private Share: If you’re concerned about sending personal information, you can use Private Share ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00087283/") to protect your messages and files. Only the people you choose will be allowed to see your information. Tap Private Share, then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.

- Samsung Blockchain Keystore: You can store private keys and virtual assets in Samsung Blockchain ("https://www.samsung.com/global/galaxy/apps/samsung-blockchain/") Keystore and Wallet. Tap Samsung Blockchain Keystore, then tap Continue, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up. You can create a new Wallet or connect a Wallet you’ve used previously.

- Install unknown apps: This menu lets you install unknown apps if desired. Keep in mind that installing apps from this menu may put your phone and data at risk. It is recommended to install apps from the Play Store ("https://play.google.com/store/games?hl=en&gl=US") and Galaxy Store ("https://www.samsung.com/us/apps/galaxy-store/") .

- Encrypt or decrypt SD card: Encrypting your SD card ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") will protect your data, since an encrypted SD card can only be read on the device that was used to encrypt it. Tap Encrypt or decrypt SD card, and then enter your security credentials if you have a screen lock set up. Review the information, and then tap Encrypt SD card. To decrypt the SD card, tap Decrypt SD card.

  Note: This setting may not appear unless you have a SD card inserted in your phone.

- Other security settings: Manage your preferences for additional security settings, such as password visibility, administrative apps, and credentials.

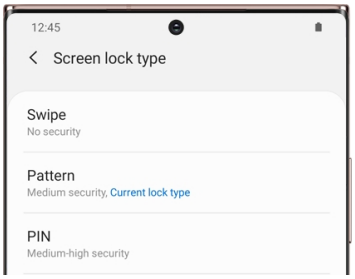
Set up a Lock screen and security

Set up a basic phone lock screen

To ensure your phone's security, you can set up a phone lock to use a password, PIN, or Pattern. That way, even if someone gets their hands on your phone, they won't be able to access it.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Lock screen. Then, tap Screen lock type and select your desired type of lock. Follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.

Here are the basic Screen lock types:



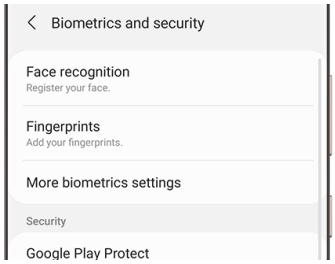
- Swipe: Swipe the screen to unlock it.
- Pattern: Create a pattern that you draw on the screen to unlock.
- PIN: Select a PIN to unlock the screen.
- Password: Create a password for unlocking the screen.
- None: No screen lock.

Set up Biometric security phone lock

Note: The Iris Scan and Intelligent Scan features are only available on S8/S8+, S9/S9+, Note8, and Note9.

You can also set up Biometric security so you can unlock your phone with your face, your fingerprints, or even your eyes!

1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Biometrics and security.
2. Then, select your desired type of phone lock, such as fingerprints, and then follow the on-screen instructions to set it up.



Here is a basic rundown of the available biometric options:

- Fingerprints: Use fingerprint recognition ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00082563/") to unlock the screen.
- Face recognition: Use facial recognition (

"https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062630/") to unlock your phone.

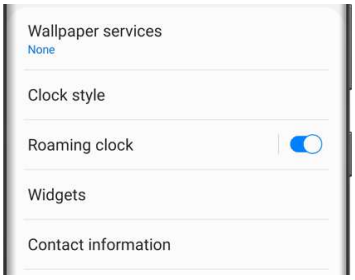
- Iris: Use iris recognition to unlock the screen. Only available on select phones.
- Intelligent Scan: Use face and iris recognition together for better accuracy and security. Only available on select phones.

3. Once you've set up a biometric security feature, make sure that you have it set on your Lock screen. For example, you need to have Fingerprint unlock activated if you want to unlock your phone with your fingerprints.
4. From the Biometrics and security page, just tap your desired biometric feature, and make sure the appropriate switch (i.e. Fingerprint unlock, Face unlock) is turned on.

Lock screen display settings

Not only does the Lock screen display time and notifications, it also lets you access apps and features without unlocking your Galaxy phone. With certain settings, you can get quick access to the camera, your schedules, alarms, and even contact information right from the Lock screen.

From Settings, tap Lock screen. Use the following settings to customize your Lock screen's appearance:



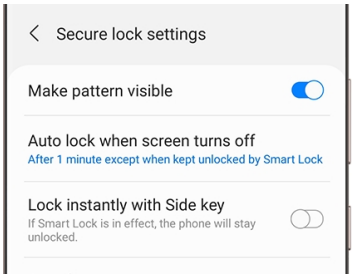
- Wallpaper services: Set up a Dynamic Lock screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00084210/") or Samsung Global Goals to get alternating wallpapers with special themes.
- Clock style: Set the style and color for the clock on the Lock screen and Always On Display.
- Roaming clock: You can set your home time zone. Your home time zones and local time zones will be displayed when you are roaming.
- Widgets: You can set the Lock screen and the Always On Display feature to display things like Music controller, Today's schedule, your Next Alarm, and Digital Wellbeing.
- Contact information: You can add your contact information and it will be displayed on the Lock screen.
- Notifications: Adjust the style and settings for notifications that appear on your Lock screen.
- Shortcuts: Select apps to open from the Lock screen.

Secure phone lock settings

For extra protection, you can set up secure lock settings, such as an automatic screen lock when your phone is idle. However, these settings won't show up until after you've already made a Lock screen.

From Settings, tap Lock screen, and then tap Secure lock settings. Enter your current lock screen credentials. Then, turn your desired Secure lock settings on or off by tapping the switch.

- Make pattern visible: Choose whether or not the pattern appears on the screen when you draw it. This option will only appear if you have a pattern set as your Lock screen.



- Auto lock when screen turns off: Set a time limit for when your phone will lock, such as 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 1 minute, or 5 minutes.
- Lock instantly with Side key: Set your phone to lock instantly when you press the Side key.
- Auto factory reset: After 15 incorrect attempts to unlock your phone, it will be reset to factory default settings, and all data will be erased, including files and downloaded apps.
- Lock network and security: Keep network and security-related functions locked while your phone is locked, making it easier to locate and protect if it’s lost or stolen.
- Show Lockdown option: Display a Power button option that turns off Smart Lock, biometrics unlock, and notifications on the Lock screen.

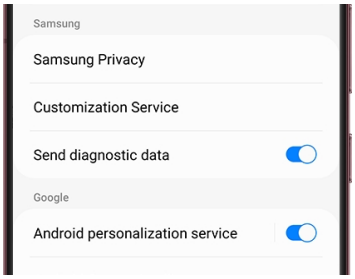
Samsung privacy settings

Samsung privacy settings

Your device comes with several privacy settings to help keep your personal data secure. In the Samsung privacy section, you can dictate app permissions as well as customize the advertising content you see in your apps.

To get to the Privacy section, navigate to Settings, and then tap Privacy. The following settings are available in the Samsung section:

- Samsung Privacy: Review Samsung's privacy guidelines for additional information.
- Customization Service: Allows you to personalize the content you receive in your apps, such as ads and marketing. You can also manage your personal data, erase your personal data, and disable customization services on other devices.
- Send diagnostic data: Allow Samsung to collect diagnostic data from your device to improve its services.



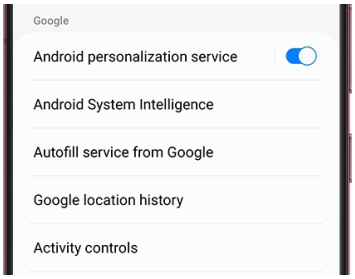
You can also access the Permission manager from the Privacy screen to configure your desired permissions for the camera and microphone, as well as other services. Tap Permission manager, and then tap Camera or Microphone. Next, select an app to change the permissions. Choose your desired option, such as Allow or Don't Allow.

Note: Depending on the service you choose, the options may also say "Allowed only while using the app" or "Ask every time."

Google privacy settings

Google offers additional privacy settings as well. From this section, you can enable location services, ads, and personalized recommendations on your device. To find this section, navigate to Settings, and then tap Privacy. The following settings will be available in the Google section:

- Android personalization service: Turn this on to receive personalized content based on your app usage.



- Android System Intelligence: View suggestions based on the content you look at. Your device will store this data for future use as well. You can also clear your device's learned data.
- Autofill service from Google: Allows you to automatically fill in certain information when browsing

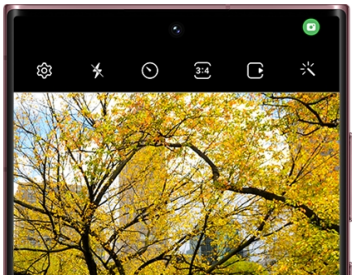
websites, such as passwords, addresses, and credit card information. You can edit your information at any time if you receive a new credit card, or if you prefer not to use Autofill.

- Google location history: Enable this to save your device’s location. Google will then suggest personalized maps when you're traveling.
- Activity controls: Your device will save your website and app activity to provide you with faster searching.
- Ads: Reset your advertising ID or disable apps from using your ID.
- Usage & diagnostics: Allow Google to collect diagnostic data from your device to improve its services.

Check which apps are using the camera or microphone

When an app is using either the camera or microphone, you’ll see a small green dot in the top right corner of your device's screen.

Maybe you have multiple apps opened and you're unsure which one is accessing the camera or microphone. There is a simple way to check this; when the green dot is on the screen, swipe down from the top to open the Notification panel, and then tap the green dot. You’ll see a pop-up notification with the app’s icon, as well as information about the camera or microphone. Then, you can find and close the app if you need to.



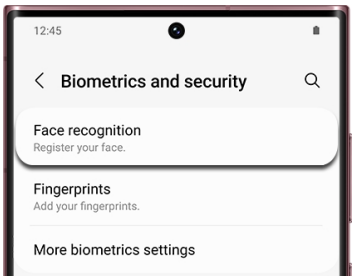
Use Facial recognition security

Set up Facial recognition

Note: To use Face recognition, you need to set a PIN, Pattern, or Password first.

Your face is unique to you, which makes it one of the best security features in your arsenal.

1. From Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Face recognition.
2. Tap Continue. If you don't already have a secure screen lock, you will need to set one up.
3. Hold the phone 8-20 inches away and position your face inside the circle. Hold the position until the progress bar reaches 100%. You may be prompted to remove your glasses to finish the process.
4. When you're done, adjust your desired settings, and then tap Done.



You can now unlock your phone by just looking at it! However, if you've set up a lock screen with Face recognition, your screen may request a PIN, Pattern, or Password under the following conditions:

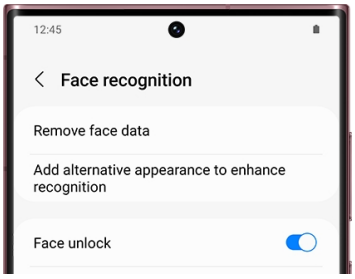
- At least once every 24 hours.
- If 4 hours have passed without using the device.
- If the device has been restarted.

  Note: These additional checks are to help keep your phone secure.

Facial recognition options

Once your face is registered to your device, you can use additional security options and settings. To access these options, navigate to Settings, and then tap Biometrics and security. Tap Face recognition, and then enter your security credentials. The following will be available:

- Remove face data: Delete the current face recognition data that is stored.
- Add alternative appearance to enhance recognition: This is useful if you change your hairstyle, facial hair, or make up.
- Face unlock: Unlocks your device when your face is recognized.
- Stay on Lock screen until swipe: Remain on the Lock screen until you swipe even if you already used Face recognition.



- Faster recognition: This will improve the recognition speed but also reduces security, increasing the possibility of a video or image being incorrectly recognized as your face.
- Require open eyes: For added security, the device will only recognize your face when your eyes are open.
- Brighten screen: Increase screen brightness temporarily so your face can be recognized in the dark.

Tips for Facial recognition

Show your face and your device unlocks: it doesn't get much easier than that. If you are having some difficulty, here are some facial recognition tips.

- Glasses, hats, masks, makeup, bangs, and beards can affect the recognition process. Adding an alternative look can help the device recognize you in different situations.
- Make sure you are in a well-lit area and the camera lens is clean.
- For best results, make sure your image is not blurry.
- Face recognition is less secure than Pattern, PIN, Iris, or Fingerprint.
- Keep in mind your device can be unlocked by someone that looks similar to you (such as a twin).
- If you are having trouble unlocking your device, you can use Find My Mobile and other methods ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001570/") to remotely unlock it.

  If you are having difficulty unlocking with Face recognition, try the face registration again. Remove the current face data by opening Settings, and then tapping Biometrics and security. Tap Face recognition and then enter your credentials. You can now tap Remove face data to clear the facial recognition data so that you can have a fresh start.

Set up and use the fingerprint sensor

Find the fingerprint scanner's location

Note: The A10e, A01, and A02 do not have fingerprint scanners.

Depending on which Galaxy phone or tablet you have, the fingerprint scanner may be in a different location. Make sure you know the location before you start registering your prints.

Phones with an in-display fingerprint reader:

- S22, S22+, and S22 Ultra (Ultrasonic sensor)
- S21 5G, S21+ 5G, and S21 Ultra 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- S20 5G, S20+ 5G, and S20 Ultra 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- S10, S10+, and S10 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- Note20 5G and Note20 Ultra 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- Note10, Note10+, and Note10+ 5G (Ultrasonic sensor)
- A50, A51, A53, A71, A42 5G, and A52 5G (Optical sensor)

Phones with a fingerprint reader on the back:

- A11, A20, and A21
- S8, S8+, S9, and S9+
- Note8 and Note9

  Tablets with an in-display fingerprint reader:

  - Tab S5e, S6, S7, and S8

Other locations for the fingerprint scanner:

- The Z Fold's and Z Fold2's scanners are located below the Side key. The Z Fold4 and Z Fold3's scanner is on the Side key itself.
- The Z Flip, Z Flip 5G, Z Flip3, and the Z Flip4's scanners are located on the Side key.
- S10e has the scanner on the Power key.
- The A23 5G, A32, A13 5G, A13, A12 and A03s fingerprint scanners are located on the Side key.

Phones with a fingerprint scanner on the Home key:

- S7 and S7 edge
- S6 and S6 edge

  Tablets with a fingerprint scanner on the Home key:

  - Tab S2 and S3

Set up and use fingerprint security

It's time to set up fingerprint security and register your prints. The steps will be almost exactly the same, no matter what device you have. The only difference will be where the fingerprint sensor is located.

1. Navigate to Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Fingerprints.
2. Enter your lock screen credentials. If you do not have a screen lock set up, you may be prompted to create one at this point. When you're ready, read the information, and then tap Continue.
3. Use the on-screen prompts to register your fingerprint. When registering your fingerprint, make sure to fully cover the fingerprint sensor with your finger to prevent strong light from entering the fingerprint sensor. When you're finished, tap Done.
4. Next, make sure that the switch next to Fingerprint unlock is turned on.

   Note: If the fingerprint sensor on your device is located on the Side key or below the Side key, you can disable the "Fingerprint always on" option to prevent accidental unlocks.
5. To unlock your device using your finger, tap the screen or press the Power key or Side key. Then, place the registered finger on the fingerprint scanner, wherever it's located. The device will automatically unlock if it recognizes your fingerprint.

Once your fingerprint data is registered, review the security options and settings:

- Rename a fingerprint: Tap the desired fingerprint, enter the new name, and then tap Save.
- Remove fingerprint data: Tap your desired fingerprint, and then tap Remove.
- Add fingerprint: Add additional fingerprints to your tablet.
- Check added fingerprints: Test your registered fingerprints to see if the tablet recognizes them.
- Fingerprint unlock: Unlocks your tablet when your fingerprint is recognized.
- Show an icon when screen if off: Choose when a fingerprint icon appears on your screen. You can choose between Always on Display, Tap to show, and Never.
- Fingerprint always on: You can scan your fingerprint even when the screen is off.
- Show animation when unlocking: Show an unlock animation when scanning your fingerprint.
- About unlocking with biometrics: View information about unlocking your device using biometrics.
- About fingerprints: View tips for unlocking your device.

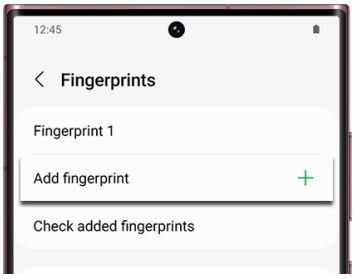
Keep in mind that when your device has restarted or if your device has not been used for more than 24 hours, you'll need to use your PIN, password, or pattern instead of your fingerprint.

Note: Some devices may come with a pre-installed plastic screen protector designed to work with the in-screen sensor. Installing another screen protector may affect fingerprint recognition.

Add additional fingerprints

It may be more natural to use a different fingerprint to unlock your device if you're holding it in another hand, or in another orientation. Thankfully, you can add multiple fingerprints so you can unlock your device however you hold it.

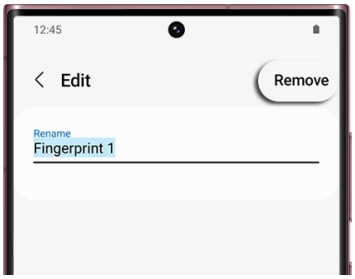
1. From Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Fingerprints.
2. Enter your secure screen lock credentials and then tap Add fingerprint.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts to add the fingerprint, and then tap Done.



Remove a fingerprint from your device

Although their fingerprint sensors are in different places, removing a fingerprint is exactly the same on all devices with Android 9.0 or higher.

1. From Settings, tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Fingerprints.
2. Next, enter your security credentials and then tap the fingerprint you want to delete (e.g., Fingerprint 1).
3. Tap Remove and then tap Remove again to confirm.



Note: Removing all registered fingerprints will turn off the Fingerprint unlock feature by default.

Trouble unlocking device with fingerprint

If you are having trouble unlocking your device because the fingerprint sensor isn't recognizing your prints, try entering your regular PIN, password, or pattern. If that still does not work, you can try remotely unlocking your device using the Find My Mobile feature or another method. Please read our guide on Unable to unlock Samsung phone or tablet's screen ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001570/") to learn more.

Set up and use Samsung Pass

Set up Samsung Pass

Note: You must be signed into your Samsung account to use Samsung Pass.

Do you want to sign in by having your phone scan your fingerprints? You can register your fingerprint data when setting up Samsung Pass. On certain device models, you will also be able to scan your iris to authenticate your identity.

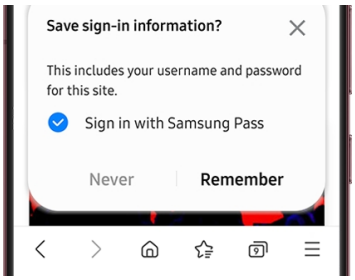
1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Samsung Pass.
2. Tap Continue, and then sign in with your Samsung account credentials.
3. Tap Continue to begin setting up your biometric data. Select Pattern, PIN, or Password, and then follow the prompts.
   Note: If your device includes an iris scanner, there will also be an option to use iris identification.
4. Next, you will need to register your fingerprint. Follow the on screen prompts, and then tap Done.
5. You can now sign in to Samsung Pass using your biometric data.

If you experience issues when setting up Samsung Pass, receive errors, or see a temporarily not available message, you can try switching your network connection. Or, turn off Wi-Fi and only use Mobile data.

Use Samsung Pass

Now you can start using Samsung Pass to sign in to websites and apps.

Open Samsung Internet and navigate to your favorite website where you will need to sign into your account. After signing into your account, Samsung Pass will ask if you want to save the account information. Tap Remember. The next time you sign into the website, all you have to do is scan your biometrics instead of filling in the account information.

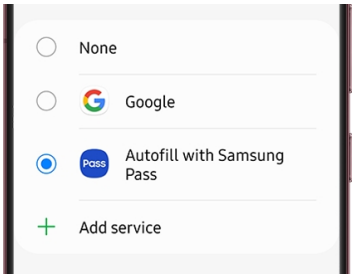


Note: Samsung Pass only works with Samsung Internet and other supported apps.

Turn Autofill on and off

If you have Samsung Pass set up, you'll be prompted to use your biometric data when you log into one of your accounts. Here's how to use the Autofill service:

1. Navigate to and open Settings, then tap General management, and then tap Passwords and autofill.
2. Tap Autofill with Samsung Pass, and then make sure Autofill with Samsung Pass is selected.
3. You may also select Google; however, we highly recommend using Samsung Pass as it is powered by Samsung Knox, a defense-grade mobile security platform.

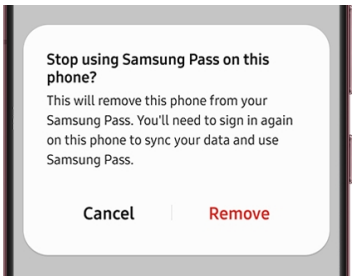


Note: To turn this service off, follow these same steps but tap None instead.

Turn Samsung Pass off

You don’t want to use Samsung Pass anymore? No problem, you can turn it off whenever you want. For security reasons, Samsung Pass will be reset to its default settings and all related data (including biometrics data) will be deleted.

1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Biometrics and security, and then tap Samsung Pass.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Settings.
3. Tap See all devices using Samsung Pass, and then tap More options (the three vertical dots) next to the device you'd like to remove.
4. Tap Remove on the pop-up and all Samsung Pass data will be removed from that device, and Samsung Pass will be reset.



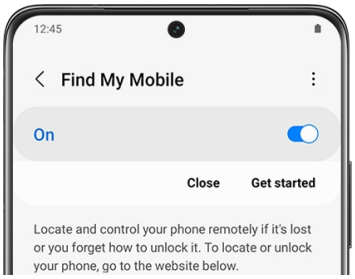
Find My Mobile

Turn on Remote controls and Remote unlock on your phone

Before you can access your phone from your computer or the Find My Mobile website ("https://findmymobile.samsung.com/") , the Remote controls feature on your phone must be on.

From your phone, navigate to Settings. Search for and select Find My Mobile, and then tap Find My Mobile again. Tap the switch at the top of the page. Adding a Samsung account to your phone will turn this feature on automatically, but it's always good to double-check.

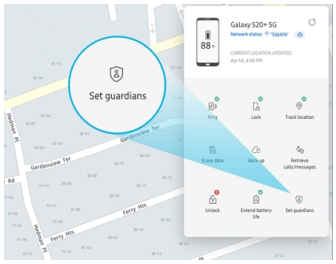
You can also turn on Remote unlock from the same screen. This feature will let you unlock your phone using the Find My Mobile website if you ever forget your password. Just tap the switch next to Remote unlock, and then use the on-screen instructions to finish.



Set a Guardian for your device

Find My Mobile will allow you to set a Guardian, or a specific person, who can access your device if there's an emergency. A Guardian will be able to locate your device for you, enable Emergency mode, and monitor the device's battery life.

1. To set up a Guardian, first navigate to the Find My Mobile website ("https://findmymobile.samsung.com/") .
2. Select Sign in, and then enter your Samsung account credentials. Select SIGN IN. It needs to be the same Samsung account associated with the phone or tablet.
3. You'll see a map with your device's location. To search for a different device, select it from the list on the left side.
4. Select Set guardians on the right. Confirm and agree to the Guardian mode information.



5. Select + Add new guardian, and enter their Samsung account information.
6. Select Verify to make sure the information is correct, and then choose Always or Custom to set the Guardian's access. If you choose Custom, you can determine the start and end date for their access.
7. You can edit a Guardian by selecting Set Guardian, and then selecting Edit Guardian.

8. To remove a Guardian from your account, select Set Guardian, and then select Remove Guardian.

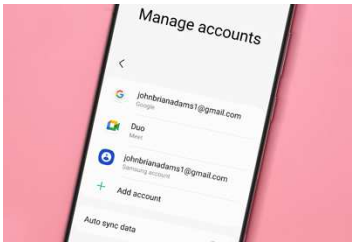
Find My Mobile requirements for your phone or tablet

In order to use Find My Mobile, these conditions must be met:

- The phone or tablet must be turned on.
- The device must be connected to a stable network connection.
- A Samsung account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") must be added to your device.
- Remote controls must be enabled on the device. This feature will be turned on by default when you add a Samsung account to your device.
- Remote unlock must be activated in order to use the Find My Mobile unlock feature.

Accounts & Backup

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091486

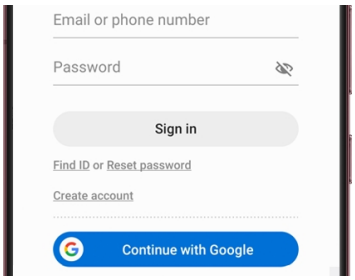


Add an account

Add a Samsung account

The best way to get the most from your Galaxy phone or tablet is to add a Samsung account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") , so you can experience all of the exclusive features.

To add a Samsung account, navigate to Settings, and then Samsung account at the top. Then, enter your Samsung account info to sign in. If you don't already have an account, don't worry. Just tap Create account to make one, or create one on the Samsung ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") Account ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") website ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") .



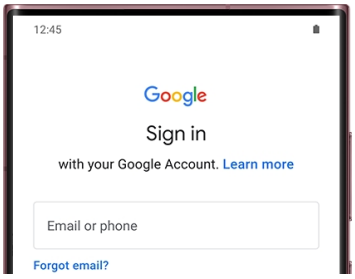
Once your Samsung account is added, you can manage ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085942/") and edit your account preferences, like changing your password if needed.

Add a Google account

Can't live without Google? To use the Google Play Store and download apps from it, you need to add a Google account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") .

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap Add account. Tap Google, and then enter your Google account information to sign in.

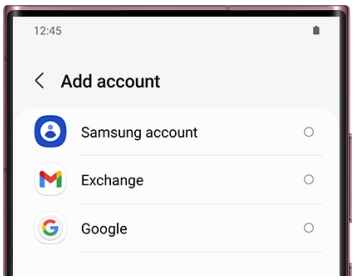
When you add your Google account, you'll be able to access emails using the Gmail app on your phone or tablet, as well as use Google apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00089082/") and Google services ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062640/") .



Add an email account

Last but not least, add an email account and receive your emails through the Email app.

Navigate to Settings, and then swipe to and select Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap Add account. Tap your email provider and then enter your account credentials. Depending on your provider, there may be additional requirements to complete the setup on your device. If needed, sign into your account via the internet, and then turn on access to allow use of the app.



If necessary, you can download and install the Samsung Email app using Galaxy Store ("https://galaxy.store/samsunge") or **Play Store** (**"https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.email.provider& ;hl=en_US" style="font-weight: bold;"**) , or download and install the app for your email provider. After installing, open the app and select the desired email account you wish to add. Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the setup.

Account settings

Access your account settings on the phone or tablet to sync data to your account as well as other devices signed into the same account. Some accounts will allow you to access your profile and other options. Each account has its custom settings, but you can configure common settings for all accounts of the same type.

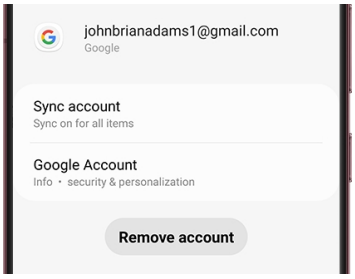
Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap an account to customize its settings.

Note: Account settings and available features vary between account types.

Remove an account

If needed, you can easily remove your accounts ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062033/" title="remove your account") whenever you want, whether it's a Samsung, Google, or email account. You can always add them again later on, using the same steps in the previous sections.

Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap the account. Next, tap Remove account. Some accounts may have additional steps like entering your password, so check the screen for any extra steps.



Back up and restore

Content types that can be backed up using Samsung Cloud

Note: Individual files over 1GB will not be uploaded.

Backing up your data is a little different than syncing ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060641/") . When you back up, you save your device's files to the cloud, so they can be redownloaded later. These files won't automatically appear on your other devices unless you manually restore them. Syncing, on the other hand, automatically adds updated information to a device.

Below are some apps on your phone or tablet that support the back up and restore feature. We've also listed what kinds of data will be backed up from these apps:

- Call logs: Call and message history
- Clock: Alarms, world clocks, and timers
- Apps: Installation files and app settings
- Calendar: Events and tasks saved on your phone or tablet
- Messages: Enhanced messages, multimedia messages, and text messages
- Contacts: Contacts, email addresses, and business cards saved on your phone, tablet, or USIM
- Home screen: Layout, wallpapers, and Samsung DeX settings (your default wallpapers won't be backed up)
- Settings: Accessibility settings, ringtones, Samsung Keyboard options, Wi-Fi settings, and Always on Display settings (your default ringtone won't be backed up)
- Voice Recorder: Saved audio clips recorded using the Voice Recorder app
- Samsung Daily: Your personalized content preferences and settings
  Note: Samsung Daily is only available on select phones, such as the S8. Newer phones use Samsung News instead; however, this service cannot be backed up.

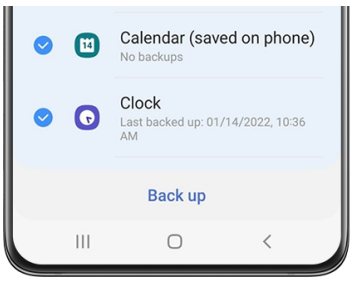
Back up your Samsung Cloud data

Make sure you don't lose that precious video of your baby's first steps. Manually back up your data whenever you have new files, so you can relive your special moments.

Manual backup

1. From Settings, tap your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Samsung Cloud.
3. Select the data you'd like to back up, such as Messages or Calendar, and then tap Back up at the bottom of the screen.

4. The backup will begin uploading to the cloud. It may take some time if you have a lot of files.
5. Feel free to navigate away while the backup is in process. It will continue in the background and a notification will appear when it is complete.



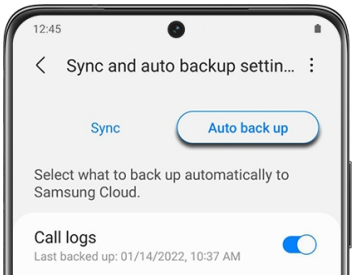
To learn more about the syncing process, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap More information.

Automatic backup

When you enable the Automatic backup feature in Samsung Cloud, your data is backed up automatically once every 24 hours, as long as your phone or tablet is charging and connected to a Wi-Fi network. The screen also needs to be off for at least an hour. You can also customize what files are automatically backed up.

1. From Settings, navigate to and tap Accounts and backup.
2. Tap Manage accounts, and then select your Samsung account.
3. Tap Sync account, and then tap Auto back up.

   Note: If the Auto back up option does not appear, your carrier does not support this feature.
4. Tap the switch next to the data you'd like to back up, such as Messages or Calendar. That's it!

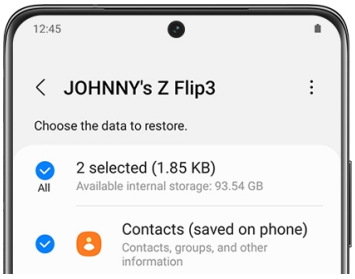


Note: Content will not automatically back up if the cloud storage is full.

Restore backup data using Samsung Cloud

Once everything is backed up on Samsung Cloud, restoring your data is simple. You can even transfer it to another device using the Restore feature.

1. From Settings, tap your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Samsung Cloud, and then tap Restore data.
3. Select your desired device backup, and then select the content you want to restore.
4. Next, tap Restore, and then tap Install if prompted.
5. The backup will begin downloading. It may take some time if you have a lot of files.
6. Tap Done when it's finished.

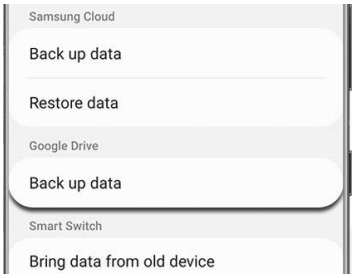


Back up and restore using Google

Google is another great option to back up and restore your data. Your Google account can be used to sync data between multiple devices, just by logging in to the same account on each device.

1. Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup.
2. Tap Back up data under Google Drive. If prompted, sign in using your Google account credentials.
3. Tap Back up now to begin syncing your data.
4. To restore your data, tap the switch next to Automatic restore under Google account.

   Note: The Automatic restore option may not be available on all models.

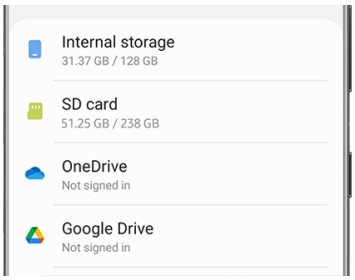


Back up data with a microSD card

If you'd rather use a method that doesn't require the internet, you can try using a microSD card. Simply insert one into your phone or tablet and then copy ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") your ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") to the card with the My Files app, so they'll be safe and sound.

Restoring backed up files is as easy as backing them up! Just copy them to the phone or tablet, or even copy them to another device.

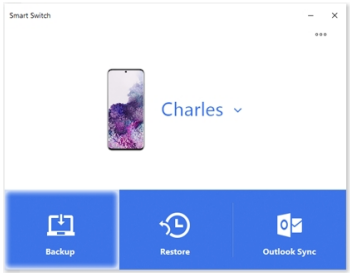
Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards.



Back up with Smart Switch on PC

Smart Switch on your PC ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00048603/") is another great option for backing up your contacts, music, photos, and more. You can use this method if you need to transfer content to a new Galaxy phone, or if you'd like to have an extra backup just in case.

After you've made a backup of your files on your PC or Mac, just connect your new phone using a USB cable. Then, you can move your data to your phone! Or, access your data another time if you need to restore it.

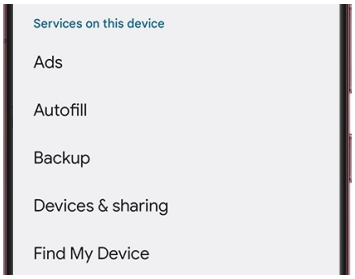


Manage Google settings

Did you search for cats on Google and now you're getting endless cat ads? No worries, you can reset your ad settings or adjust other settings for Google Services. Just make sure you've added your Google account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") to your phone or tablet, so you can access Google Services.

To manage the Google Services setting on your device, go to Settings, tap Google, and then select the Google Services setting you want to change. After that, adjust those settings according to what you prefer.

- Ads: Opt out of ad personalization or reset your advertising ID.
- Autofill: Use autofill to fill in passwords, addresses, credit card numbers, and other personal info that is saved on your device.



- Backup: Change the settings for backing up your data to Google Drive, such as turning back up on or off and selecting your account. You can also change the data that is backed up, like apps, text messages, or device settings.
- Devices & sharing: Edit the options for Nearby Share and casting to your other devices.
- Find My Device: Quickly access the Google Find My Device ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.adm&hl=en_ US&gl=US") app.
- Mobile data & messaging: Configure your data management settings.
- Parental controls: Set up parental controls for your device.
- Personal Safety: Silence your notifications when driving with Do Not Disturb.
- Personalize using shared data: Allow Google to use your data on apps such as Drive, Gmail, and Google TV.
- Set up & restore: Use your Google account to restore contacts on your device, set up a nearby device, and set up your work profile.
- Settings for Google apps: Access settings for your connected apps, contacts sync, Google Fit, Google Play, Google Wallet, and voice and search assistant.

Note: These options may vary. For full details, please visit Google's Account Help page ("https://support.google.com/accounts/answer/3118621?hl=en") .

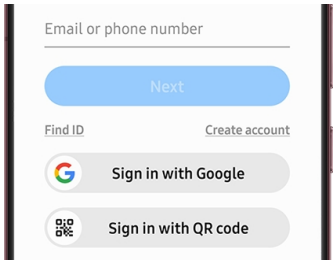
Set up and manage your Samsung account

Note: If you experience issues with your Samsung account, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") . If your phone, tablet, or TV is already logged in to a Samsung account, you will need to log out of that account to create a new account. Please see the section titled "Log out or remove your account" for more information.

Your Samsung account can be set up from your phone, tablet, computer, and even your TV. Since Galaxy phones and tablets have Samsung account software built right in, you can quickly create your account when you first receive your device. If you didn't sign in while setting up your device, you can always sign in later. You can also update your account information at any time.

Set up and manage an account on your phone or tablet

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Samsung account at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your email or phone number if you have an existing account, or tap Find ID, Create account, or Continue with Google.



   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions to sign in or create your account. If you're signing in to an existing account, you may be required to perform two-step verification.
4. Once you have signed in, your account name will appear at the top of the Settings screen; tap your name to manage your account.
5. Next, tap Profile info. Tap the info you want to change, and then make your edits. For example, you can change your birth date or preferred nickname.
6. If you'd like to change the email address associated with your account, tap Email while on the Profile info page. Tap Change, and then follow the on-screen instructions to change the email address.
7. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

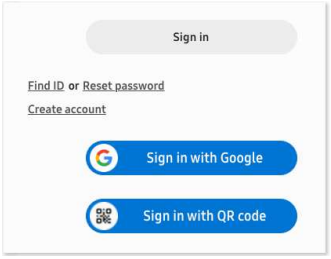
Set up and manage an account on a computer

To sign in to or create a Samsung account from a computer, you'll need to use an internet browser. Keep in mind only one Samsung account is supported per email address.

1. Navigate to the Samsung Login ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") page. Enter your credentials, and then select Sign in to log in to your account. Or, select Create account to make a new one.

   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

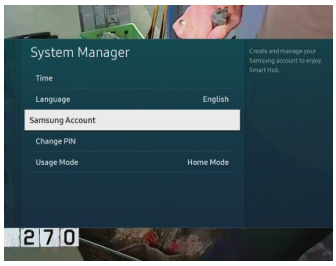
2. You can also select Find ID, Reset password, or Continue with Google.



3. Once you've signed in, select your profile picture in the upper right corner. Select My Account, and then select My Account Info.
4. Enter the information you want to update. When you're done, select Save at the bottom of the screen to save changes.
5. To change your email address, select Samsung Account settings. Select Email ID, and follow the prompts.
6. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

Set up and manage an account on a Samsung TV

1. On your TV, navigate to and select Settings, and then select General.
2. Select System Manager, and then select Samsung Account.



3. You can log in here, or create a new account. Follow the on-screen instructions to add your account.

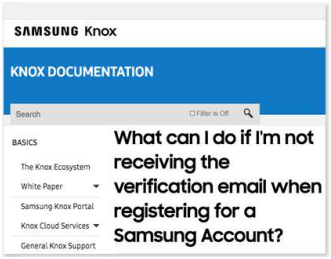
   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.
4. To manage your account, navigate back to System Manager.
5. Select Samsung Account, and then select My Account. From here, you can edit your desired information.
6. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

If you need to update your region or country, you'll have to contact Samsung Support ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") . Keep in mind that changing your country will delete your purchase history, as well as services including Find My Mobile, Samsung account (SEMS), Call & text on other devices, Samsung Cloud, Samsung Apps (Android), Samsung Notes, Samsung Health, Samsung Pay, Samsung Payment Service, Easy Signup, Gallery, and smart assistant information.

Verify your Samsung account via email

After you sign up for a Samsung account, you will receive a verification email to help confirm your identity. Verifying your identity is important for security reasons and also because we will send you an email whenever you need to reset your password.

1. Navigate to and open the inbox for the email address associated with your Samsung account.
2. If you can’t find the email in your inbox, please check the spam mail box.
3. Open the email from Samsung account and either click the Account Verification button in the email, or copy the URL and paste it into your web browser.
4. From there, please follow the on-screen instructions to finish verifying your email address.
5. If you continue to experience issues with the verification email from Samsung, please see our Email verification guide ("https://support.samsungknox.com/hc/en-us/articles/360032622774-What-can-I-do-if-I-m- not-receiving-the-verification-email-when-registering-for-a-Samsung-Account-") .



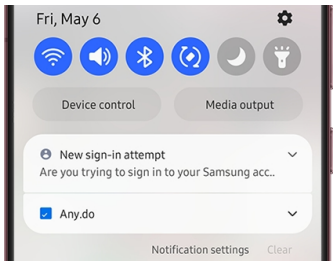
Note: You can sign up for multiple Samsung accounts if you have multiple email addresses. However, each account is treated separately. Even if the owner is the same person, the information on each account is managed independently.

Sign in with two-step verification

Note: If you cannot access your Samsung account because two-step verification isn't working, please contact Samsung Support for further assistance.

Samsung accounts now require a mandatory two-step verification process. This means there's an extra step when logging into your account.

1. Navigate to your Samsung account, and then enter your account credentials.
2. A security notification will be sent to the Galaxy phone that has the phone number associated with your Samsung account. If you have another Galaxy device that is signed into your Samsung account, a verification code will also be sent to that device via notification. You can register up to three phone numbers to your account.



3. The phone notification will say "Did you just sign in to your Samsung account?" Tap the notification, and then tap Yes.
4. The phone will display a verification code. Enter this code in to the designated field, and then select Verify.
5. If the password was entered correctly, you will be signed in! If something went wrong, you can send another verification code.

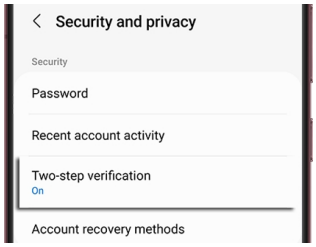
If you'd like to change the associated number or email address, or if you'd like to add an additional authentication method, please see the next section for more details. You can learn even more about two-step authentication by checking out our guide ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/guide/2step/") .

Adjust your number, email, and other two-step verification settings

If needed, you can change your two-step verification settings, such as the phone number the code will be sent to. The settings menu also allows you to pick an authenticator app and view backup codes as an alternative way to sign in.

1. First, you'll need to navigate to the two-step verification Security settings page. You can access it from a phone, tablet, or a web browser on your computer.

    - Phone or tablet: Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap your name at the top. Tap Security settings, and then tap Two-step verification. Enter your Samsung account's password, and then tap OK.

    - From a web browser: Navigate to the Samsung Login ("https://www.samsung.com/us/account/signin/") page and sign in to your account. Hover over your profile picture, and then select My Account. Select My Account Info, and then select Security. Enter your Samsung account's password, select Confirm, and then select Two-step verification.

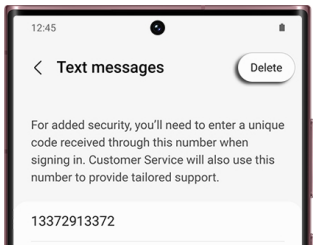
2. Once you've reached the Security settings page, the steps are more or less the same, whether you're on a handheld device or a computer.

3. To change which phone number will receive verification codes, select Text messages. Select Add, enter your desired phone number, and then select Verify or Send code.

4. A code will be sent to the phone number you just added; enter the code to verify your identity. Now whenever you need to perform two-step verification, a code will be sent to that phone number and any other digital devices registered under the same Samsung account.

5. If you have more than one number added to your account, you can delete any you are not using.

    - Phone or tablet: From the Security settings page, select Text messages. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Delete. Select the number you want to remove, and then tap Delete.

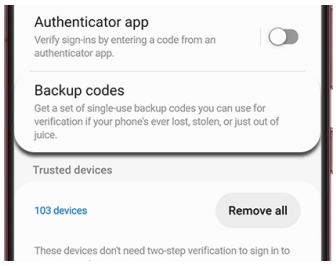
    - Web browser: From the Security settings page, select Text messages. Select Delete next to the number you want to remove.

    Note: Delete or More options will not appear unless you have multiple numbers added.

6. To change which registered devices will receive a verification code, select Galaxy device notifications or Send code to your devices from the Security settings page. Select the switch(es) next to your desired device(s) to turn verification notifications on or off.

7. You can use an Authenticator app instead of regular two-step verification if you prefer.
   Select Authenticator app from the Security settings page, and follow the on-screen instructions to link the app.

8. As an extra precaution, you can also use backup codes to sign in to your account. Select Backup codes from the Security settings page to view your current codes. You can download the codes or request new ones if needed. Select Done when you're finished.



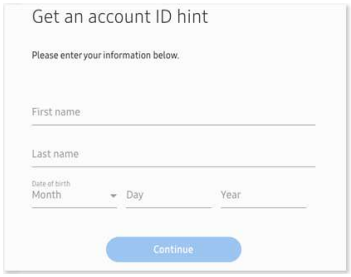
9. Trusted devices are devices that do not need two-step verification to sign in to your account. If you have security concerns, such as your account being compromised, you can tap Remove all or Remove all devices to delete every device that is registered as trusted.

   Note: Devices will be added as trusted devices again once you go through the verification process.

Find your Samsung ID

If you forgot the ID to your Samsung account, you can find it on your phone, tablet, or computer. Navigate to the account retrieval page ("https://account.samsung.com/accounts/v1/samsung_com_us/findId#") on the Samsung website, enter your information, and then select Continue. Your Samsung account ID (email address) will be partially displayed. Next, select Go to your Samsung account to sign in.

If you still have difficulty recovering your ID, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for help.



Change or reset your password

Did you forget the password to your Samsung account or have a hard time remembering it? There are options for resetting or changing your password, so you don't have to keep guessing.

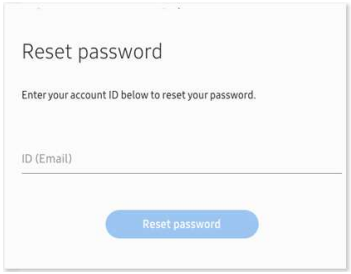
Reset your password

1. On a Galaxy device, there is a Reset password option. Select this on the Samsung Login page to make a new password.

2. If you can't find this option or if it isn't working, you can also reset your password through a browser.

3. Use a web browser to navigate to the Reset password page ("https://account.samsung.com/accounts/v1/samsung_com_us/resetPassword#") on the Samsung website, and then enter the email or phone number associated with your Samsung account.

4. Then, select Reset password. An email will be sent to your inbox; follow the instructions in the email to reset your password.



If you still have difficulty resetting your password, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for help.

Change your existing password

1. Navigate to your Samsung account on your Galaxy phone or tablet by opening Settings and then tapping your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Security and privacy, and then tap Password.
3. Enter your current password, and then enter your desired new password. Enter the new password one more time to confirm, and then tap Save.
4. You will be logged out from the Samsung account on your Galaxy device as a security precaution, and a popup message with appear. Enter the new password you just created, and then tap Sign in.
5. You may be required to go through the two-step verification process to log back into your account.

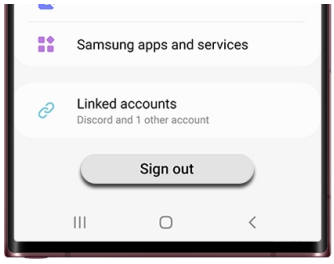
Log out or remove your account

You can log out of your Samsung account on a computer by using the website, but logging out on a phone or tablet is a little different. To "log out" on a phone or tablet, you actually have to remove the account. Doing so may disable some features, but you can always add the account back later if you like.

If you want to permanently delete your Samsung account, please refer to the next section.

Log out on a phone or tablet

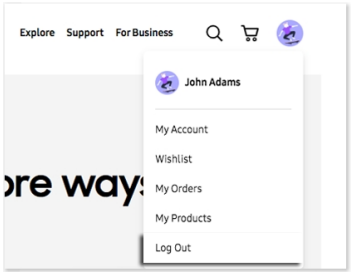
1. To log out from a phone or tablet, navigate to and open Settings, and then tap your name at the top.
2. Swipe down to the bottom and tap Sign out.



3. Tap Sign out again, enter your account password, and then tap OK.

Log out on a PC or Mac

To log out of your Samsung account on a computer, you'll need to use an internet browser. Navigate to the Samsung ("https://www.samsung.com/us/") website, select your name in the upper right corner, and then select Log Out.



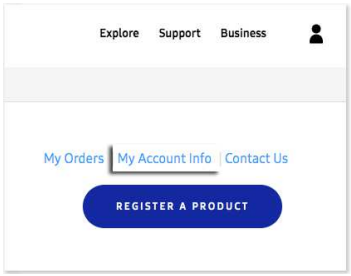
Note: If you remove your Samsung account from your device, your synced data will be deleted from the device and new data will no longer be synced. All the data stored on your device that hasn't been synced with Samsung Cloud will remain on the device.

Delete your account

Deleting your Samsung account will also delete your Samsung purchase history, content subscriptions, content uploads, and personal profile information. This information cannot be recovered, so be certain you want to delete your account before you continue.

If you are unable to delete your account, you may have unresolved payment issues. Contact Samsung Support ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for further assistance.

1. Using an internet browser, navigate to the Samsung Login page ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/account/") .
2. Log in using your ID and password, and then select My Account info.
3. Select the Profile card, and then select Samsung Account settings.
4. Select Delete account, then review the precautions, and then follow the on-screen prompts to finish deleting it.



External storage transfer

MicroSD card types

Unless you are a tech wizard, you probably aren't aware that microSD cards ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") come in multiple classes. Other than storage capacity, there are different factors that separate them. Some also come with extra features that give them distinct classifications.

- MicroSD cards offer capacity up to 2GB.
- MicroSDHC (High Capacity) cards offer capacity up to 32GB.
- MicroSDXC (extended Capacity) cards offer capacity from over 32GB and up to 2TB.
- Each type of card has a speed rating of 2, 4, 6, 8, or 10, from slowest to fastest.

While you can use any class of microSD cards in your phone or tablet, the microSDXC card is recommended for

high-resolution video recording, due to its large storage capacity and high-speed read and write capability. For less demanding use, such as still photography, regular microSD or microSDHC cards will be sufficient.

Insert the microSD card

Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards. On these models, there will only be a slot for the SIM card.

MicroSD cards give you tons of space on your phone or tablet, but they are really tiny. Just be careful not to drop or lose the microSD card.

1. Insert the ejector tool (which comes with your phone or tablet) into the hole in the SIM and microSD card tray on the top of your phone or tablet. If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.



Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.

2. When the tray pops out, pull it out of the phone or tablet.

3. Carefully place the microSD card into the larger opening in the tray - the SIM card slot is the lower, smaller opening. Then, reinsert the tray into the device.



If you have trouble getting the SIM and SD card tray out or it becomes damaged, service may be necessary.

Transfer media to a microSD card

Just insert your microSD card and you can begin transferring your files. You can also use the options in Device care to help clear space.

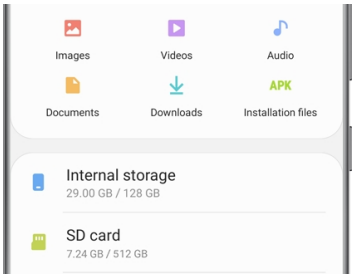
1. With your microSD card inserted, navigate to and open the My Files app.

2. Find the file(s) you want to move, and then touch and hold the file(s).

3. Tap Move or Copy at the bottom of the screen, and then navigate back to the My Files Home page.

4. Tap SD card - this will only show up if you have a SD card inserted. Navigate to the folder where you'd like to place the files.

5. Tap Move here or Copy here and the files will be placed on the SD card.



Note: You can only move or copy files this way in the My Files app. You cannot move or copy files to other apps, such as Gallery.

Move apps to microSD card

Before you relocate an app to a new storage location, make sure you have a microSD card inserted. Otherwise, your apps will have nowhere to go.

Note: Many apps are not eligible to be moved to the microSD card.

If you do not see the Change option available, you can't change the app's storage location. For example, preloaded apps cannot be moved.

1. Navigate to Settings, and then tap Apps.
2. Swipe to and select the app you want to move.
3. Tap Storage, and then tap Change. If Change does not appear, this app cannot be moved.
4. Choose SD card, and then tap Move to change the app's storage location.
5. If needed, follow the on-screen instructions to complete the move.

Unmount and remove the microSD card

Need to remove the microSD card from your phone or tablet so you can upgrade? No worries, we'll walk you through it. Remember, you must unmount the microSD card before removing it.

1. Navigate to and open Settings.
2. Tap Search, and then search for and select Storage.
3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Storage settings.
4. Tap Unmount, and then insert the ejector tool into the hole in the SIM and microSD card tray on the top of your phone or tablet. If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.
5. When the tray pops out, pull it out of the phone or tablet.



6. Remove the microSD card from the tray, and then insert the tray back into the device.

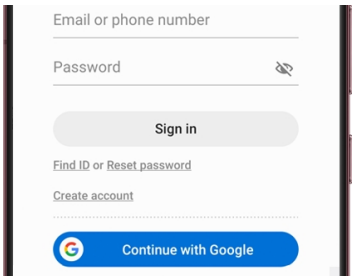
If you have trouble getting the SIM and SD card tray out or it becomes damaged, service may be necessary.

Add an account

Add a Samsung account

The best way to get the most from your Galaxy phone or tablet is to add a Samsung account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") , so you can experience all of the exclusive features.

To add a Samsung account, navigate to Settings, and then Samsung account at the top. Then, enter your Samsung account info to sign in. If you don't already have an account, don't worry. Just tap Create account to make one, or create one on the Samsung ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") Account ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") website ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") .



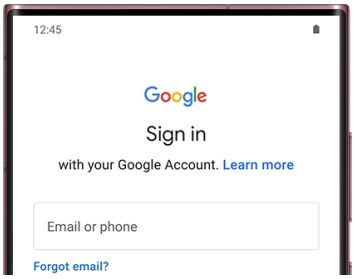
Once your Samsung account is added, you can manage ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085942/") and edit your account preferences, like changing your password if needed.

Add a Google account

Can't live without Google? To use the Google Play Store and download apps from it, you need to add a Google account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") .

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap Add account. Tap Google, and then enter your Google account information to sign in.

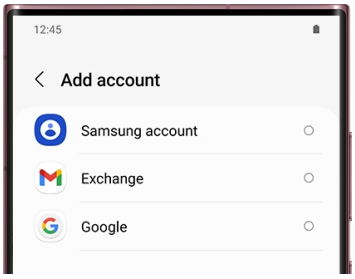
When you add your Google account, you'll be able to access emails using the Gmail app on your phone or tablet, as well as use Google apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00089082/") and Google services ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062640/") .



Add an email account

Last but not least, add an email account and receive your emails through the Email app.

Navigate to Settings, and then swipe to and select Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap Add account. Tap your email provider and then enter your account credentials. Depending on your provider, there may be additional requirements to complete the setup on your device. If needed, sign into your account via the internet, and then turn on access to allow use of the app.



If necessary, you can download and install the Samsung Email app using Galaxy Store ("https://galaxy.store/samsunge") or **Play Store** (**"https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.email.provider& ;hl=en_US" style="font-weight: bold;"**) , or download and install the app for your email provider. After installing, open the app and select the desired email account you wish to add. Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the setup.

Account settings

Access your account settings on the phone or tablet to sync data to your account as well as other devices signed into the same account. Some accounts will allow you to access your profile and other options. Each account has its custom settings, but you can configure common settings for all accounts of the same type.

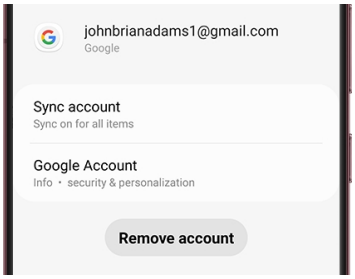
Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap an account to customize its settings.

Note: Account settings and available features vary between account types.

Remove an account

If needed, you can easily remove your accounts ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062033/" title="remove your account") whenever you want, whether it's a Samsung, Google, or email account. You can always add them again later on, using the same steps in the previous sections.

Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap the account. Next, tap Remove account. Some accounts may have additional steps like entering your password, so check the screen for any extra steps.



Back up and restore

Content types that can be backed up using Samsung Cloud

Note: Individual files over 1GB will not be uploaded.

Backing up your data is a little different than syncing ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060641/") . When you back up, you save your device's files to the cloud, so they can be redownloaded later. These files won't automatically appear on your other devices unless you manually restore them. Syncing, on the other hand, automatically adds updated information to a device.

Below are some apps on your phone or tablet that support the back up and restore feature. We've also listed what kinds of data will be backed up from these apps:

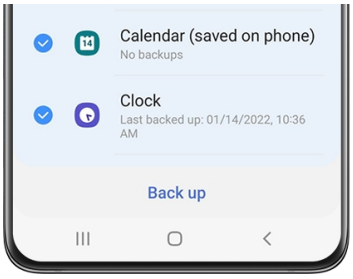
- Call logs: Call and message history
- Clock: Alarms, world clocks, and timers
- Apps: Installation files and app settings
- Calendar: Events and tasks saved on your phone or tablet
- Messages: Enhanced messages, multimedia messages, and text messages
- Contacts: Contacts, email addresses, and business cards saved on your phone, tablet, or USIM
- Home screen: Layout, wallpapers, and Samsung DeX settings (your default wallpapers won't be backed up)
- Settings: Accessibility settings, ringtones, Samsung Keyboard options, Wi-Fi settings, and Always on Display settings (your default ringtone won't be backed up)
- Voice Recorder: Saved audio clips recorded using the Voice Recorder app
- Samsung Daily: Your personalized content preferences and settings
  Note: Samsung Daily is only available on select phones, such as the S8. Newer phones use Samsung News instead; however, this service cannot be backed up.

Back up your Samsung Cloud data

Make sure you don't lose that precious video of your baby's first steps. Manually back up your data whenever you have new files, so you can relive your special moments.

Manual backup

1. From Settings, tap your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Samsung Cloud.
3. Select the data you'd like to back up, such as Messages or Calendar, and then tap Back up at the bottom of the screen.
4. The backup will begin uploading to the cloud. It may take some time if you have a lot of files.
5. Feel free to navigate away while the backup is in process. It will continue in the background and a notification will appear when it is complete.



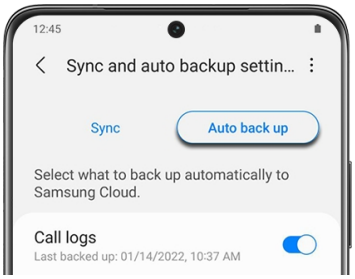
To learn more about the syncing process, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap More information.

Automatic backup

When you enable the Automatic backup feature in Samsung Cloud, your data is backed up automatically once every 24 hours, as long as your phone or tablet is charging and connected to a Wi-Fi network. The screen also needs to be off for at least an hour. You can also customize what files are automatically backed up.

1. From Settings, navigate to and tap Accounts and backup.
2. Tap Manage accounts, and then select your Samsung account.
3. Tap Sync account, and then tap Auto back up.

   Note: If the Auto back up option does not appear, your carrier does not support this feature.
4. Tap the switch next to the data you'd like to back up, such as Messages or Calendar. That's it!

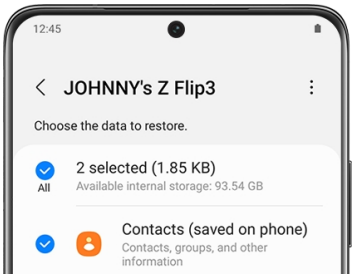


Note: Content will not automatically back up if the cloud storage is full.

Restore backup data using Samsung Cloud

Once everything is backed up on Samsung Cloud, restoring your data is simple. You can even transfer it to another device using the Restore feature.

1. From Settings, tap your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Samsung Cloud, and then tap Restore data.
3. Select your desired device backup, and then select the content you want to restore.
4. Next, tap Restore, and then tap Install if prompted.
5. The backup will begin downloading. It may take some time if you have a lot of files.
6. Tap Done when it's finished.

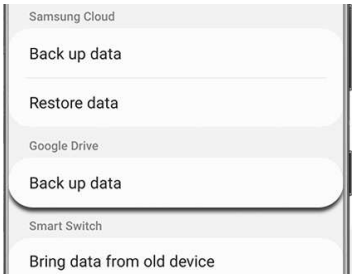


Back up and restore using Google

Google is another great option to back up and restore your data. Your Google account can be used to sync data between multiple devices, just by logging in to the same account on each device.

1. Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup.
2. Tap Back up data under Google Drive. If prompted, sign in using your Google account credentials.
3. Tap Back up now to begin syncing your data.
4. To restore your data, tap the switch next to Automatic restore under Google account.

   Note: The Automatic restore option may not be available on all models.

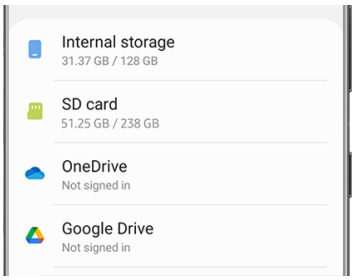


Back up data with a microSD card

If you'd rather use a method that doesn't require the internet, you can try using a microSD card. Simply insert one into your phone or tablet and then copy ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") your ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") to the card with the My Files app, so they'll be safe and sound.

Restoring backed up files is as easy as backing them up! Just copy them to the phone or tablet, or even copy them to another device.

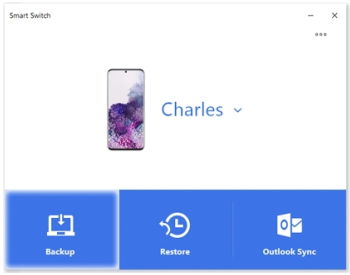
Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards.



Back up with Smart Switch on PC

Smart Switch on your PC ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00048603/") is another great option for backing up your contacts, music, photos, and more. You can use this method if you need to transfer content to a new Galaxy phone, or if you'd like to have an extra backup just in case.

After you've made a backup of your files on your PC or Mac, just connect your new phone using a USB cable. Then, you can move your data to your phone! Or, access your data another time if you need to restore it.

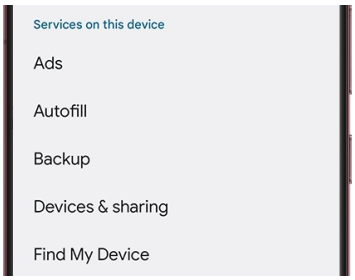


Manage Google settings

Did you search for cats on Google and now you're getting endless cat ads? No worries, you can reset your ad settings or adjust other settings for Google Services. Just make sure you've added your Google account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") to your phone or tablet, so you can access Google Services.

To manage the Google Services setting on your device, go to Settings, tap Google, and then select the Google Services setting you want to change. After that, adjust those settings according to what you prefer.

- Ads: Opt out of ad personalization or reset your advertising ID.
- Autofill: Use autofill to fill in passwords, addresses, credit card numbers, and other personal info that is saved on your device.



- Backup: Change the settings for backing up your data to Google Drive, such as turning back up on or off and selecting your account. You can also change the data that is backed up, like apps, text messages, or device settings.
- Devices & sharing: Edit the options for Nearby Share and casting to your other devices.
- Find My Device: Quickly access the Google Find My Device ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.adm&hl=en_ US&gl=US") app.
- Mobile data & messaging: Configure your data management settings.
- Parental controls: Set up parental controls for your device.
- Personal Safety: Silence your notifications when driving with Do Not Disturb.
- Personalize using shared data: Allow Google to use your data on apps such as Drive, Gmail, and Google TV.
- Set up & restore: Use your Google account to restore contacts on your device, set up a nearby device, and set up your work profile.
- Settings for Google apps: Access settings for your connected apps, contacts sync, Google Fit, Google Play, Google Wallet, and voice and search assistant.

Note: These options may vary. For full details, please visit Google's Account Help page ("https://support.google.com/accounts/answer/3118621?hl=en") .

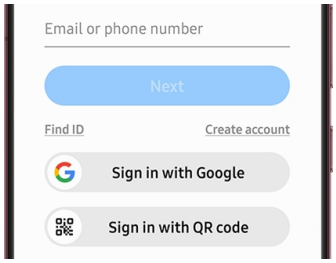
Set up and manage your Samsung account

Note: If you experience issues with your Samsung account, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") . If your phone, tablet, or TV is already logged in to a Samsung account, you will need to log out of that account to create a new account. Please see the section titled "Log out or remove your account" for more information.

Your Samsung account can be set up from your phone, tablet, computer, and even your TV. Since Galaxy phones and tablets have Samsung account software built right in, you can quickly create your account when you first receive your device. If you didn't sign in while setting up your device, you can always sign in later. You can also update your account information at any time.

Set up and manage an account on your phone or tablet

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Samsung account at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your email or phone number if you have an existing account, or tap Find ID, Create account, or Continue with Google.



   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions to sign in or create your account. If you're signing in to an existing account, you may be required to perform two-step verification.
4. Once you have signed in, your account name will appear at the top of the Settings screen; tap your name to manage your account.
5. Next, tap Profile info. Tap the info you want to change, and then make your edits. For example, you can change your birth date or preferred nickname.
6. If you'd like to change the email address associated with your account, tap Email while on the Profile info page. Tap Change, and then follow the on-screen instructions to change the email address.
7. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

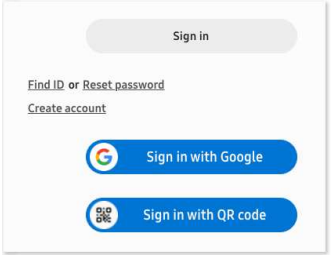
Set up and manage an account on a computer

To sign in to or create a Samsung account from a computer, you'll need to use an internet browser. Keep in mind only one Samsung account is supported per email address.

1. Navigate to the Samsung Login ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") page. Enter your credentials, and then select Sign in to log in to your account. Or, select Create account to make a new one.

   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

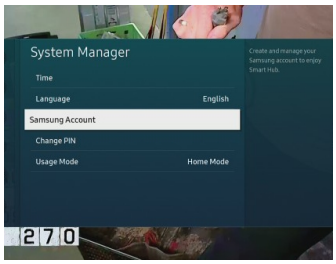
2. You can also select Find ID, Reset password, or Continue with Google.



3. Once you've signed in, select your profile picture in the upper right corner. Select My Account, and then select My Account Info.
4. Enter the information you want to update. When you're done, select Save at the bottom of the screen to save changes.
5. To change your email address, select Samsung Account settings. Select Email ID, and follow the prompts.
6. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

Set up and manage an account on a Samsung TV

1. On your TV, navigate to and select Settings, and then select General.
2. Select System Manager, and then select Samsung Account.



3. You can log in here, or create a new account. Follow the on-screen instructions to add your account.

   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.
4. To manage your account, navigate back to System Manager.
5. Select Samsung Account, and then select My Account. From here, you can edit your desired information.
6. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

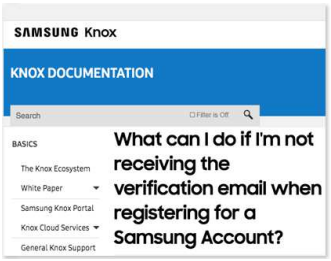
If you need to update your region or country, you'll have to contact Samsung Support ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") . Keep in mind that changing your country will delete your purchase history, as well as services including Find My Mobile, Samsung account (SEMS), Call & text on other devices, Samsung Cloud, Samsung Apps (Android), Samsung Notes, Samsung Health, Samsung Pay, Samsung Payment Service, Easy Signup, Gallery, and smart assistant information.

Verify your Samsung account via email

After you sign up for a Samsung account, you will receive a verification email to help confirm your identity. Verifying your identity is important for security reasons and also because we will send you an email whenever you need to reset your password.

1. Navigate to and open the inbox for the email address associated with your Samsung account.

2. If you can’t find the email in your inbox, please check the spam mail box.
3. Open the email from Samsung account and either click the Account Verification button in the email, or copy the URL and paste it into your web browser.
4. From there, please follow the on-screen instructions to finish verifying your email address.
5. If you continue to experience issues with the verification email from Samsung, please see our Email verification guide ("https://support.samsungknox.com/hc/en-us/articles/360032622774-What-can-I-do-if-I-m- not-receiving-the-verification-email-when-registering-for-a-Samsung-Account-") .



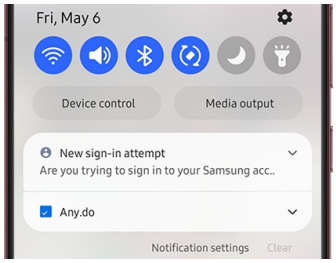
Note: You can sign up for multiple Samsung accounts if you have multiple email addresses. However, each account is treated separately. Even if the owner is the same person, the information on each account is managed independently.

Sign in with two-step verification

Note: If you cannot access your Samsung account because two-step verification isn't working, please contact Samsung Support for further assistance.

Samsung accounts now require a mandatory two-step verification process. This means there's an extra step when logging into your account.

1. Navigate to your Samsung account, and then enter your account credentials.
2. A security notification will be sent to the Galaxy phone that has the phone number associated with your Samsung account. If you have another Galaxy device that is signed into your Samsung account, a verification code will also be sent to that device via notification. You can register up to three phone numbers to your account.



3. The phone notification will say "Did you just sign in to your Samsung account?" Tap the notification, and then tap Yes.
4. The phone will display a verification code. Enter this code in to the designated field, and then select Verify.
5. If the password was entered correctly, you will be signed in! If something went wrong, you can send another verification code.

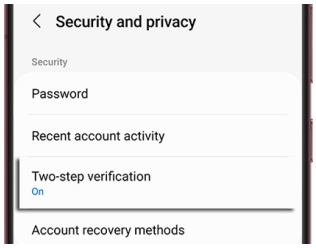
If you'd like to change the associated number or email address, or if you'd like to add an additional authentication method, please see the next section for more details. You can learn even more about two-step authentication by checking out our guide ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/guide/2step/") .

Adjust your number, email, and other two-step verification settings

If needed, you can change your two-step verification settings, such as the phone number the code will be sent to. The settings menu also allows you to pick an authenticator app and view backup codes as an alternative way to sign in.

1. First, you'll need to navigate to the two-step verification Security settings page. You can access it from a phone, tablet, or a web browser on your computer.

    - Phone or tablet: Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap your name at the top. Tap Security settings, and then tap Two-step verification. Enter your Samsung account's password, and then tap OK.

    - From a web browser: Navigate to the Samsung Login ("https://www.samsung.com/us/account/signin/") page and sign in to your account. Hover over your profile picture, and then select My Account. Select My Account Info, and then select Security. Enter your Samsung account's password, select Confirm, and then select Two-step verification.

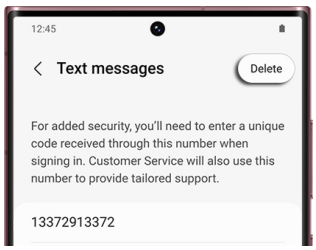
2. Once you've reached the Security settings page, the steps are more or less the same, whether you're on a handheld device or a computer.

3. To change which phone number will receive verification codes, select Text messages. Select Add, enter your desired phone number, and then select Verify or Send code.

4. A code will be sent to the phone number you just added; enter the code to verify your identity. Now whenever you need to perform two-step verification, a code will be sent to that phone number and any other digital devices registered under the same Samsung account.

5. If you have more than one number added to your account, you can delete any you are not using.

    - Phone or tablet: From the Security settings page, select Text messages. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Delete. Select the number you want to remove, and then tap Delete.

    - Web browser: From the Security settings page, select Text messages. Select Delete next to the number you want to remove.

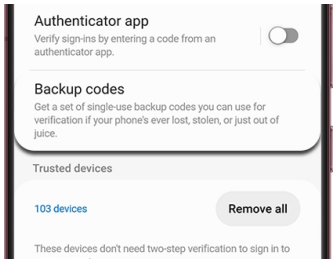
    Note: Delete or More options will not appear unless you have multiple numbers added.

6. To change which registered devices will receive a verification code, select Galaxy device notifications or Send code to your devices from the Security settings page. Select the switch(es) next to your desired device(s) to turn verification notifications on or off.

7. You can use an Authenticator app instead of regular two-step verification if you prefer.
   Select Authenticator app from the Security settings page, and follow the on-screen instructions to link the app.

8. As an extra precaution, you can also use backup codes to sign in to your account. Select Backup codes from

the Security settings page to view your current codes. You can download the codes or request new ones if needed. Select Done when you're finished.



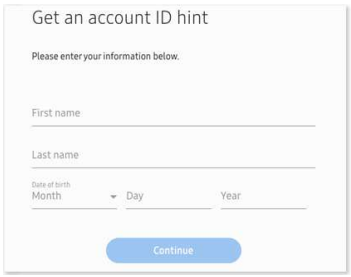
9. Trusted devices are devices that do not need two-step verification to sign in to your account. If you have security concerns, such as your account being compromised, you can tap Remove all or Remove all devices to delete every device that is registered as trusted.

   Note: Devices will be added as trusted devices again once you go through the verification process.

Find your Samsung ID

If you forgot the ID to your Samsung account, you can find it on your phone, tablet, or computer. Navigate to the account retrieval page ("https://account.samsung.com/accounts/v1/samsung_com_us/findId#") on the Samsung website, enter your information, and then select Continue. Your Samsung account ID (email address) will be partially displayed. Next, select Go to your Samsung account to sign in.

If you still have difficulty recovering your ID, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for help.



Change or reset your password

Did you forget the password to your Samsung account or have a hard time remembering it? There are options for resetting or changing your password, so you don't have to keep guessing.

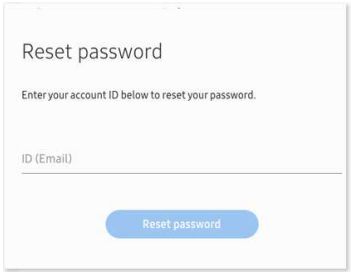
Reset your password

1. On a Galaxy device, there is a Reset password option. Select this on the Samsung Login page to make a new password.

2. If you can't find this option or if it isn't working, you can also reset your password through a browser.

3. Use a web browser to navigate to the Reset password page ("https://account.samsung.com/accounts/v1/samsung_com_us/resetPassword#") on the Samsung website, and then enter the email or phone number associated with your Samsung account.

4. Then, select Reset password. An email will be sent to your inbox; follow the instructions in the email to reset your password.



If you still have difficulty resetting your password, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for help.

Change your existing password

1. Navigate to your Samsung account on your Galaxy phone or tablet by opening Settings and then tapping your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Security and privacy, and then tap Password.
3. Enter your current password, and then enter your desired new password. Enter the new password one more time to confirm, and then tap Save.
4. You will be logged out from the Samsung account on your Galaxy device as a security precaution, and a popup message with appear. Enter the new password you just created, and then tap Sign in.
5. You may be required to go through the two-step verification process to log back into your account.

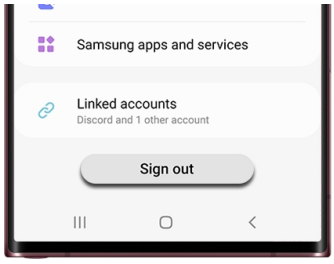
Log out or remove your account

You can log out of your Samsung account on a computer by using the website, but logging out on a phone or tablet is a little different. To "log out" on a phone or tablet, you actually have to remove the account. Doing so may disable some features, but you can always add the account back later if you like.

If you want to permanently delete your Samsung account, please refer to the next section.

Log out on a phone or tablet

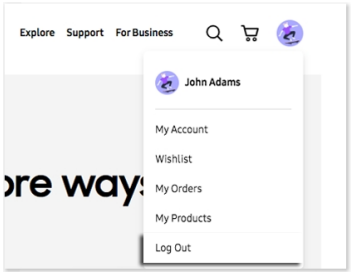
1. To log out from a phone or tablet, navigate to and open Settings, and then tap your name at the top.
2. Swipe down to the bottom and tap Sign out.



3. Tap Sign out again, enter your account password, and then tap OK.

Log out on a PC or Mac

To log out of your Samsung account on a computer, you'll need to use an internet browser. Navigate to the Samsung ("https://www.samsung.com/us/") website, select your name in the upper right corner, and then select Log Out.



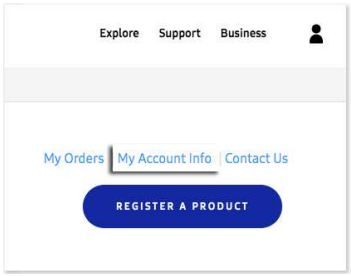
Note: If you remove your Samsung account from your device, your synced data will be deleted from the device and new data will no longer be synced. All the data stored on your device that hasn't been synced with Samsung Cloud will remain on the device.

Delete your account

Deleting your Samsung account will also delete your Samsung purchase history, content subscriptions, content uploads, and personal profile information. This information cannot be recovered, so be certain you want to delete your account before you continue.

If you are unable to delete your account, you may have unresolved payment issues. Contact Samsung Support ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for further assistance.

1. Using an internet browser, navigate to the Samsung Login page ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/account/") .
2. Log in using your ID and password, and then select My Account info.
3. Select the Profile card, and then select Samsung Account settings.
4. Select Delete account, then review the precautions, and then follow the on-screen prompts to finish deleting it.



External storage transfer

MicroSD card types

Unless you are a tech wizard, you probably aren't aware that microSD cards ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") come in multiple classes. Other than storage capacity, there are different factors that separate them. Some also come with extra features that give them distinct classifications.

- MicroSD cards offer capacity up to 2GB.
- MicroSDHC (High Capacity) cards offer capacity up to 32GB.
- MicroSDXC (extended Capacity) cards offer capacity from over 32GB and up to 2TB.
- Each type of card has a speed rating of 2, 4, 6, 8, or 10, from slowest to fastest.

While you can use any class of microSD cards in your phone or tablet, the microSDXC card is recommended for high-resolution video recording, due to its large storage capacity and high-speed read and write capability. For less demanding use, such as still photography, regular microSD or microSDHC cards will be sufficient.

Insert the microSD card

Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards. On these models, there will only be a slot for the SIM card.

MicroSD cards give you tons of space on your phone or tablet, but they are really tiny. Just be careful not to drop or lose the microSD card.

1. Insert the ejector tool (which comes with your phone or tablet) into the hole in the SIM and microSD card tray on the top of your phone or tablet. If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.

2. When the tray pops out, pull it out of the phone or tablet.
3. Carefully place the microSD card into the larger opening in the tray - the SIM card slot is the lower, smaller opening. Then, reinsert the tray into the device.

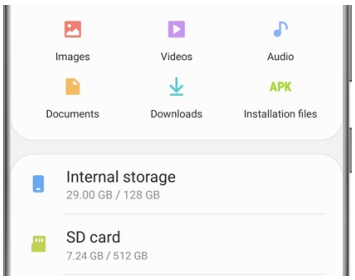


If you have trouble getting the SIM and SD card tray out or it becomes damaged, service may be necessary.

Transfer media to a microSD card

Just insert your microSD card and you can begin transferring your files. You can also use the options in Device care to help clear space.

1. With your microSD card inserted, navigate to and open the My Files app.
2. Find the file(s) you want to move, and then touch and hold the file(s).
3. Tap Move or Copy at the bottom of the screen, and then navigate back to the My Files Home page.
4. Tap SD card - this will only show up if you have a SD card inserted. Navigate to the folder where you'd like to place the files.
5. Tap Move here or Copy here and the files will be placed on the SD card.



Note: You can only move or copy files this way in the My Files app. You cannot move or copy files to other apps, such as Gallery.

Move apps to microSD card

Before you relocate an app to a new storage location, make sure you have a microSD card inserted. Otherwise, your apps will have nowhere to go.

Note: Many apps are not eligible to be moved to the microSD card.

If you do not see the Change option available, you can't change the app's storage location. For example, preloaded apps cannot be moved.

1. Navigate to Settings, and then tap Apps.
2. Swipe to and select the app you want to move.
3. Tap Storage, and then tap Change. If Change does not appear, this app cannot be moved.
4. Choose SD card, and then tap Move to change the app's storage location.
5. If needed, follow the on-screen instructions to complete the move.

Unmount and remove the microSD card

Need to remove the microSD card from your phone or tablet so you can upgrade? No worries, we'll walk you

through it. Remember, you must unmount the microSD card before removing it.

1. Navigate to and open Settings.
2. Tap Search, and then search for and select Storage.
3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Storage settings.
4. Tap Unmount, and then insert the ejector tool into the hole in the SIM and microSD card tray on the top of your phone or tablet. If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.
5. When the tray pops out, pull it out of the phone or tablet.



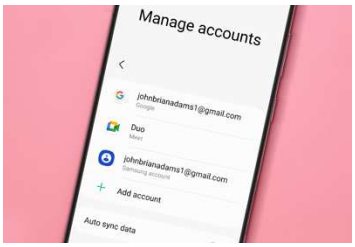
6. Remove the microSD card from the tray, and then insert the tray back into the device.

   If you have trouble getting the SIM and SD card tray out or it becomes damaged, service may be necessary.

Accounts & Backup

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091486

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091486

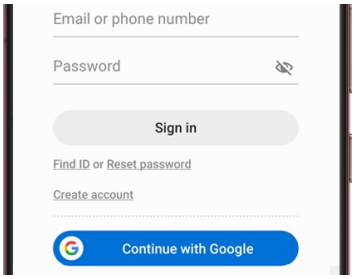


Add an account

Add a Samsung account

The best way to get the most from your Galaxy phone or tablet is to add a Samsung account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") , so you can experience all of the exclusive features.

To add a Samsung account, navigate to Settings, and then Samsung account at the top. Then, enter your Samsung account info to sign in. If you don't already have an account, don't worry. Just tap Create account to make one, or create one on the Samsung ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") Account ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") website ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/intro") .



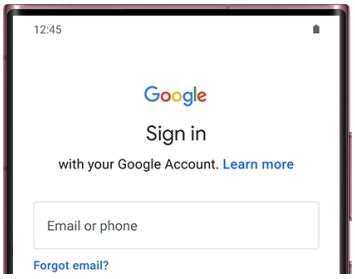
Once your Samsung account is added, you can manage ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085942/") and edit your account preferences, like changing your password if needed.

Add a Google account

Can't live without Google? To use the Google Play Store and download apps from it, you need to add a Google account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") .

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap Add account. Tap Google, and then enter your Google account information to sign in.

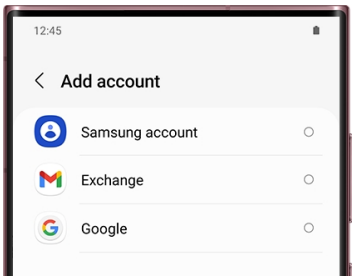
When you add your Google account, you'll be able to access emails using the Gmail app on your phone or tablet, as well as use Google apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00089082/") and Google services ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062640/") .



Add an email account

Last but not least, add an email account and receive your emails through the Email app.

Navigate to Settings, and then swipe to and select Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap Add account. Tap your email provider and then enter your account credentials. Depending on your provider, there may be additional requirements to complete the setup on your device. If needed, sign into your account via the internet, and then turn on access to allow use of the app.



If necessary, you can download and install the Samsung Email app using Galaxy Store ("https://galaxy.store/samsunge") or **Play Store** (**"https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.email.provider& ;hl=en_US" style="font-weight: bold;"**) , or download and install the app for your email provider. After installing, open the app and select the desired email account you wish to add. Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the setup.

Account settings

Access your account settings on the phone or tablet to sync data to your account as well as other devices signed into the same account. Some accounts will allow you to access your profile and other options. Each account has its custom settings, but you can configure common settings for all accounts of the same type.

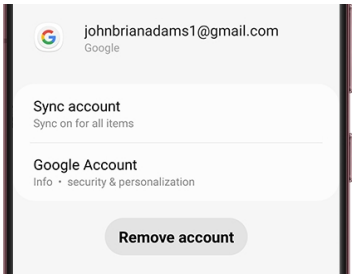
Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap an account to customize its settings.

Note: Account settings and available features vary between account types.

Remove an account

If needed, you can easily remove your accounts ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062033/" title="remove your account") whenever you want, whether it's a Samsung, Google, or email account. You can always add them again later on, using the same steps in the previous sections.

Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup. Tap Manage accounts, and then tap the account. Next, tap Remove account. Some accounts may have additional steps like entering your password, so check the screen for any extra steps.



Back up and restore

Content types that can be backed up using Samsung Cloud

Note: Individual files over 1GB will not be uploaded.

Backing up your data is a little different than syncing ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00060641/") . When you back up, you save your device's files to the cloud, so they can be redownloaded later. These files won't automatically appear on your other devices unless you manually restore them. Syncing, on the other hand, automatically adds updated information to a device.

Below are some apps on your phone or tablet that support the back up and restore feature. We've also listed what kinds of data will be backed up from these apps:

- Call logs: Call and message history
- Clock: Alarms, world clocks, and timers
- Apps: Installation files and app settings
- Calendar: Events and tasks saved on your phone or tablet
- Messages: Enhanced messages, multimedia messages, and text messages
- Contacts: Contacts, email addresses, and business cards saved on your phone, tablet, or USIM
- Home screen: Layout, wallpapers, and Samsung DeX settings (your default wallpapers won't be backed up)
- Settings: Accessibility settings, ringtones, Samsung Keyboard options, Wi-Fi settings, and Always on Display settings (your default ringtone won't be backed up)
- Voice Recorder: Saved audio clips recorded using the Voice Recorder app
- Samsung Daily: Your personalized content preferences and settings
  Note: Samsung Daily is only available on select phones, such as the S8. Newer phones use Samsung News instead; however, this service cannot be backed up.

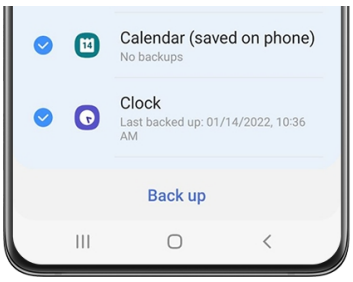
Back up your Samsung Cloud data

Make sure you don't lose that precious video of your baby's first steps. Manually back up your data whenever you have new files, so you can relive your special moments.

Manual backup

1. From Settings, tap your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Samsung Cloud.
3. Select the data you'd like to back up, such as Messages or Calendar, and then tap Back up at the bottom of the screen.

4. The backup will begin uploading to the cloud. It may take some time if you have a lot of files.
5. Feel free to navigate away while the backup is in process. It will continue in the background and a notification will appear when it is complete.



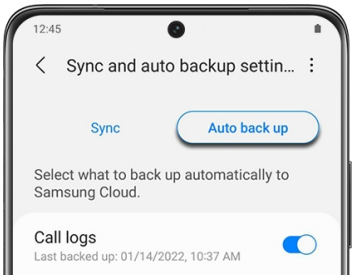
To learn more about the syncing process, tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap More information.

Automatic backup

When you enable the Automatic backup feature in Samsung Cloud, your data is backed up automatically once every 24 hours, as long as your phone or tablet is charging and connected to a Wi-Fi network. The screen also needs to be off for at least an hour. You can also customize what files are automatically backed up.

1. From Settings, navigate to and tap Accounts and backup.
2. Tap Manage accounts, and then select your Samsung account.
3. Tap Sync account, and then tap Auto back up.

   Note: If the Auto back up option does not appear, your carrier does not support this feature.
4. Tap the switch next to the data you'd like to back up, such as Messages or Calendar. That's it!

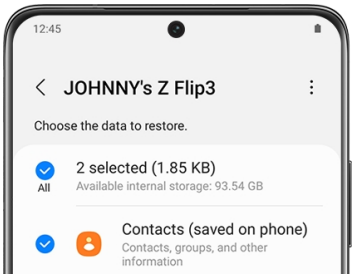


Note: Content will not automatically back up if the cloud storage is full.

Restore backup data using Samsung Cloud

Once everything is backed up on Samsung Cloud, restoring your data is simple. You can even transfer it to another device using the Restore feature.

1. From Settings, tap your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Samsung Cloud, and then tap Restore data.
3. Select your desired device backup, and then select the content you want to restore.
4. Next, tap Restore, and then tap Install if prompted.
5. The backup will begin downloading. It may take some time if you have a lot of files.
6. Tap Done when it's finished.

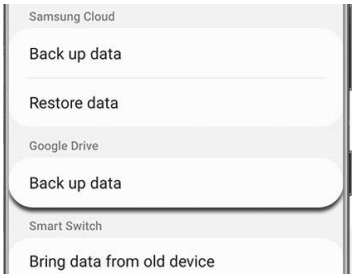


Back up and restore using Google

Google is another great option to back up and restore your data. Your Google account can be used to sync data between multiple devices, just by logging in to the same account on each device.

1. Open Settings, and then tap Accounts and backup.
2. Tap Back up data under Google Drive. If prompted, sign in using your Google account credentials.
3. Tap Back up now to begin syncing your data.
4. To restore your data, tap the switch next to Automatic restore under Google account.

   Note: The Automatic restore option may not be available on all models.

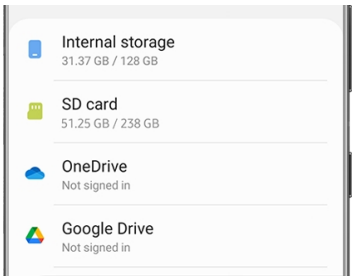


Back up data with a microSD card

If you'd rather use a method that doesn't require the internet, you can try using a microSD card. Simply insert one into your phone or tablet and then copy ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") your ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") files ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00062607/") to the card with the My Files app, so they'll be safe and sound.

Restoring backed up files is as easy as backing them up! Just copy them to the phone or tablet, or even copy them to another device.

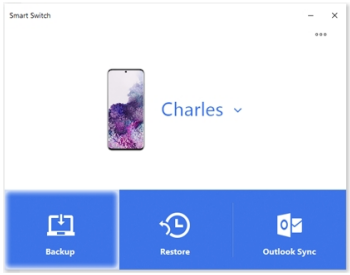
Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards.



Back up with Smart Switch on PC

Smart Switch on your PC ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00048603/") is another great option for backing up your contacts, music, photos, and more. You can use this method if you need to transfer content to a new Galaxy phone, or if you'd like to have an extra backup just in case.

After you've made a backup of your files on your PC or Mac, just connect your new phone using a USB cable. Then, you can move your data to your phone! Or, access your data another time if you need to restore it.

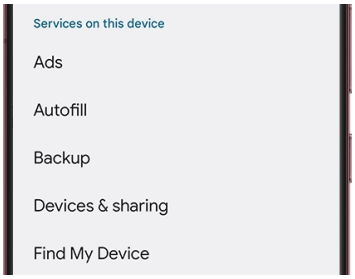


Manage Google settings

Did you search for cats on Google and now you're getting endless cat ads? No worries, you can reset your ad settings or adjust other settings for Google Services. Just make sure you've added your Google account ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00078934/") to your phone or tablet, so you can access Google Services.

To manage the Google Services setting on your device, go to Settings, tap Google, and then select the Google Services setting you want to change. After that, adjust those settings according to what you prefer.

- Ads: Opt out of ad personalization or reset your advertising ID.
- Autofill: Use autofill to fill in passwords, addresses, credit card numbers, and other personal info that is saved on your device.



- Backup: Change the settings for backing up your data to Google Drive, such as turning back up on or off and selecting your account. You can also change the data that is backed up, like apps, text messages, or device settings.
- Devices & sharing: Edit the options for Nearby Share and casting to your other devices.
- Find My Device: Quickly access the Google Find My Device ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.adm&hl=en_ US&gl=US") app.
- Mobile data & messaging: Configure your data management settings.
- Parental controls: Set up parental controls for your device.
- Personal Safety: Silence your notifications when driving with Do Not Disturb.
- Personalize using shared data: Allow Google to use your data on apps such as Drive, Gmail, and Google TV.
- Set up & restore: Use your Google account to restore contacts on your device, set up a nearby device, and set up your work profile.
- Settings for Google apps: Access settings for your connected apps, contacts sync, Google Fit, Google Play, Google Wallet, and voice and search assistant.

Note: These options may vary. For full details, please visit Google's Account Help page ("https://support.google.com/accounts/answer/3118621?hl=en") .

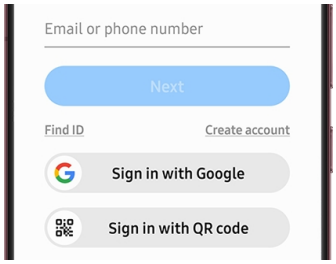
Set up and manage your Samsung account

Note: If you experience issues with your Samsung account, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") . If your phone, tablet, or TV is already logged in to a Samsung account, you will need to log out of that account to create a new account. Please see the section titled "Log out or remove your account" for more information.

Your Samsung account can be set up from your phone, tablet, computer, and even your TV. Since Galaxy phones and tablets have Samsung account software built right in, you can quickly create your account when you first receive your device. If you didn't sign in while setting up your device, you can always sign in later. You can also update your account information at any time.

Set up and manage an account on your phone or tablet

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Samsung account at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your email or phone number if you have an existing account, or tap Find ID, Create account, or Continue with Google.



   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions to sign in or create your account. If you're signing in to an existing account, you may be required to perform two-step verification.
4. Once you have signed in, your account name will appear at the top of the Settings screen; tap your name to manage your account.
5. Next, tap Profile info. Tap the info you want to change, and then make your edits. For example, you can change your birth date or preferred nickname.
6. If you'd like to change the email address associated with your account, tap Email while on the Profile info page. Tap Change, and then follow the on-screen instructions to change the email address.
7. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

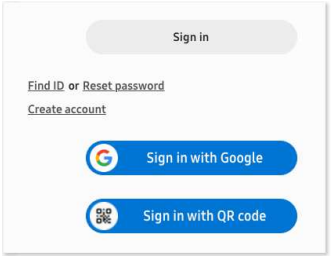
Set up and manage an account on a computer

To sign in to or create a Samsung account from a computer, you'll need to use an internet browser. Keep in mind only one Samsung account is supported per email address.

1. Navigate to the Samsung Login ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") page. Enter your credentials, and then select Sign in to log in to your account. Or, select Create account to make a new one.

   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

2. You can also select Find ID, Reset password, or Continue with Google.



3. Once you've signed in, select your profile picture in the upper right corner. Select My Account, and then select My Account Info.

4. Enter the information you want to update. When you're done, select Save at the bottom of the screen to save changes.

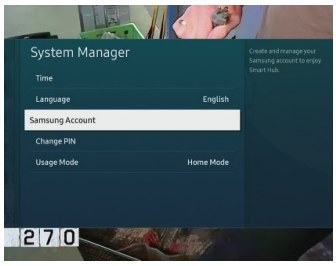
5. To change your email address, select Samsung Account settings. Select Email ID, and follow the prompts.

6. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

Set up and manage an account on a Samsung TV

1. On your TV, navigate to and select Settings, and then select General.

2. Select System Manager, and then select Samsung Account.



3. You can log in here, or create a new account. Follow the on-screen instructions to add your account.

   Note: The email address you enter when signing up will become your Samsung account username.

4. To manage your account, navigate back to System Manager.

5. Select Samsung Account, and then select My Account. From here, you can edit your desired information.

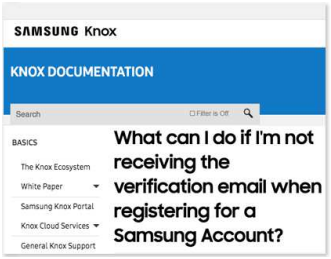
6. To confirm your identity, a verification email will also be sent to the address you entered to ensure that it was you that signed up. If you are having trouble with the verification email, please see the section titled "Verify your Samsung account via email."

If you need to update your region or country, you'll have to contact Samsung Support ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") . Keep in mind that changing your country will delete your purchase history, as well as services including Find My Mobile, Samsung account (SEMS), Call & text on other devices, Samsung Cloud, Samsung Apps (Android), Samsung Notes, Samsung Health, Samsung Pay, Samsung Payment Service, Easy Signup, Gallery, and smart assistant information.

Verify your Samsung account via email

After you sign up for a Samsung account, you will receive a verification email to help confirm your identity. Verifying your identity is important for security reasons and also because we will send you an email whenever you need to reset your password.

1. Navigate to and open the inbox for the email address associated with your Samsung account.
2. If you can’t find the email in your inbox, please check the spam mail box.
3. Open the email from Samsung account and either click the Account Verification button in the email, or copy the URL and paste it into your web browser.
4. From there, please follow the on-screen instructions to finish verifying your email address.
5. If you continue to experience issues with the verification email from Samsung, please see our Email verification guide ("https://support.samsungknox.com/hc/en-us/articles/360032622774-What-can-I-do-if-I-m- not-receiving-the-verification-email-when-registering-for-a-Samsung-Account-") .



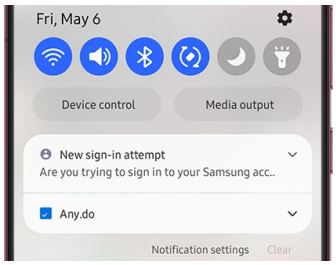
Note: You can sign up for multiple Samsung accounts if you have multiple email addresses. However, each account is treated separately. Even if the owner is the same person, the information on each account is managed independently.

Sign in with two-step verification

Note: If you cannot access your Samsung account because two-step verification isn't working, please contact Samsung Support for further assistance.

Samsung accounts now require a mandatory two-step verification process. This means there's an extra step when logging into your account.

1. Navigate to your Samsung account, and then enter your account credentials.
2. A security notification will be sent to the Galaxy phone that has the phone number associated with your Samsung account. If you have another Galaxy device that is signed into your Samsung account, a verification code will also be sent to that device via notification. You can register up to three phone numbers to your account.



3. The phone notification will say "Did you just sign in to your Samsung account?" Tap the notification, and then tap Yes.
4. The phone will display a verification code. Enter this code in to the designated field, and then select Verify.
5. If the password was entered correctly, you will be signed in! If something went wrong, you can send another verification code.

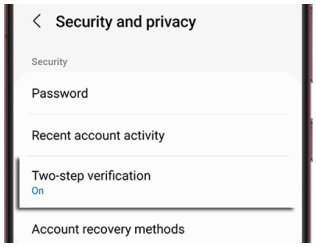
If you'd like to change the associated number or email address, or if you'd like to add an additional authentication method, please see the next section for more details. You can learn even more about two-step authentication by checking out our guide ("https://account.samsung.com/membership/guide/2step/") .

Adjust your number, email, and other two-step verification settings

If needed, you can change your two-step verification settings, such as the phone number the code will be sent to. The settings menu also allows you to pick an authenticator app and view backup codes as an alternative way to sign in.

1. First, you'll need to navigate to the two-step verification Security settings page. You can access it from a phone, tablet, or a web browser on your computer.

    - Phone or tablet: Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap your name at the top. Tap Security settings, and then tap Two-step verification. Enter your Samsung account's password, and then tap OK.

    - From a web browser: Navigate to the Samsung Login ("https://www.samsung.com/us/account/signin/") page and sign in to your account. Hover over your profile picture, and then select My Account. Select My Account Info, and then select Security. Enter your Samsung account's password, select Confirm, and then select Two-step verification.

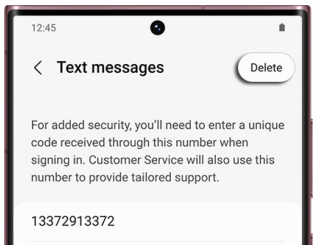
2. Once you've reached the Security settings page, the steps are more or less the same, whether you're on a handheld device or a computer.

3. To change which phone number will receive verification codes, select Text messages. Select Add, enter your desired phone number, and then select Verify or Send code.

4. A code will be sent to the phone number you just added; enter the code to verify your identity. Now whenever you need to perform two-step verification, a code will be sent to that phone number and any other digital devices registered under the same Samsung account.

5. If you have more than one number added to your account, you can delete any you are not using.

    - Phone or tablet: From the Security settings page, select Text messages. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Delete. Select the number you want to remove, and then tap Delete.

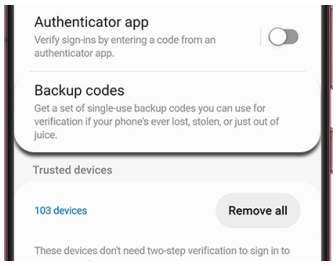
    - Web browser: From the Security settings page, select Text messages. Select Delete next to the number you want to remove.

    Note: Delete or More options will not appear unless you have multiple numbers added.

6. To change which registered devices will receive a verification code, select Galaxy device notifications or Send code to your devices from the Security settings page. Select the switch(es) next to your desired device(s) to turn verification notifications on or off.

7. You can use an Authenticator app instead of regular two-step verification if you prefer.
Select Authenticator app from the Security settings page, and follow the on-screen instructions to link the app.

8. As an extra precaution, you can also use backup codes to sign in to your account. Select Backup codes from the Security settings page to view your current codes. You can download the codes or request new ones if needed. Select Done when you're finished.



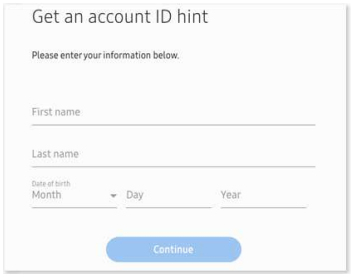
9. Trusted devices are devices that do not need two-step verification to sign in to your account. If you have security concerns, such as your account being compromised, you can tap Remove all or Remove all devices to delete every device that is registered as trusted.

   Note: Devices will be added as trusted devices again once you go through the verification process.

Find your Samsung ID

If you forgot the ID to your Samsung account, you can find it on your phone, tablet, or computer. Navigate to the account retrieval page ("https://account.samsung.com/accounts/v1/samsung_com_us/findId#") on the Samsung website, enter your information, and then select Continue. Your Samsung account ID (email address) will be partially displayed. Next, select Go to your Samsung account to sign in.

If you still have difficulty recovering your ID, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for help.



Change or reset your password

Did you forget the password to your Samsung account or have a hard time remembering it? There are options for resetting or changing your password, so you don't have to keep guessing.

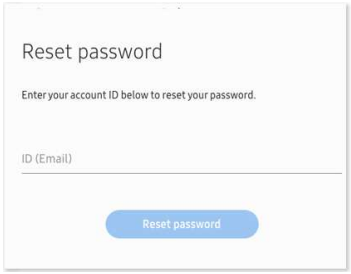
Reset your password

1. On a Galaxy device, there is a Reset password option. Select this on the Samsung Login page to make a new password.

2. If you can't find this option or if it isn't working, you can also reset your password through a browser.

3. Use a web browser to navigate to the Reset password page ("https://account.samsung.com/accounts/v1/samsung_com_us/resetPassword#") on the Samsung website, and then enter the email or phone number associated with your Samsung account.

4. Then, select Reset password. An email will be sent to your inbox; follow the instructions in the email to reset your password.



If you still have difficulty resetting your password, please contact us ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for help.

Change your existing password

1. Navigate to your Samsung account on your Galaxy phone or tablet by opening Settings and then tapping your name at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Security and privacy, and then tap Password.
3. Enter your current password, and then enter your desired new password. Enter the new password one more time to confirm, and then tap Save.
4. You will be logged out from the Samsung account on your Galaxy device as a security precaution, and a popup message with appear. Enter the new password you just created, and then tap Sign in.
5. You may be required to go through the two-step verification process to log back into your account.

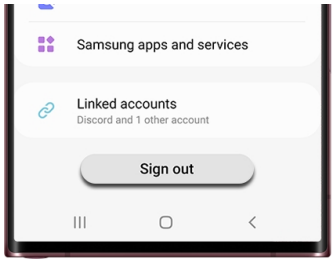
Log out or remove your account

You can log out of your Samsung account on a computer by using the website, but logging out on a phone or tablet is a little different. To "log out" on a phone or tablet, you actually have to remove the account. Doing so may disable some features, but you can always add the account back later if you like.

If you want to permanently delete your Samsung account, please refer to the next section.

Log out on a phone or tablet

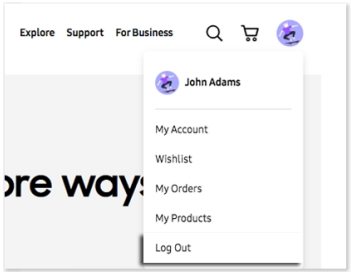
1. To log out from a phone or tablet, navigate to and open Settings, and then tap your name at the top.
2. Swipe down to the bottom and tap Sign out.



3. Tap Sign out again, enter your account password, and then tap OK.

Log out on a PC or Mac

To log out of your Samsung account on a computer, you'll need to use an internet browser. Navigate to the Samsung ("https://www.samsung.com/us/") website, select your name in the upper right corner, and then select Log Out.



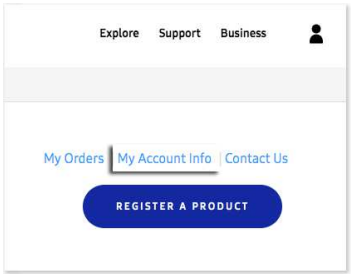
Note: If you remove your Samsung account from your device, your synced data will be deleted from the device and new data will no longer be synced. All the data stored on your device that hasn't been synced with Samsung Cloud will remain on the device.

Delete your account

Deleting your Samsung account will also delete your Samsung purchase history, content subscriptions, content uploads, and personal profile information. This information cannot be recovered, so be certain you want to delete your account before you continue.

If you are unable to delete your account, you may have unresolved payment issues. Contact Samsung Support ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/contact/") for further assistance.

1. Using an internet browser, navigate to the Samsung Login page ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/account/") .
2. Log in using your ID and password, and then select My Account info.
3. Select the Profile card, and then select Samsung Account settings.
4. Select Delete account, then review the precautions, and then follow the on-screen prompts to finish deleting it.



External storage transfer

MicroSD card types

Unless you are a tech wizard, you probably aren't aware that microSD cards ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=update-your-device-s oftware") come in multiple classes. Other than storage capacity, there are different factors that separate them. Some also come with extra features that give them distinct classifications.

- MicroSD cards offer capacity up to 2GB.
- MicroSDHC (High Capacity) cards offer capacity up to 32GB.
- MicroSDXC (extended Capacity) cards offer capacity from over 32GB and up to 2TB.
- Each type of card has a speed rating of 2, 4, 6, 8, or 10, from slowest to fastest.

While you can use any class of microSD cards in your phone or tablet, the microSDXC card is recommended for

high-resolution video recording, due to its large storage capacity and high-speed read and write capability. For less demanding use, such as still photography, regular microSD or microSDHC cards will be sufficient.

Insert the microSD card

Note: Not all phone or tablet models support microSD cards. On these models, there will only be a slot for the SIM card.

MicroSD cards give you tons of space on your phone or tablet, but they are really tiny. Just be careful not to drop or lose the microSD card.

1. Insert the ejector tool (which comes with your phone or tablet) into the hole in the SIM and microSD card tray on the top of your phone or tablet. If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.

2. When the tray pops out, pull it out of the phone or tablet.

3. Carefully place the microSD card into the larger opening in the tray - the SIM card slot is the lower, smaller opening. Then, reinsert the tray into the device.

   If you have trouble getting the SIM and SD card tray out or it becomes damaged, service may be necessary.

Transfer media to a microSD card

Just insert your microSD card and you can begin transferring your files. You can also use the options in Device care to help clear space.

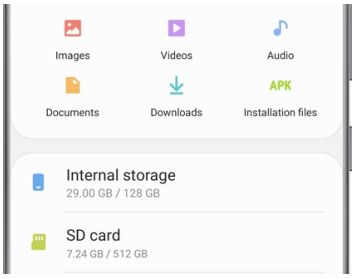
1. With your microSD card inserted, navigate to and open the My Files app.

2. Find the file(s) you want to move, and then touch and hold the file(s).

3. Tap Move or Copy at the bottom of the screen, and then navigate back to the My Files Home page.

4. Tap SD card - this will only show up if you have a SD card inserted. Navigate to the folder where you'd like to place the files.

5. Tap Move here or Copy here and the files will be placed on the SD card.



Note: You can only move or copy files this way in the My Files app. You cannot move or copy files to other apps, such as Gallery.

Move apps to microSD card

Before you relocate an app to a new storage location, make sure you have a microSD card inserted. Otherwise, your apps will have nowhere to go.

Note: Many apps are not eligible to be moved to the microSD card.

If you do not see the Change option available, you can't change the app's storage location. For example, preloaded apps cannot be moved.

1. Navigate to Settings, and then tap Apps.
2. Swipe to and select the app you want to move.
3. Tap Storage, and then tap Change. If Change does not appear, this app cannot be moved.
4. Choose SD card, and then tap Move to change the app's storage location.
5. If needed, follow the on-screen instructions to complete the move.

Unmount and remove the microSD card

Need to remove the microSD card from your phone or tablet so you can upgrade? No worries, we'll walk you through it. Remember, you must unmount the microSD card before removing it.

1. Navigate to and open Settings.
2. Tap Search, and then search for and select Storage.
3. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Storage settings.
4. Tap Unmount, and then insert the ejector tool into the hole in the SIM and microSD card tray on the top of your phone or tablet. If you have any issues removing or inserting the SIM card tray, service may be necessary. If you need a replacement SIM ejector tool, you may be able to get one from your carrier or an electronics retailer.

   Important: Be careful not to insert the ejector tool into any of the microphone or speaker holes along the edge of your device. Look for the outline of the tray to make sure you're in the right place.
5. When the tray pops out, pull it out of the phone or tablet.



6. Remove the microSD card from the tray, and then insert the tray back into the device.

If you have trouble getting the SIM and SD card tray out or it becomes damaged, service may be necessary.

Check for System updates

Perform a software update

Important: Depending on your software version, it may be necessary to repeat this process multiple times. Some carriers may require your device to be connected to Wi-Fi to check for and install updates.

If a system update ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=update-your-device-s oftware") is available, you should install it to keep your phone or tablet running smoothly. However, please be aware that during the update process, your device cannot be used and files will be inaccessible. You also will not be able to make calls, even to emergency services. Additionally, there may be some differences to the device's interface when the update completes.

1. Using two fingers, swipe down from the top of the screen, and then tap the Settings icon.
2. Swipe to and then tap Software update, or System updates. It will vary between models.
3. Tap Download and install, Check for system updates, or Check for software updates, depending on your carrier. If an update is available it should begin downloading automatically, although you may need to tap Download now on some devices.
4. When the download is complete, follow the on-screen instructions to install the update.

You can also tap the switch to enable or disable Auto download over Wi-Fi. When this option is turned on, your phone or tablet will automatically update when it's connected to a Wi-Fi network. If this option is turned off, you will need to update your device manually.

If you'd like to see the software version currently on your device, open Settings, tap About phone or About tablet, and then tap Software information.

Software update via Smart Switch

Not only is Smart Switch great for transferring data, it’s also an easy way to update your device’s software. When you open Smart Switch on your Mac or Windows PC ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/smart-switch") , you’ll see an option to update to a new software version if one is available.

1. Using the USB cable that came included in the box, connect your Galaxy device to a computer that has Smart Switch installed. You may need a USB adapter with some PCs.
2. Open Smart Switch on the computer and allow it to detect the device. If an update is available, the Update button will appear.
3. Click Update on your PC and follow the on-screen prompts to download and install the update.



Note: Don't disconnect the USB cable or use your device until the update is complete. Your Galaxy device will reboot as part of the update process.

Quick optimization

The Quick optimization feature improves your device's performance by identifying apps that use excessive battery power. It also clears away unneeded items from memory, deletes unnecessary files, scans for malware, and closes apps running in the background. Optimizing your phone is quick and simple.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Battery and device care. Tap Optimize now, and then tap Done.

Note: The Optimization feature will not appear when Device care determines your phone is in Great condition.

Battery

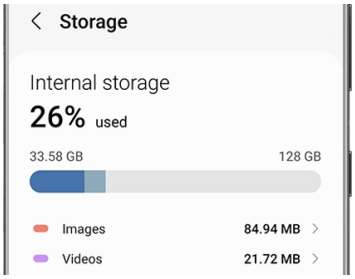
It's important to charge your device's battery properly so it can keep up with you throughout the day. Follow these tips for the best results:

- Use your Samsung charger and avoid third-party accessories.
- Ensure the charger is connected securely and is not being blocked by your device cover or case.
- Make sure the charging indicator appears on the device's display when the charger is connected.
- Use a power outlet instead of your computer for a better charge.
- Disconnect the device from the charger once the battery is fully charged.
- Do not leave your device connected to the charger for long periods of time or overnight.
- If you are having trouble and your device is not charging properly, please see our guide on Galaxy device will not charge ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01001573/") .

Clean storage

If you are worried about your device being overloaded with unnecessary files, it's about time you clear out your storage.

1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Battery and device care.
2. Tap Storage, and then tap on a category that has items you'd like to remove, such as Images.
3. Touch and hold an item to select it, and then select the additional items you'd like to remove.
4. Tap Delete or Delete all when you've selected everything, and then tap Move to Trash.

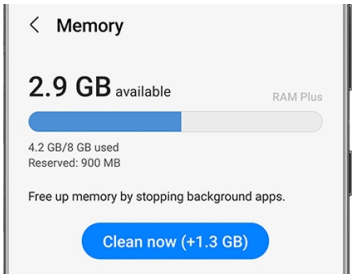


Clean memory

Is your device getting glitchy and slow? Clean up your device's memory to improve its performance.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Battery and device care. Tap Memory, and then tap Clean now to free up memory by stopping background apps.

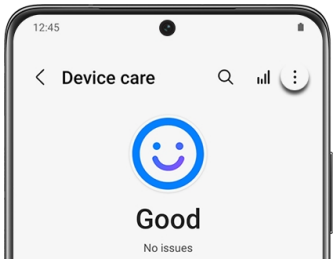
If you'd like to keep certain apps running in the background, you can tap Excluded apps and add your preferred apps to the list so they do not get closed when you use this feature.



A more thorough way to clean the phone's memory is to reboot it occasionally. You can restart the phone any time by swiping down from the top of the screen using two fingers to open the Quick settings panel, and then tapping the Power icon. Tap Restart and then tap Restart again. If necessary, you'll need to enter your PIN or password when the reboot is complete.

You can also have the phone reboot automatically on a schedule, such as late at night when you won't be using it.

1. From Settings, swipe to and tap Battery and device care.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Automation.



3. Tap Auto restart at set times, and then tap the switch to turn it on.
4. Tap the day or days you want to the phone to automatically restart, and then tap Time to choose what time to restart. The phone will automatically reboot at the set time if the screen is off, the phone is not being used, and the battery is at least at 30%. You'll need to enter your PIN or password to use the phone after the restart, but you'll still get notifications, and your alarms will go off in the morning!

Power saving mode

If you know you'll be away from a charger for an extended period and you want to make sure your device will last, just turn on Power saving mode. This way, you won’t have to worry about a low battery.

First, navigate to Settings, and then tap Battery and device care. Tap Battery, and then tap Power saving. Tap the switch to turn it on. This will limit certain things on your device, such as background network usage and syncing.

You can use additional power saving options as well:



- Turn off Always On Display: This will disable the Always On Display feature.
- Limit CPU speed to 70%: Decreases the processing speed of your device.
- Decrease brightness by 10%: Dims your device’s screen by 10%.
- Limit apps and Home screen: This option will provide you with maximum power saving by limiting background activity, using a simplified Home screen, and limiting available apps. It will also turn off Edge panels.

  In order to turn these options on or off, Power saving must be disabled. Once you've made your desired adjustments, you can turn Power saving back on. You can also save battery power by putting unused apps to sleep with sleeping apps settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088422/") .

  Note: Devices with One UI 2.5 or lower will have different power saving options, such as Optimized, Medium power saving, and Maximum power saving. To find these options, open Settings, tap Device care, tap Battery, and then tap Power mode.

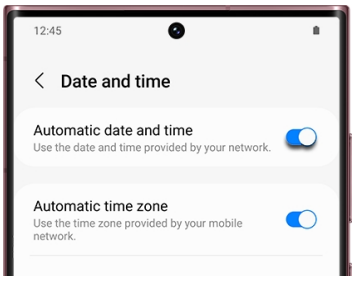
Set the date and time

Set the time and date automatically

Note: Using a mobile connection while traveling abroad could result in increased charges and fees. Please contact your network provider for more details.

When the Automatic date and time feature is enabled, your device will use your mobile network to determine the date and time. This means your device's settings will change based on the area you're currently visiting or your time zone's Daylight Savings cycle.

1. Navigate to and open Settings. Tap General management, and then tap Date and time.
2. Make sure the option for "Automatic date and time" is enabled.
3. As long your phone or tablet is connected to a mobile network, the date and time will be set automatically based on the network's settings.
4. You can check if you're connected to a network by going back to Settings and then tapping Connections.



Note: When Automatic date and time is turned on, the options for manually changing the date and time will not appear.

Set the time and date manually

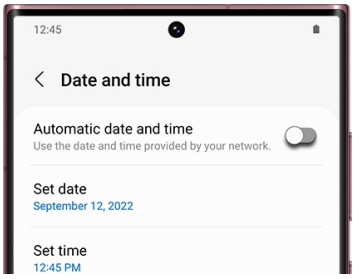
Note: Many apps and websites will not operate correctly, and you may see security warnings, if the time and date is not accurate.

If you're having trouble connecting to a network or if you simply prefer setting the time yourself, you can change the date and time manually. When you select a time zone that uses Daylight Savings (such as EST, PST, etc.), your device will automatically change the time on the appropriate date, so you don't have to worry.

Navigate to and open Settings. Tap General management, and then tap Date and time. Make sure the switches next to "Automatic date and time" and "Automatic time zone" are turned off. When the automatic setting is disabled, options for manually changing the time will appear.

You can change the following settings:

- Select time zone: Choose the appropriate region and time zone. Even though it's set to manual, your phone will still automatically change during Daylight Savings Times, based on the zone you picked.
- Set date: Select a date from the calendar, and then tap Done.
- Set time: Change the time by swiping or typing, and then tap Done.

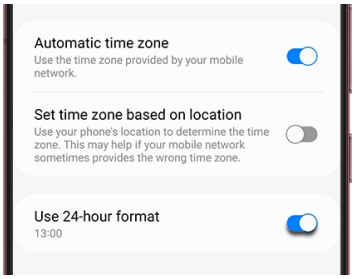


Note: If Automatic date and time is enabled again, the options for manually changing the date and time will not appear.

Use a 24-hour time format

Do you like using military time? If so, your Galaxy device has an option to make the clock appear in a 24-hour time format. It’s easy to switch, and you can always change it back to a standard clock later.

1. Navigate to and open Settings. Tap General management, and then tap Date and time.
2. Tap the switch next to Use 24-hour format.
3. Now the clock will appear in military time! It doesn’t matter if your device's time is set automatically or manually; you can still use the 24-hour format.
4. If you ever want to turn this feature off, you can simply tap the switch again.

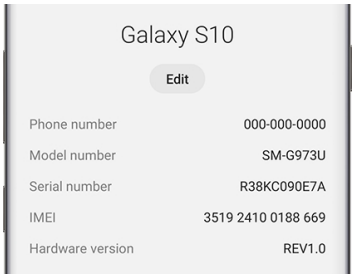


Use About phone to find the IMEI, model number, or serial number

Although the IMEI, serial number, or model number may sound complicated, viewing them is very simple. You can easily view these numbers directly on the phone or tablet. All you have to do is:

Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap About phone or About tablet.

However, there are other ways to check your IMEI or serial number. Here is a list of alternative methods you can use:



- The back of your device: The IMEI and serial number are printed in small text on the back of the device near the bottom.
- Under the battery: If you have a removable battery, look under or below the battery for the device's IMEI or serial number.
- The packaging: The original box may list the device's full IMEI and serial number.
- Your carrier's website: Your account details may list the device's IMEI and serial number.
- Bill of sale: Review your sales receipt or contract for your device's IMEI and serial number.
- Samsung Members: If you have a Samsung account and the Samsung Members ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/owners/app/samsung-members") app installed, the serial number stored in Samsung Members is actually your phone or tablet's IMEI number. ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.oh&hl=en")
- Dial *#06# on the phone to display the IMEI and serial number.

  Note: This only works when supported by your carrier.

Advanced device care options

Battery usage

In the Device care menu, you can view your phone's estimated battery life based on your recent activity. You can also closely monitor how much battery different apps are using.

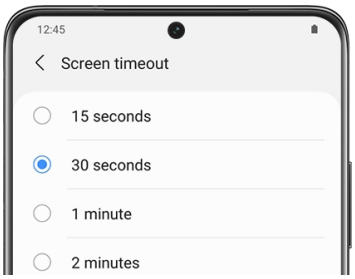
Open Settings, swipe to and tap Battery and device care, and then tap Battery. Your battery usage will appear at the top of the screen. From here, you can pinpoint what's draining your battery.

Watch the video and read the following sections to learn more ways to save battery power.

Screen timeout

Sometimes your phone just needs to take a timeout. If needed, you can shorten your phone's screen timeout to save battery life.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Display.
2. Tap Screen timeout, and then select your desired option.
3. Choose 15 seconds to save the most battery life.

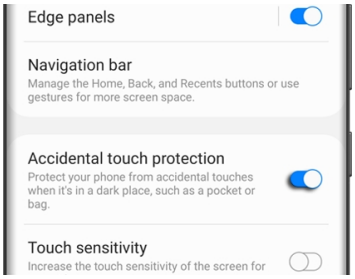


Note: The screen timeout is set to 30 seconds by default.

Accidental touch protection

You can reduce battery drain and stop embarassing pocket dials by blocking accidental touches. That way, you won't have any more mishaps.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Display.
2. Swipe to the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the switch next to "Accidental touch protection" to turn it on or off.

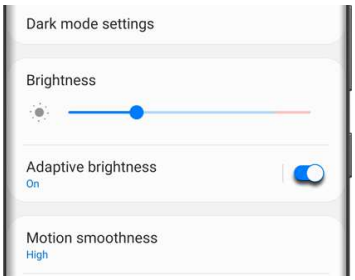


Adaptive brightness

If the screen's hurting your eyes, turn on Adaptive brightness. This feature will learn your usage patterns and

automatically adjust the screen's brightness based on your prior adjustments. It also can help extend your battery life!

Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Display. Tap the switch next to "Adaptive brightness" to turn it on or off.



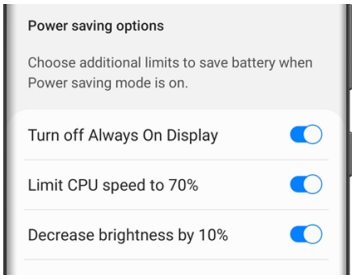
Power saving mode

Note: Using Power saving mode can affect app and device performance. Some tasks and features may take longer to complete or update. Additionally, apps running in the background may not receive updates or send you notifications when Power saving mode is enabled.

Before you turn in for the night, change your phone's power mode. This will decrease your phone’s performance and save battery life.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Battery and device care.
2. Tap Battery, and then tap Power saving.
3. Tap the switches next to your desired settings or customizations.
4. Finally, tap the switch at the top of the screen to activate Power saving mode.

You will not be able to adjust the settings once the mode is enabled. If you want to change any of the settings, you'll need to temporarily disable Power saving mode.

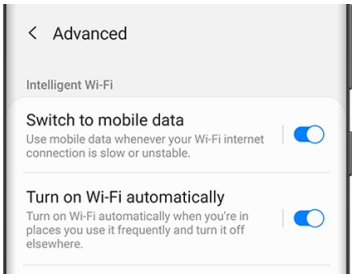


Adaptive Wi-Fi

If you're always on Wi-Fi browsing your favorite blogs and video channels, you can save power on that too. Plus, you can reduce battery usage by analyzing Wi-Fi usage.

1. Open Settings, tap Connections, and then tap Wi-Fi.
2. Tap More options (the three vertical dots), and then tap Advanced.
3. Tap the switch next to Turn on Wi-Fi automatically.

   Note: This feature is not available on all phone models. Additionally, it may only work when a SIM card is inserted.



Sleeping apps

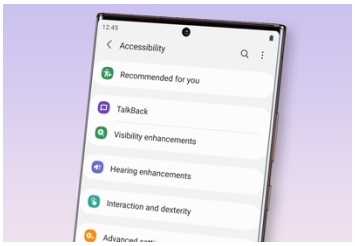
Opening apps all day can drain your phone's battery quickly, but you can save some power with sleeping app settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00088422/") .

If there are certain apps you rarely use, you can set them to sleep in the background so your battery won't drain as fast. You can also set apps to sleep automatically when you haven't opened them in a while.



Accessibility

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091488

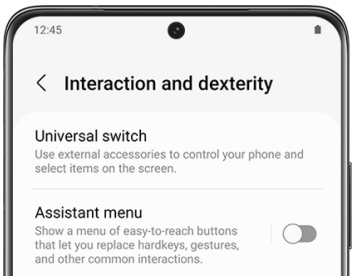


Interaction and dexterity

You can set custom controls ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=interactions-and-dex terity") for receiving calls or add an assistant menu to your screen to help you access different functions.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accessibility. Tap Interaction and dexterity for the available controls:

- Universal switch: Allows you to control your device with custom switches. Connect accessories for navigating, use facial detections with your camera, and set different options for tapping on the screen.



- Assistant menu: Displays a fixed menu with common controls and gestures like navigation buttons, swiping, an on-screen touch pad, and more. You can edit the menu to include your frequently used buttons.
- Voice Access: Control your device with just your voice. You can use voice commands to launch apps, select buttons, swipe on the screen, and type.

  Note: This feature is currently available in English, French, Italian, German, and Spanish.
- Answering and ending calls: Choose how you would like to answer and end phone calls. For example, you can have a caller's name read aloud to you and press the Volume key to answer.
  Note: This setting may not be available on tablets.
- Interaction control: Keep the device focused on a single app by blocking interactions from other apps and areas of the screen, like the navigation bar buttons and the keyboard.
- Touch and hold delay: Set the time threshold for when a continuous touch is registered as a touch and hold on your screen. You can customize the time as well.
- Tap duration: Set the amount of time the screen is touched until it is recognized as a tap.
- Ignore repeated touches: Turn this on so your initial tap is recognized and taps that follow are disregarded.

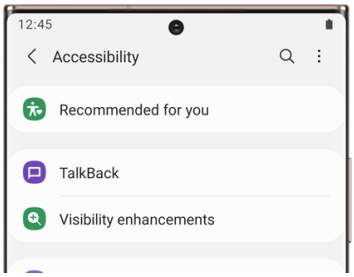
A time limit can be set for how long the extra screen taps are ignored.

- Auto action after pointer stops: Choose the delay time for an automatic click when using a USB pointing device.
- Sticky keys: If you have a USB keyboard attached, modifiers like Shift and Ctrl will stay pressed until another key is pressed so you can enter keyboard shortcuts one at a time.
- Slow keys: Choose a time delay for how long a key should be held until it recognized as a key press.
- Bounce keys: Set a time limit for waiting until a key is pressed a second time.

About Accessibility

Having some trouble using your phone? No worries, there's plenty of features to help you out. From Settings, search for and select Accessibility. Then, choose your desired option:

- TalkBack ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085503/") : Talkback is a Voice Assistant so your phone can provide spoken feedback when you select items or go through tutorials. You can also adjust even more settings like Text-to-speech, Vibration Feedback, and so on.



- Visibility enhancements ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085504/") : Make fonts stand out, turn on Negative colors, remove animations, and more.
- Hearing enhancements ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085522/") : You can use Sound detectors to receive alerts when your phone hears the doorbell or a baby crying, or mute all sounds on your phone, among other settings.
- Interaction and dexterity ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085542/") : Enhance or replace touch interactions and other controls. Some features include Universal switch to control your phone with custom switches, and Assistant menu to turn on functions that help users with reduced dexterity.
- Advanced settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085543/") : Manage Direct access features, like using the Power and Volume keys to quickly open Accessibility settings, and other advanced functions.
- Installed apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085543/") : Accessibility apps and services you download and install from Play Store or Galaxy Apps will appear in this section.

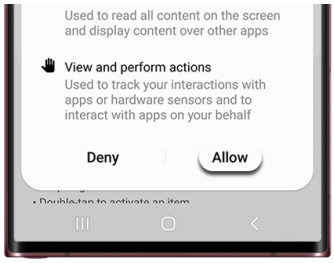
Talkback

Enable and navigate with TalkBack

Once you turn on TalkBack, the voice assistant will begin reading every on-screen item that you type, and we mean everything. This can make it difficult to navigate the phone or tablet, but once you know the trick, it will be

a breeze. Follow these steps to activate TalkBack and learn how to use it:

1. Navigate to Settings and then swipe to and tap Accessibility.
2. Tap TalkBack, and then tap the switch at the top of the screen.
3. Review the information, and then tap Allow to activate.



4. Follow the tutorial for an interactive explanation of the features. When TalkBack is enabled, the voice assistant will read whatever you tapped aloud. For example, if you tap Continue, the voice assistant will say "Continue."
5. To select an item (not just read it), you have to single tap it and then double tap it. This will allow you to navigate around your phone. For example, you will need to single tap the Back arrow, and then double tap it to go the previous page.

Adjust TalkBack settings

To access TalkBack's settings and features, tap Settings on the main TalkBack screen for a list of all available features. Remember, if TalkBack is already enabled, you will need to single tap and then double tap items to select them.

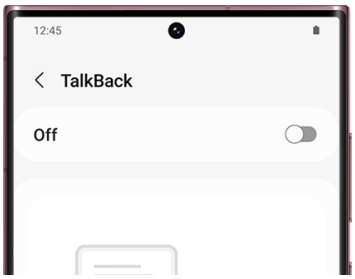
- New features in TalkBack: Take a tutorial to learn about all the new things available with TalkBack.
- Text-to-speech settings: Choose your preferred engine for text, which will allow for more language options. You can also adjust the speech rate and pitch with the sliders.
- Verbosity: Tap to enable extra wording options such as Punctuation and Capital letters, or to ask Voice Assistant to read details, like the number of items in a list.
- Speak passwords: Each character will be read aloud when entering a password. Use headphones to ensure your passwords are not overheard.
- Sound and vibration: Gives you access to several other audio options:
    - Vibration feedback: Tap this option to make your phone vibrate during speech.
    - Audio ducking: Decrease other audio volume while speaking.
    - Sound feedback: Turn on sound feedback.
    - Sound feedback volume: Adjust the speech volume of sound feedback. You can match the volume or change it to 25%, 50%, or 75% to suit your preferences.
- Customize Focus Indicator: Change the color of the Focus Indicator. This is the box that highlights items when you're using TalkBack.
- Customize gestures: Adjust and customize different gestures for the Reading menu so it's easier for you to use. There are many options to choose from.
- Customize menus: Adjust and customize the TalkBack menu or the Reading menu to show your desired options.

- Braille keyboard: Connect a braille keyboard and adjust other settings so it's easier for you to type.
- Tutorial and help: View several help options:
    - Tutorial: Revisit the initial tutorial to learn how to use TalkBack's different features.
    - Practice gestures: Learn and practice the different gestures you can use with TalkBack.
    - Help: Open and view Google's troubleshooting guide for TalkBack.
- Advanced settings: Access advanced features you can use with TalkBack:
    - Custom labels: Create and save your own labels to help you navigate through your phone. These can be created by tapping once on an icon or tab, and then double tapping and holding on the screen.
    - Single-tap to activate: Tap once on a focused item to activate.
    - Element description order: Change the order the voice assistant describes items on the screen.
    - Typing preference: Change the action used to type when TalkBack is activated.
    - Keyboard shortcuts: Tap this to view available shortcuts. You can choose Default or Classic key mapping.
    - Developer settings: Special settings that debug the phone and run other operations. You should not use these options unless you are tech-savvy.
    - Privacy policy: Review Google's privacy policy for TalkBack.
    - Terms of service: View Google's terms of service for different countries.
- Open TalkBack in the Galaxy Store: Open TalkBack to see its app details or update it through the Galaxy Store.

Turn off TalkBack

You can turn off TalkBack if you no longer wish to use it. Keep in mind you will need to single tap and then double tap items to select them.

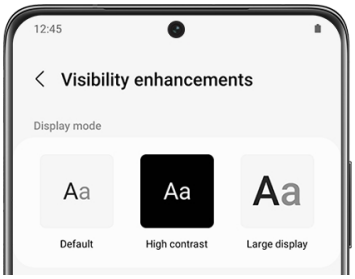
1. Navigate to and open Settings.
2. Swipe to and tap Accessibility, and then tap TalkBack. Tap the switch next to TalkBack to turn it off.
3. Tap Turn off to confirm.



Visibility enhancements

Enhancements ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=visibility-enhancements") are available for users with vision loss, or for anyone who wants to customize the content on their device. You can also choose your own fonts and colors, so your screen is easier to read.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accessibility, and then tap Visibility Enhancements. Swipe up to see all the convenient options for improving your screen:



- Display mode: Select from Default, High contrast, or Large display.
- High contrast theme: Download and use themes that feature light colors on dark backgrounds. They are much easier on the eyes.

  Note: This option is not available on tablets.
- High contrast fonts: Tap to add an outline to all fonts so that they stand out against the screen.
- High contrast keyboard: Change the keyboard style by selecting different color palettes.
- Highlight buttons: This will add a highlighted color to buttons so they are easier to see and select.
- Color inversion: Allows you to invert the colors of your menus and fonts to improve visibility.
- Color adjustment: Change the color settings if you cannot see certain shades like reds, greens, or blues.
- Add color filter: Choose from a list of colors to add a filter to your screen, and then adjust the opacity with the slider.
- Remove animations: Tap this to negate screen effects from apps if your eyes are sensitive to animations. It can also help speed up your device a little.
- Reduce transparency and blur: Reduce visual effects so menus and dialogs are easier to see.
- Extra dim: Apply an extra dim setting to the screen.
- Magnification: Choose between triple tapping or using the Accessibility shortcut to magnify the screen.
- Large mouse/touchpad pointer: If a mouse or touchpad is connected to your device the pointer will be enlarged to help you with navigating and selecting.
- Font size and style: Choose a new font style from the provided options or download your own. You can change the font size and even bold it if you like.
- Screen zoom: Permanently enlarge your screen with the slider. Your selection will save and reflect on your screen.

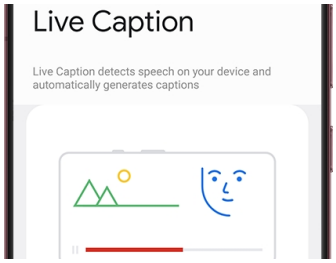
Hearing enhancements

Note: If you are using a Bluetooth hearing aid with your Galaxy device and aren't sure how to place your hearing aid in pairing mode, please see the manufacturer's instructions or user manual for more information.

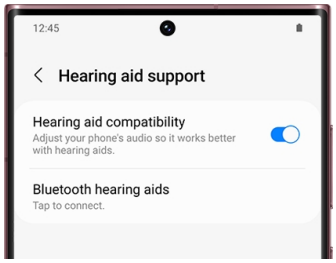
The standard audio settings may not be suitable for everyone, depending on the level of hearing loss. If you need assistance detecting different sounds, like text message notifications or nearby conversations, you can turn on the Hearing enhancement features ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=hearing-enhancements ") .

To access the hearing features, navigate to and open Settings, tap Accessibility, and then tap Hearing enhancements. The following will be available:

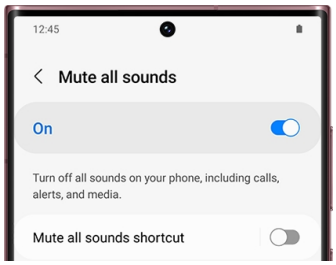
- Real Time Text: An alternative to external TTY devices. You can use RTT to communicate via text while on a voice call.
- Live Transcribe ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00092542/?acc=live-transcribe" target=" _blank") : Download the Live Transcribe app to display live speech on screen. Tap this option to begin the download.
- Live Caption ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00092542/?acc=live-caption" target="_bl ank") : Detects speech on your device and automatically generates captions.



- Caption preference: Adjust how captions will appear in apps such as YouTube.
- Sound Notifications or Sound detectors: Checks for sounds you want to be notified about, like when a smoke alarm beeps or a baby cries. You can also use flash notifications ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085543/") to make your screen flash during alarms.
- Hearing aid support: Optimize the sound quality for use with hearing aids, or use Bluetooth to pair compatible hearing aids. To connect a wireless hearing device, tap Bluetooth hearing aids, and then tap Continue. Follow the on-screen prompts to pair your phone with the hearing aid. If you aren't sure how to place your hearing aiding in pairing mode, please see the manufacturer's instructions or user manual for more information.



- Amplify ambient sound: Using your headphones, you can increase the volume of conversations around you. Tap the switch to turn this on, and the Accessibility icon (it looks like a person) will appear in your navigation bar.
- Adapt Sound: Find the appropriate sound based on your age range, or create your own personalized sound for your level of hearing impairment.
- Mute all sounds: Silence all sounds, including calls and notifications.



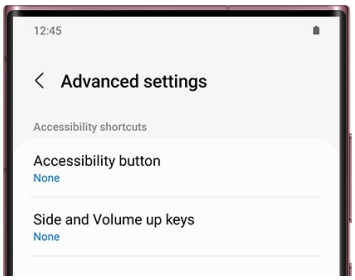
- Mono audio: Easily switch between stereo and mono audio.
- Left/right sound balance: Adjust the slider to find the correct balance for sounds coming from the left side and right side of your device's speakers or a connected audio device. This feature does not affect phone calls.

Advanced settings

You can use your device's advanced options ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=advanced-settings" t arget="_self") to create direct access for certain features, customize your notifications, and much more.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accessibility. Tap Advanced settings, and then choose your desired option:

- Accessibility button: Tapping one of the available services will create an Accessibility button on your navigation bar. You can tap this button to activate the service of your choosing.



- Side and Volume up keys: Activate accessibility functions when you're pressing the Side and Volume up keys at the same time. If two or more functions are set to the keys, a Direct access window will appear on the screen, so you can select which function you'd like to use.
- Volume up and down keys: Pressing and holding the Volume up and Volume down keys for three seconds will activate the service of your choosing.
- Flash notification: The camera or screen will flash during alarms or when you receive notifications.
- Time to take action: Select how long unread messages will appear on your screen.
- Speak keyboard input aloud: Your device will read aloud characters, words, or both. Tap the switch to turn on this feature.
- Bixby Vision for accessibility: You can use Bixby Vision to access helpful features like Scene describer, Object identifier, Text reader, and Color detector. These features allow you to point the camera at an object, text, or color to hear additional information. Or, you can capture a scene to hear a description of it.
- Voice Label: Save recordings on NFC tags. Voice Recorder must be installed to use this function. Tap Voice Label, and then tap Download to install Voice Recorder.

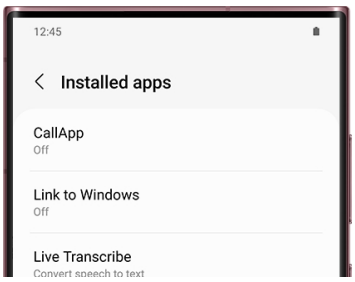
Installed apps

It may be difficult to keep track of your accessibility apps, especially if you're using several at once. The Accessibility Home screen provides a quick way to view all your installed apps and services in one place, so you can always check them.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Accessibility.

2. Tap Installed apps to view a complete list of accessibility apps that are installed. You can turn the apps on or off from this screen by tapping each one and then tapping the switch.

3. Tap Settings to open the settings list for the app.

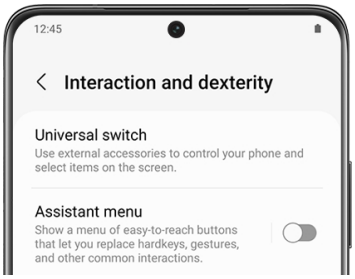


Interaction and dexterity

You can set custom controls ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=interactions-and-dex terity") for receiving calls or add an assistant menu to your screen to help you access different functions.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accessibility. Tap Interaction and dexterity for the available controls:

- Universal switch: Allows you to control your device with custom switches. Connect accessories for navigating, use facial detections with your camera, and set different options for tapping on the screen.



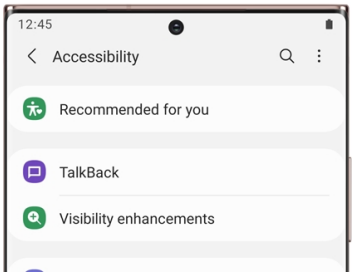
- Assistant menu: Displays a fixed menu with common controls and gestures like navigation buttons, swiping, an on-screen touch pad, and more. You can edit the menu to include your frequently used buttons.
- Voice Access: Control your device with just your voice. You can use voice commands to launch apps, select buttons, swipe on the screen, and type.

  Note: This feature is currently available in English, French, Italian, German, and Spanish.
- Answering and ending calls: Choose how you would like to answer and end phone calls. For example, you can have a caller's name read aloud to you and press the Volume key to answer.
  Note: This setting may not be available on tablets.
- Interaction control: Keep the device focused on a single app by blocking interactions from other apps and areas of the screen, like the navigation bar buttons and the keyboard.
- Touch and hold delay: Set the time threshold for when a continuous touch is registered as a touch and hold on your screen. You can customize the time as well.
- Tap duration: Set the amount of time the screen is touched until it is recognized as a tap.
- Ignore repeated touches: Turn this on so your initial tap is recognized and taps that follow are disregarded. A time limit can be set for how long the extra screen taps are ignored.
- Auto action after pointer stops: Choose the delay time for an automatic click when using a USB pointing device.
- Sticky keys: If you have a USB keyboard attached, modifiers like Shift and Ctrl will stay pressed until another key is pressed so you can enter keyboard shortcuts one at a time.
- Slow keys: Choose a time delay for how long a key should be held until it recognized as a key press.
- Bounce keys: Set a time limit for waiting until a key is pressed a second time.

About Accessibility

Having some trouble using your phone? No worries, there's plenty of features to help you out. From Settings, search for and select Accessibility. Then, choose your desired option:

- TalkBack ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085503/") : Talkback is a Voice Assistant so your phone can provide spoken feedback when you select items or go through tutorials. You can also adjust even more settings like Text-to-speech, Vibration Feedback, and so on.



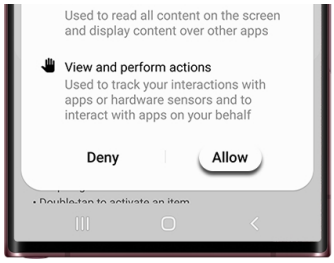
- Visibility enhancements ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085504/") : Make fonts stand out, turn on Negative colors, remove animations, and more.
- Hearing enhancements ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085522/") : You can use Sound detectors to receive alerts when your phone hears the doorbell or a baby crying, or mute all sounds on your phone, among other settings.
- Interaction and dexterity ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085542/") : Enhance or replace touch interactions and other controls. Some features include Universal switch to control your phone with custom switches, and Assistant menu to turn on functions that help users with reduced dexterity.
- Advanced settings ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085543/") : Manage Direct access features, like using the Power and Volume keys to quickly open Accessibility settings, and other advanced functions.
- Installed apps ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085543/") : Accessibility apps and services you download and install from Play Store or Galaxy Apps will appear in this section.

Talkback

Enable and navigate with TalkBack

Once you turn on TalkBack, the voice assistant will begin reading every on-screen item that you type, and we mean everything. This can make it difficult to navigate the phone or tablet, but once you know the trick, it will be a breeze. Follow these steps to activate TalkBack and learn how to use it:

1. Navigate to Settings and then swipe to and tap Accessibility.
2. Tap TalkBack, and then tap the switch at the top of the screen.
3. Review the information, and then tap Allow to activate.



4. Follow the tutorial for an interactive explanation of the features. When TalkBack is enabled, the voice assistant will read whatever you tapped aloud. For example, if you tap Continue, the voice assistant will say "Continue."
5. To select an item (not just read it), you have to single tap it and then double tap it. This will allow you to navigate around your phone. For example, you will need to single tap the Back arrow, and then double tap it to go the previous page.

Adjust TalkBack settings

To access TalkBack's settings and features, tap Settings on the main TalkBack screen for a list of all available features. Remember, if TalkBack is already enabled, you will need to single tap and then double tap items to select them.

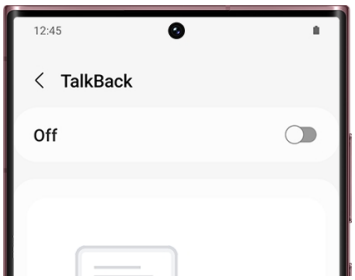
- New features in TalkBack: Take a tutorial to learn about all the new things available with TalkBack.
- Text-to-speech settings: Choose your preferred engine for text, which will allow for more language options. You can also adjust the speech rate and pitch with the sliders.
- Verbosity: Tap to enable extra wording options such as Punctuation and Capital letters, or to ask Voice Assistant to read details, like the number of items in a list.
- Speak passwords: Each character will be read aloud when entering a password. Use headphones to ensure your passwords are not overheard.
- Sound and vibration: Gives you access to several other audio options:
    - Vibration feedback: Tap this option to make your phone vibrate during speech.
    - Audio ducking: Decrease other audio volume while speaking.
    - Sound feedback: Turn on sound feedback.
    - Sound feedback volume: Adjust the speech volume of sound feedback. You can match the volume or change it to 25%, 50%, or 75% to suit your preferences.

- Customize Focus Indicator: Change the color of the Focus Indicator. This is the box that highlights items when you're using TalkBack.
- Customize gestures: Adjust and customize different gestures for the Reading menu so it's easier for you to use. There are many options to choose from.
- Customize menus: Adjust and customize the TalkBack menu or the Reading menu to show your desired options.
- Braille keyboard: Connect a braille keyboard and adjust other settings so it's easier for you to type.
- Tutorial and help: View several help options:
    - Tutorial: Revisit the initial tutorial to learn how to use TalkBack's different features.
    - Practice gestures: Learn and practice the different gestures you can use with TalkBack.
    - Help: Open and view Google's troubleshooting guide for TalkBack.
- Advanced settings: Access advanced features you can use with TalkBack:
    - Custom labels: Create and save your own labels to help you navigate through your phone. These can be created by tapping once on an icon or tab, and then double tapping and holding on the screen.
    - Single-tap to activate: Tap once on a focused item to activate.
    - Element description order: Change the order the voice assistant describes items on the screen.
    - Typing preference: Change the action used to type when TalkBack is activated.
    - Keyboard shortcuts: Tap this to view available shortcuts. You can choose Default or Classic key mapping.
    - Developer settings: Special settings that debug the phone and run other operations. You should not use these options unless you are tech-savvy.
    - Privacy policy: Review Google's privacy policy for TalkBack.
    - Terms of service: View Google's terms of service for different countries.
- Open TalkBack in the Galaxy Store: Open TalkBack to see its app details or update it through the Galaxy Store.

Turn off TalkBack

You can turn off TalkBack if you no longer wish to use it. Keep in mind you will need to single tap and then double tap items to select them.

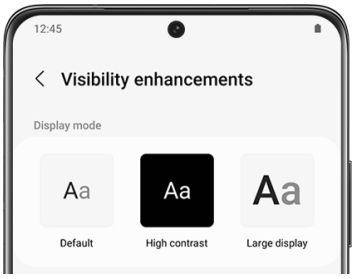
1. Navigate to and open Settings.
2. Swipe to and tap Accessibility, and then tap TalkBack. Tap the switch next to TalkBack to turn it off.
3. Tap Turn off to confirm.



Visibility enhancements

Enhancements ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=visibility-enhancements") are available for users with vision loss, or for anyone who wants to customize the content on their device. You can also choose your own fonts and colors, so your screen is easier to read.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accessibility, and then tap Visibility Enhancements. Swipe up to see all the convenient options for improving your screen:



- Display mode: Select from Default, High contrast, or Large display.
- High contrast theme: Download and use themes that feature light colors on dark backgrounds. They are much easier on the eyes.

  Note: This option is not available on tablets.
- High contrast fonts: Tap to add an outline to all fonts so that they stand out against the screen.
- High contrast keyboard: Change the keyboard style by selecting different color palettes.
- Highlight buttons: This will add a highlighted color to buttons so they are easier to see and select.
- Color inversion: Allows you to invert the colors of your menus and fonts to improve visibility.
- Color adjustment: Change the color settings if you cannot see certain shades like reds, greens, or blues.
- Add color filter: Choose from a list of colors to add a filter to your screen, and then adjust the opacity with the slider.
- Remove animations: Tap this to negate screen effects from apps if your eyes are sensitive to animations. It can also help speed up your device a little.
- Reduce transparency and blur: Reduce visual effects so menus and dialogs are easier to see.
- Extra dim: Apply an extra dim setting to the screen.
- Magnification: Choose between triple tapping or using the Accessibility shortcut to magnify the screen.
- Large mouse/touchpad pointer: If a mouse or touchpad is connected to your device the pointer will be enlarged to help you with navigating and selecting.
- Font size and style: Choose a new font style from the provided options or download your own. You can change the font size and even bold it if you like.
- Screen zoom: Permanently enlarge your screen with the slider. Your selection will save and reflect on your screen.

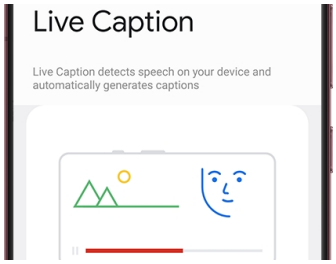
Hearing enhancements

Note: If you are using a Bluetooth hearing aid with your Galaxy device and aren't sure how to place your hearing aid in pairing mode, please see the manufacturer's instructions or user manual for more information.

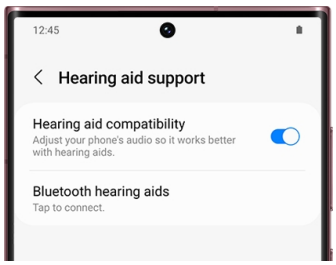
The standard audio settings may not be suitable for everyone, depending on the level of hearing loss. If you need assistance detecting different sounds, like text message notifications or nearby conversations, you can turn on the Hearing enhancement features ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=hearing-enhancements ") .

To access the hearing features, navigate to and open Settings, tap Accessibility, and then tap Hearing enhancements. The following will be available:

- Real Time Text: An alternative to external TTY devices. You can use RTT to communicate via text while on a voice call.
- Live Transcribe ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00092542/?acc=live-transcribe" target=" _blank") : Download the Live Transcribe app to display live speech on screen. Tap this option to begin the download.
- Live Caption ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00092542/?acc=live-caption" target="_bl ank") : Detects speech on your device and automatically generates captions.

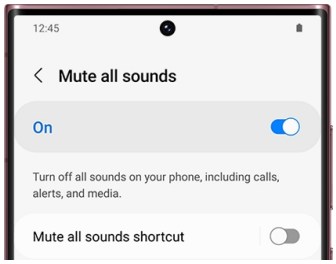


- Caption preference: Adjust how captions will appear in apps such as YouTube.
- Sound Notifications or Sound detectors: Checks for sounds you want to be notified about, like when a smoke alarm beeps or a baby cries. You can also use flash notifications ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00085543/") to make your screen flash during alarms.
- Hearing aid support: Optimize the sound quality for use with hearing aids, or use Bluetooth to pair compatible hearing aids. To connect a wireless hearing device, tap Bluetooth hearing aids, and then tap Continue. Follow the on-screen prompts to pair your phone with the hearing aid. If you aren't sure how to place your hearing aiding in pairing mode, please see the manufacturer's instructions or user manual for more information.



- Amplify ambient sound: Using your headphones, you can increase the volume of conversations around you. Tap the switch to turn this on, and the Accessibility icon (it looks like a person) will appear in your navigation bar.

- Adapt Sound: Find the appropriate sound based on your age range, or create your own personalized sound for your level of hearing impairment.
- Mute all sounds: Silence all sounds, including calls and notifications.



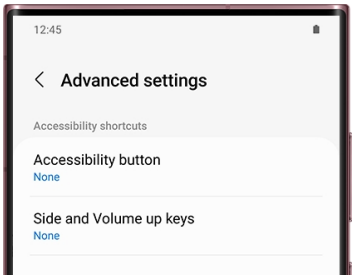
- Mono audio: Easily switch between stereo and mono audio.
- Left/right sound balance: Adjust the slider to find the correct balance for sounds coming from the left side and right side of your device's speakers or a connected audio device. This feature does not affect phone calls.

Advanced settings

You can use your device's advanced options ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/simulators/galaxy-s21/?topic=advanced-settings" t arget="_self") to create direct access for certain features, customize your notifications, and much more.

From Settings, swipe to and tap Accessibility. Tap Advanced settings, and then choose your desired option:

- Accessibility button: Tapping one of the available services will create an Accessibility button on your navigation bar. You can tap this button to activate the service of your choosing.

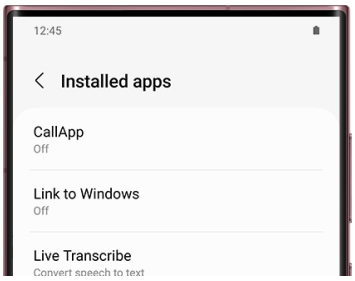


- Side and Volume up keys: Activate accessibility functions when you're pressing the Side and Volume up keys at the same time. If two or more functions are set to the keys, a Direct access window will appear on the screen, so you can select which function you'd like to use.
- Volume up and down keys: Pressing and holding the Volume up and Volume down keys for three seconds will activate the service of your choosing.
- Flash notification: The camera or screen will flash during alarms or when you receive notifications.
- Time to take action: Select how long unread messages will appear on your screen.
- Speak keyboard input aloud: Your device will read aloud characters, words, or both. Tap the switch to turn on this feature.
- Bixby Vision for accessibility: You can use Bixby Vision to access helpful features like Scene describer, Object identifier, Text reader, and Color detector. These features allow you to point the camera at an object, text, or color to hear additional information. Or, you can capture a scene to hear a description of it.
- Voice Label: Save recordings on NFC tags. Voice Recorder must be installed to use this function. Tap Voice Label, and then tap Download to install Voice Recorder.

Installed apps

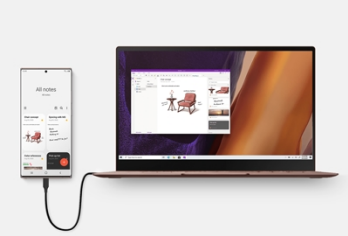
It may be difficult to keep track of your accessibility apps, especially if you're using several at once. The Accessibility Home screen provides a quick way to view all your installed apps and services in one place, so you can always check them.

1. Navigate to and open Settings, and then tap Accessibility.
2. Tap Installed apps to view a complete list of accessibility apps that are installed. You can turn the apps on or off from this screen by tapping each one and then tapping the switch.
3. Tap Settings to open the settings list for the app.



Advanced Features

https://www.samsung.com/us/support/answer/ANS00091489



DeX

DeX compatibility

With so many devices, it can be difficult to keep track of what is compatible with DeX. You can refer to the list below when connecting to DeX.

DeX Pad and DeX Station

- Galaxy S Phones: S8 series, S9 series, S10 series, S20 series, S21 Series, and S22 series.
- Galaxy Note phones: Note8, Note9, Note10 series, Note 20 series.

DeX cable or HDMI cable

Using a DeX cable or other compatible HDMI cable, you can connect to any TV or Monitor with an HDMI port.

- Galaxy S Phones: S8 series, S9 series, S10 series, S20 series, S21 Series, and S22 series.
- Galaxy Note phones: Note8, Note9, Note10 series, Note 20 series.
- Galaxy foldables: Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3, and Z Fold4.
- Galaxy A phones: A90 5G.
- Galaxy Tablets: Tab S4, Tab S5e, Tab Active Pro, Tab S6, Tab S7 series, Tabs S8 series, Tab Active 3.

Wireless DeX with a TV or Monitor

You can use Wireless Dex with 2018 and later Samsung TVs, Samsung Smart Monitors, and any other device that supports Miracast screen mirroring.

- Galaxy S Phones: S9 series, S10 series, S20 series, S21 Series, and S22 series.
- Galaxy Note phones: Note9, Note10 series, Note 20 series.
- Galaxy foldables: Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3, and Z Fold4.
- Galaxy A phones: A90 5G.
- Galaxy Tablets: Tab S5e, Tab S6, Tab S7 series, Tabs S8 series, Tab Active 3.

DeX on PC

DeX on PC works with Windows 10 and Windows 11 PCs using just a USB cable, or wirelessly.

- Galaxy S Phones: S9 series, S10 series, S20 series, S21 Series, and S22 series.
- Galaxy Note phones: Note9, Note10 series, Note 20 series.
- Galaxy foldables: Fold, Z Fold2, Z Fold3, and Z Fold4.
- Galaxy A phones: A90 5G.

Use a DeX Pad or Station with your phone

Note: Because of their size, some phones and tablets will not fit in the Pad or Station. Use a DeX cable ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-cable-ee-i3100fbegww /") with these devices instead.

You can ace that research project by using a DeX Pad ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-pad-ee-m5100tbegus/") or a DeX Station ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-station---black-ee-m g950tbegus/") . Both products are docking stations that your phone can sit in. With a DeX Pad your phone will lie flat, and with a DeX Station it will be propped upright. The great thing about a DeX Pad or DeX Station is that you can connect wired accessories directly to it, such as a wired keyboard. You can also use Bluetooth accessories if desired. Please see the "Use DeX with a keyboard and mouse" section for more details.

1. To set it up, connect the DeX Pad or Station to the charging adapter that came with the phone.
2. Connect one end of an HDMI cable to the HDMI port, and then connect the other end into the monitor's HDMI port.
3. If your phone has a case on it, make sure you take it off before connecting because it may cause connection issues. Then, connect your phone to the DeX Pad or Station.
4. If needed, unlock your phone. If it's your first time using DeX, a popup message will display on your phone's Home screen. Tap Continue, and then tap Start to allow access to Full Desktop mode. Another Samsung DeX popup will appear - tap OK.
5. Then, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Notification panel. Tap the notification that says "Use your phone as a touchpad." Now you can control the monitor's cursor using your phone! Read the instructions on the monitor, and then select OK.

   Note: You can perform basic operations using the touchpad connected to your PC, but some gestures, such as pinching with two fingers to zoom in, won't work.
6. On some phones, your monitor will automatically start screen mirroring whatever is on your phone. To switch to Samsung DeX, open the Notification panel by swiping down from the top of the screen. Tap the Samsung DeX notification, and then tap Samsung DeX. The monitor will switch to Samsung DeX mode.
7. To exit DeX, select the Apps icon in the bottom left corner of the DeX screen, and then select Exit DeX.

Use a DeX Pad or Station with your phone

Note: Because of their size, some phones and tablets will not fit in the Pad or Station. Use a DeX cable ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-cable-ee-i3100fbegww /") with these devices instead.

You can ace that research project by using a DeX Pad ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-pad-ee-m5100tbegus/") or a DeX Station ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-station---black-ee-m g950tbegus/") . Both products are docking stations that your phone can sit in. With a DeX Pad your phone will lie flat, and with a DeX Station it will be propped upright. The great thing about a DeX Pad or DeX Station is that you can connect wired accessories directly to it, such as a wired keyboard. You can also use Bluetooth accessories if desired. Please see the "Use DeX with a keyboard and mouse" section for more details.

1. To set it up, connect the DeX Pad or Station to the charging adapter that came with the phone.
2. Connect one end of an HDMI cable to the HDMI port, and then connect the other end into the monitor's HDMI port.
3. If your phone has a case on it, make sure you take it off before connecting because it may cause connection issues. Then, connect your phone to the DeX Pad or Station.
4. If needed, unlock your phone. If it's your first time using DeX, a popup message will display on your phone's Home screen. Tap Continue, and then tap Start to allow access to Full Desktop mode. Another Samsung DeX popup will appear - tap OK.
5. Then, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Notification panel. Tap the notification that says "Use your phone as a touchpad." Now you can control the monitor's cursor using your phone! Read the instructions on the monitor, and then select OK.

   Note: You can perform basic operations using the touchpad connected to your PC, but some gestures, such as pinching with two fingers to zoom in, won't work.
6. On some phones, your monitor will automatically start screen mirroring whatever is on your phone. To switch to Samsung DeX, open the Notification panel by swiping down from the top of the screen. Tap the Samsung DeX notification, and then tap Samsung DeX. The monitor will switch to Samsung DeX mode.
7. To exit DeX, select the Apps icon in the bottom left corner of the DeX screen, and then select Exit DeX.

Use a DeX cable or HDMI cable

Note: You can also use a standard USB-C to HDMI adapter to start DeX.

A DeX cable ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/dex-cable-ee-i3100fbegww /") or HDMI cable lets you connect your phone or tablet directly to a monitor or TV without the use of any other accessories. Use the steps below to set up DeX:

1. Connect the USB-C end of the DeX cable or HDMI cable to the port on the phone or tablet, and then connect the other end into the TV's or monitor's HDMI port.

   Note: Keep in mind that DeX will restart if you remove or unplug the HDMI cable. Please remember to save all changes before unplugging the cable.
2. If needed, unlock your phone or tablet. If it's your first time using DeX, a popup message will display on your phone or tablet's Home screen. Tap Continue, and then tap Start to allow access to Full Desktop mode.
3. Next, another Samsung DeX popup will appear on the phone or tablet - tap OK, and then swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Notification panel. Tap the notification that says "Use your phone as a touchpad." Now you can navigate the TV or monitor using your device!

   Note: You can perform basic operations using the touchpad connected to your PC, but some gestures, such as pinching with two fingers to zoom in, won't work.
4. Read the instructions on the TV or monitor, and then select OK.
5. To scroll in windows in DeX mode, touch and hold the touchpad, and then drag the pointer up or down.
6. With some devices, your TV or monitor will automatically start screen mirroring whatever is on your device. To switch to Samsung DeX, open the Notification panel by swiping down from the top of the screen. Tap the Samsung DeX notification, and then tap Samsung DeX. The TV or monitor will switch to Samsung DeX mode.
7. To exit DeX, select the Apps icon in the bottom left corner of the DeX screen, and then select Exit DeX.

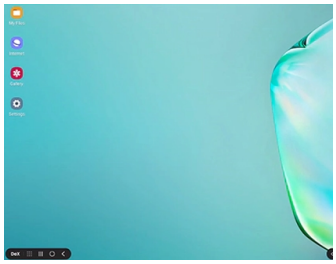
Use DeX for PC

Note: This feature is not available on Galaxy tablets. USB tethering cannot be used with Samsung DeX.

The new DeX for PC app is similar to the regular DeX mode, but it has some other features thrown in, and you don't need to buy a separate DeX accessory; you can use the USB charging cable ("https://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/mobile-accessories/phones/usb-c-to-usb-c-cable-bla ck-ep-da705bbegus/") that came with your phone.

1. First, you'll need to download the DeX for PC app. On your computer, go to the Samsung DeX website ("https://www.samsung.com/us/explore/dex/") , and then download the version you need.
2. Next, navigate to and open the download file, and use the on-screen prompts to complete the setup process.
3. When the software is set up, open the Samsung DeX app on your computer.
4. Then, connect your compatible device to the computer using a USB-C cable. If your computer doesn't have this connection, you can use a USB-C to USB-A cable.
5. Wait a few seconds for the phone to connect; when it does, a DeX window will appear on your monitor. Use your computer's mouse to control things on your connected phone, such as opening the phone's app.

   Note: You can perform basic operations using the touchpad connected to your PC, but some gestures, such as pinching with two fingers to zoom in, won’t work.

6. To exit DeX, select the Apps icon in the bottom left corner of the DeX screen, and then select Exit DeX.

Here is a list of the cool things you can do only with DeX for PC:

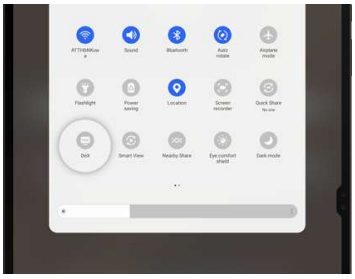
- Click and drag a file from your PC to the Samsung DeX window to transfer a PC file to your mobile device. Copied images will appear in your phone's Gallery app. However, you'll need to make sure your device's USB settings are set to Transferring files.
- Text your contacts from your PC. You can copy and paste text from the phone to PC and vice versa.
- Simultaneously run up to 5 apps from your mobile device on the computer. Compatible apps on your PC will be resized for a desktop experience.

Use DeX on a tablet with no external display

The Tab S4, S6, S7, and S8 have DeX built right into them. In other words, you can mutitask with DeX without connecting the tablet to a monitor!

Just swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel. Then, tap the Samsung DeX icon. If it's your first time using this feature, follow the instructions.

The DeX interface will load on the tablet the same way it appears on desktops and monitors. You can navigate it using the touch screen, S Pen, a USB or Bluetooth mouse and keyboard, or a Keyboard cover.



Using the S Pen

If you have a Tab S7 or S8, DeX mode will have an extra perk: you can use S Pen features! That's right, DeX mode will come with the Air command menu. Just hover your S Pen over the Air command icon and tap it to open up the menu. All of your usual shortcuts will be there.

You can also use the S Pen to write down ideas in Samsung Notes, color in the PENUP app, and do a myriad of other things that are easier with a pen.

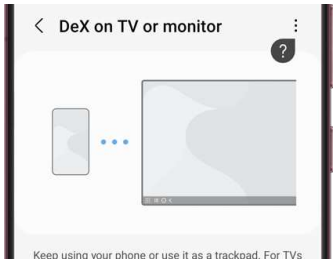
Use DeX wirelessly with a TV or monitor

Note: Wireless DeX is supported on Samsung 2018 TVs or newer, and on Smart TVs that support Miracast technology. Some 2018 TVs may get better results using an HDMI cable. Only newer Galaxy devices, such as the Note20, S21, or S22 can connect with DeX wirelessly.

On phones and tablets with the One UI 3.1 update, you can use DeX on your Smart TV or Smart Monitor! The best part is there are no cables or DeX accessories required. You can even operate up to 5 apps at once on your TV when using DeX mode.

1. On your compatible device, swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Quick settings panel, and then tap the DeX icon.

2. Tap DeX on TV or monitor, then select your TV or monitor from the list, and then tap Start now.



3. Your TV or monitor may prompt you to allow the connection; select Allow. Read the information on your phone or tablet and tap Start if needed. You can now use DeX mode on your TV or monitor!

4. To use your phone or tablet as a touchpad, swipe down from the top of the screen and select the touchpad notification. On some devices, you may need to tap the Touchpad icon (it look like a small box) in the lower left corner of your screen.

5. When connecting to a monitor, there are a few extra things you can do. On your device, double tap the Rotate icon to change the touchpad's orientation. Or, double tap the Touchpad gesture icon (it looks like an exclamation mark) for helpful hints on how to use the touchpad.

   The following tips will help you when connecting to a TV or monitor:

   - For a smooth wireless connection, it is recommended that you use your phone or tablet and TV or monitor within a short distance of each other. This will prevent stuttering and lagging.

   - Remote access to DeX directly from a Samsung TV may not work well if your phone's screen is turned off. You can try turning on your phone's screen and then connecting again.

   - You can perform basic operations using the touchpad connected to your PC, but some gestures, such

as pinching with two fingers to zoom in, won’t work.

- Touchscreen displays are not supported when using DeX.

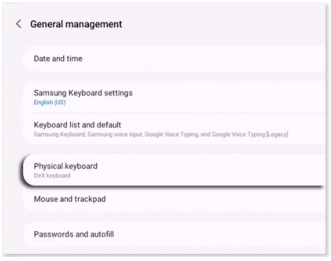
Use DeX with a keyboard and mouse

Depending on the type of device you're connecting to when using DeX, you may want to add a keyboard and mouse! This will make it even easier to navigate the DeX screen. You can use a wired or wireless USB keyboard and mouse, or pair a keyboard and mouse using Bluetooth. Of course if you are using DeX on PC, you can just use the keyboard and mouse connected to your computer.

1. For a wired or wireless USB keyboard and mouse, plug the USB cable or transmitter into the USB port on the DeX Pad or Station, or the USB port on your mobile device. You may need an OTG adapter to plug a USB-A device into the USB-C port.

2. For a Bluetooth keyboard or mouse, use your phone or tablet to open Settings, then tap Connections, and then tap Bluetooth. Make sure your keyboard or mouse is in pairing mode, and then select the desired device under Available devices. Tap Pair when prompted.

3. If you need to change the keyboard's language, open DeX mode, and then navigate to and open Settings. Select General management, and then select Physical keyboard.



4. Select Samsung Keyboard - English (US). From there, you can choose your preferred language.

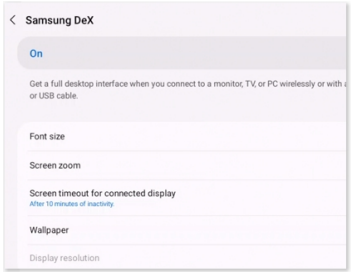
DeX settings and troubleshooting

Note: DeX settings can only be accessed in DeX mode. Setting changes made in DeX mode will be reflected in your mobile device settings as well. However, some configurations may not be supported.

Maybe you’re having some trouble reading the text in DeX mode. Just use the Samsung DeX settings to change any settings related to DeX mode.

From DeX mode, open Settings, and then tap Samsung DeX. From here, you can customize your wallpaper, change display settings, access keyboard settings, try new features with Samsung DeX Labs, hide the task bar, and much more.

If you are having trouble using DeX, please check out our DeX guide ("https://www.samsung.com/us/support/troubleshooting/TSG01110883/") .



Connect Android Auto

Connection methods for playing audio from your phone

Connecting your phone to your car lets you listen to music through the car's stereo system. Other audio like phone calls, GPS, or apps will also play. When they're connected, you can control your phone’s sound using the stereo. However, if you want to make a call or use GPS, you may need to use your phone instead.

There are several ways you can connect your phone; please perform these steps while the car is parked.

- USB: Connect a compatible USB cable to your phone, and then connect the other end to the USB port on your stereo.

  Note: Depending on the stereo system, you may not be able to access media files stored on your phone. Refer to the car manufacturer's user manual for more instructions.

- Auxiliary: Connect the AUX cable directly to the headphone jack on your phone. If your phone does not have a headphone jack, connect a USB-C headphone adapter ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.projection.gearhead ") to it. Then, connect the other end of the cable to the AUX IN port on your car stereo.

- Bluetooth: When your car is turned on, enable pairing mode on your stereo. You may need to refer to the manual that came with your car. Next, navigate to Settings on your phone, tap Connections, and then tap the switch next to Bluetooth to turn it on. Once the phone detects your car, select the car from the Available devices list. If prompted, confirm the pairing code displayed on the phone.

  Note: Some Bluetooth functions may vary. Phone calls and music playback may not be supported or may be limited.

- Cassette player: If your car has a cassette player, you can use a cassette adapter to connect your phone. Insert the cassette end into the slot on the stereo, and then connect the other end (that looks like an auxiliary cable) to your phone. If your phone does not have a headphone jack, connect a USB-C headphone adapter ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.projection.gearhead ") instead.

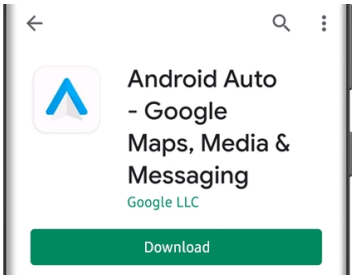
  After you connect the phone to your car, be sure to change the stereo to the correct source based on your preferred method. Otherwise, you will not hear sound from your phone through your car speakers.

Hands-free control when you're driving

Note: Mirrorlink service ended on June 1, 2020 and is no longer available on Android devices.

For a hands-free experience while driving, you can use the Android Auto ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.projection.gearhead ") app. You may be prompted to download the app on your phone after connecting it to your car.

Android Auto allows you to navigate your phone easily and safely while you’re driving. You can play your favorite songs, answer incoming calls, and check the daily news or weather while on the road. If the app is not supported on your phone or you're unable to use it with your car, refer to your car manufacturer's manual for details.

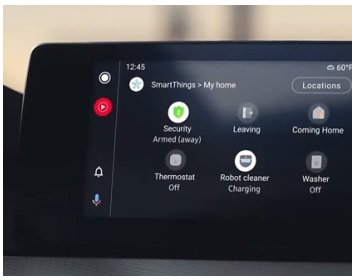


Additionally, you can use Bixby ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") or Bixby Routines ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") to interact with your phone using your voice if you want to keep your eyes on the road.

Use SmartThings with Android Auto

With Android Auto, you can now access the SmartThings app from your car! Just make sure you have the SmartThings app ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") installed on your phone so you can control your smart devices with a few taps.

When you're using Android Auto, the SmartThings app will appear on your car's dashboard. With this feature, you won't need to look at your phone to switch on your robot vacuum, start a load of laundry, or turn on the kitchen lights while you're on the road. Just tap the SmartThings icon on your dashboard to open the app. Your chores can be done from the safety and comfort of your car before you even walk in the door.

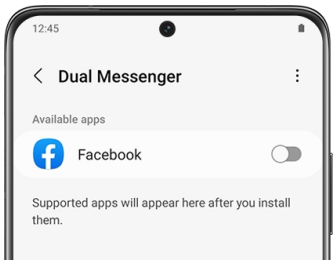


Dual Messenger

Get Dual Messenger

Using Dual Messenger is very simple. Once it's set up, you can begin organizing your accounts all in one place.

1. From Settings, search for and select Dual Messenger.
2. Tap Dual Messenger again, and then tap the switch next to the desired available app.

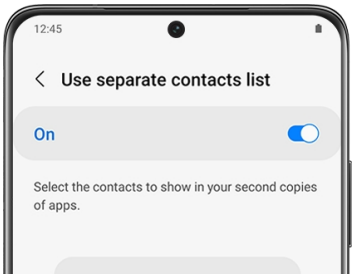


3. Tap Install, review the disclaimer, and then tap Confirm.
4. Navigate to and open the newly installed version of the app - it will have the Dual Messenger symbol on its icon. Then, enter your account information and start using Dual Messenger.

Use separate contacts

To enhance your Dual Messenger experience, you can separate the contact list in your second app and make it so only your desired contacts appear.

From Settings, search for and select Dual Messenger. Tap Dual Messenger again, and then tap Use separate contacts list. Tap the switch to turn it on. Tap Add, select your contact(s), and then tap Done.


12:45
Use separate contacts list
On
Select the contacts to show in your second copies of apps.

Connect Android Auto

Connection methods for playing audio from your phone

Connecting your phone to your car lets you listen to music through the car's stereo system. Other audio like phone calls, GPS, or apps will also play. When they're connected, you can control your phone’s sound using the stereo. However, if you want to make a call or use GPS, you may need to use your phone instead.

There are several ways you can connect your phone; please perform these steps while the car is parked.

- USB: Connect a compatible USB cable to your phone, and then connect the other end to the USB port on your stereo.

  Note: Depending on the stereo system, you may not be able to access media files stored on your phone. Refer to the car manufacturer's user manual for more instructions.

- Auxiliary: Connect the AUX cable directly to the headphone jack on your phone. If your phone does not have a headphone jack, connect a USB-C headphone adapter ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.projection.gearhead ") to it. Then, connect the other end of the cable to the AUX IN port on your car stereo.

- Bluetooth: When your car is turned on, enable pairing mode on your stereo. You may need to refer to the manual that came with your car. Next, navigate to Settings on your phone, tap Connections, and then tap the switch next to Bluetooth to turn it on. Once the phone detects your car, select the car from the Available devices list. If prompted, confirm the pairing code displayed on the phone.

  Note: Some Bluetooth functions may vary. Phone calls and music playback may not be supported or may be limited.

- Cassette player: If your car has a cassette player, you can use a cassette adapter to connect your phone. Insert the cassette end into the slot on the stereo, and then connect the other end (that looks like an auxiliary cable) to your phone. If your phone does not have a headphone jack, connect a USB-C headphone adapter ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.projection.gearhead ") instead.

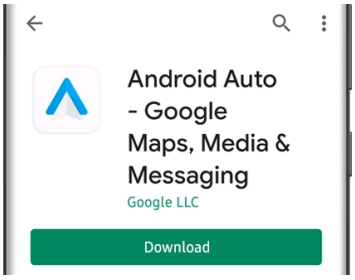
  After you connect the phone to your car, be sure to change the stereo to the correct source based on your preferred method. Otherwise, you will not hear sound from your phone through your car speakers.

Hands-free control when you're driving

Note: Mirrorlink service ended on June 1, 2020 and is no longer available on Android devices.

For a hands-free experience while driving, you can use the Android Auto ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.projection.gearhead ") app. You may be prompted to download the app on your phone after connecting it to your car.

Android Auto allows you to navigate your phone easily and safely while you’re driving. You can play your favorite songs, answer incoming calls, and check the daily news or weather while on the road. If the app is not supported on your phone or you're unable to use it with your car, refer to your car manufacturer's manual for details.

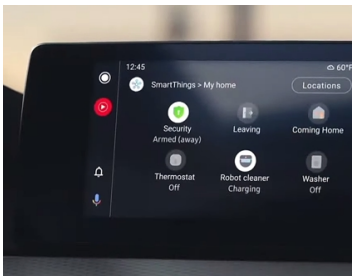


Additionally, you can use Bixby ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") or Bixby Routines ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") to interact with your phone using your voice if you want to keep your eyes on the road.

Use SmartThings with Android Auto

With Android Auto, you can now access the SmartThings app from your car! Just make sure you have the SmartThings app ("https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.samsung.android.oneconnect" target ="_blank") installed on your phone so you can control your smart devices with a few taps.

When you're using Android Auto, the SmartThings app will appear on your car's dashboard. With this feature, you won't need to look at your phone to switch on your robot vacuum, start a load of laundry, or turn on the kitchen lights while you're on the road. Just tap the SmartThings icon on your dashboard to open the app. Your chores can be done from the safety and comfort of your car before you even walk in the door.

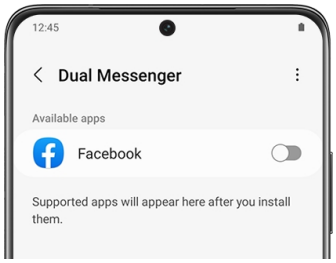


Dual Messenger

Get Dual Messenger

Using Dual Messenger is very simple. Once it's set up, you can begin organizing your accounts all in one place.

1. From Settings, search for and select Dual Messenger.
2. Tap Dual Messenger again, and then tap the switch next to the desired available app.



3. Tap Install, review the disclaimer, and then tap Confirm.
4. Navigate to and open the newly installed version of the app - it will have the Dual Messenger symbol on its icon. Then, enter your account information and start using Dual Messenger.

Use separate contacts

To enhance your Dual Messenger experience, you can separate the contact list in your second app and make it so only your desired contacts appear.

From Settings, search for and select Dual Messenger. Tap Dual Messenger again, and then tap Use separate contacts list. Tap the switch to turn it on. Tap Add, select your contact(s), and then tap Done.

